

New Edition  
**Korean Grammar  
for  
International Learners**

by  
Ihm, Ho Bin  
Hong, Kyung Pyo  
Chang, Suk In

Yonsei University Press

Published by YONSEI UNIVERSITY PRESS  
134, Shinchon-dong, Sudaemoon-ku,  
Seoul 120-749, Korea

TEL : (82-2) 2123-3381~2  
FAX : (82-2) 393-1421  
E-mail : ysup@yonsei.ac.kr  
http://www.yonsei.ac.kr/press

Copyright © 2001 by Ihm, Ho Bin  
Hong, Kyung Pyo  
Chang, Suk In

All rights reserved.

ISBN 89-7141-544-1(03710)  
89-7141-553-3(set)

*First Printed:* June 10, 2001

*Fourth Printed :* November 30, 2003

Price : ₩14,000

Printed by Dong Kook co. in the Republic of Korea

## Authors' Preface

More than thirteen years have passed since the year 1987, when, in a modest effort to decorate our world village, we planted a little tree with the title *Korean Grammar I, II* [한국어 문법 I, II]. Since then the world has grown yet smaller and closer, and we find people from many different countries striving to understand each other's history and culture, and in many cases even living together in harmony and warm affection.

We also find now many language learners who, in order to achieve mutual understanding, show a love and respect for their counterparts' languages which are no less than the love and respect they hold for their own mother tongue. In particular, the enthusiasm of those in every nook and cranny of the globe who wish to learn Korean continues to grow, and we are certain that all these people speaking, learning and teaching Korean will derive indescribably great joy from their endeavours. It is in this sense that the authors are convinced that the reappearance of this book, in a newer, more matured, and English-language version, will bring happiness to many besides the authors alone.

We have designed this book so as to be a useful reference tool for beginning and advanced learners alike. Moreover, our book has the useful feature of a dictionary-or textbook-like design for ease of use by the learner.

In this revised edition, we have tried to exclude all archaic and dialect patterns, and to incorporate any and all grammatical items which are essential and/or important for the learner to master. We have also paid special attention to the question of presentation, sequencing and indexing so as to make searching easier for the user. Another new feature of this edition is that we have included the practice exercises in a separate,

supplementary volume.

The authors have planted this sapling called *Korean Grammar* on the basis of the experience and enthusiasm gained over the course of more than thirty years in the classroom. But this young tree has not grown by dint of the authors' care and attention alone. We wish to acknowledge that each and every branch and leaf of this tree owes its growth to the nourishment provided in the form of encouragement and criticism from many individuals. We will never forget our debt of gratitude to those who, in the course of using these materials in earlier versions, have pointed out problems and mistakes to us.

We are grateful to 최유경 선생님 for her hard work in the process of correcting and proofing the final version of the book. We are also grateful to the Yonsei University Press for agreeing to publish the book.

Last but not least, we hope that this grammar book will become a friend and companion for all those learning Korean in our global village, and that in future, the single-minded devotion of the authors and the dedicated commitment of our readers will combine to produce even better versions of this book.

May 30, 2001

The authors

## Translator's Preface

It is with a sense of great embarrassment and shame that I realize over three years have passed since I agreed to undertake the translation of 외국인을 위한 한국어 문법. I felt compelled to take on the project for a number of reasons — out of a sense of responsibility to a young field like ours with so few readily available reference works; out of a sense of admiration and respect for the book and its capable authors, all three seasoned experts in Korean language education from one of the field's most prestigious institutions; and out of a desire to learn more myself.

Translating the work of others in one's own field is no easy task. One is tempted to cut here, nip there, amend this, fix that, and in general slip in or cut out tidbits of information based on one's own training, biases, knowledge and ignorance. Certainly I am guilty of this type of editorial arrogance in numerous places, but I console myself with the reminder that the authors gave me considerable license to produce an English-language work that would be most effective for English-speaking students of Korean.

It has been my assumption throughout the project that the reader of this volume is a highly motivated learner of Korean, and one who already has some competence in the language. Thus, I have tried to make my translations of example sentences as colloquial as I can. In cases where a colloquial translation seemed to stray too far from the literal sense of an example (and especially in cases where it did so at the expense of elucidation of the grammatical feature being highlighted), I have also included, in parentheses, a more literal rendition.

The original Korean-language version of this book appears to have been targeted more at would-be teachers of Korean to foreign learners

than to foreign learners themselves. Thus, there is a great deal of traditional grammatical terminology, and many of the explanations for individual particles and endings incorporate rather dry, 'linguisticky' prose to describe how these structural pieces function. In my translation, I have tried at least to minimize the use of grammatical terminology and prose descriptions of grammar in the exposition of particles and endings. Instead, I have assumed that the English-speaking reader~learner would prefer to have a list of rough translation equivalents, a few words on any usage restrictions or peculiarities, and then move straight to actual example sentences, the latter being a decided strength of this work.

Those readers who have already searched elsewhere for supplementary information on Korean language and grammar will probably recognize the influence of Samuel Martin's *Reference Grammar of Korean* in my approach. Indeed, in many places I have simply jettisoned the authors' original Korean prose descriptions in favor of reproducing the glosses from Martin's grammar (sometimes verbatim, sometimes with additional interpretations of my own).

The present work fills an important gap in the all-too-meagre repertoire of published reference works on Korean for the English-speaking learner. It presents, in a systematic and user-friendly fashion, the major features of Korean grammar with an abundance of carefully constructed example sentences. The authors are refreshingly unabashed in their espousal of the importance of grammar education in Korean language teaching, and yet their book (in its English version, I hope), is not so terribly terminology-laden and 'linguisticky' as to turn off the would-be user. I would also venture to say that this book could serve as a useful backbone text to an advanced undergraduate course or graduate seminar on 'Korean Pedagogical Grammar', and its utility is increased all the more by the separately published 연습문제집과 해답.

Ross King

## Preliminaries

### 1. The Need for and Importance of Grammar Education

The questions of whether, in teaching Korean as a foreign language, we should teach about the Korean grammatical system, and if so, *how* we should teach it, remain as important and difficult problems. One of the reasons for this is the fact that there is a considerable difference between first-language education and second-language education; in other words, between teaching Korean as a mother tongue and teaching Korean as a foreign language.

Teaching the Korean grammatical system is essential from the point of view of systematizing the language learning process. This is so because all words have both lexical properties and grammatical properties, and the more thorough we become in our systematic study and description of a language the smaller the gaps grow between language realities and language norms.

From the point of view of the language instructor, too, if one understands the Korean grammatical system, it becomes possible to discern problem areas in the learning process and then concentrate one's teaching on them. In such a case, one can effect a more efficient, more meaningful education process, and thereby raise learner achievement levels. Moreover, when learners commit errors, the instructor can discern the cause, mobilize his or her grammatical knowledge, and offer structured guidance to the learner.

The pedagogical methodology of grammar education is a topic best left for a methodology manual, but we have edited this book so as to focus on the presentation of grammar in actual, real-life situations, unlike previous works, which have tended to focus on grammar for grammar's sake or grammar-translation methodology. This is because we believe an

approach like this will make possible both an understanding of the deep structures within the language, and an understanding of pragmatic issues.

## 2. Special Features of *Korean Grammar* [한국어 문법]

In the course of editing and compiling this book, we have paid attention to a number of special features.

First: By focussing our exposition more on the basis of the general grammar found in Korean school grammars than on the normative grammars produced by linguists, we hope to overcome the limitations of the latter and provide the foreign learner with an easier, more accessible tool for acquisition.

Second: The exposition of the book was planned in three discrete stages. In the first stage, we systematized Korean grammar. In the second stage, we tried to predict the difficulties that foreigners would encounter in learning Korean as a second language. In the third stage, we tried to verify those difficulties through actual teaching experience. In particular, we strove in the creation of the example sentences to use as many new and practical words and expressions as possible so as to enhance their immediate usefulness.

Third: The supplementary volume *Practice Exercises and Answer Key* [연습문제집과 해답] was devised on the basis of scientific methodology whereby we kept in mind the learners' levels and learning process, and verified common errors and estimated relative difficulty levels. This seemed most useful for effective teaching aimed at foreign learners.

## 3. The Structure of *Korean Grammar* [한국어 문법]

The structure of *Korean Grammar* is as follows.

First: *Korean Grammar* is composed of seventeen chapters, and each chapter is laid out according to difficulty level, with basic items preceding in order to more difficult items.

Second: This book contains two indices; one for Korean items in Korean alphabetic order, and the other in English for English grammatical terminology.

Third: We have devised a supplementary *Exercise Book* [연습문제집] to allow learners to practice what they have learned on their own.

Fourth: At the back of the *Exercise Book* we have included an answer key to allow learners to verify their answers.

Fifth: We have also included a list of additional references for those learners who wish to continue their study of Korean grammar with more specialized materials.

## Contents

Authors' Preface • iii

Translator's Preface • v

Preliminaries • vii

### *Chapter one*

#### **Special Features of Korean Grammar and Sentence**

**Structure** ..... 1

1. Part of speech in Korean/1

2. Special Features of Korean Grammar/4

3. Basic Sentence Structure of Korean/6

1) Basic Sentence Types • 6

2) Constituent Elements of Sentence Structure • 6

3) Korean Sentence Structure Types • 14

### *Chapter Two*

**Nouns** ..... 19

1. Noun Functions/19

2. Noun Type/20

3. Bound Nouns/20

1) Nouns Always Used Dependently • 21

2) Free Forms which also function as Bound Nouns/  
Post-Modifiers • 64

### *Chapter Three*

**Pronouns** ..... 83

1. Personal Pronouns/83

2. Demonstrative Pronouns/85

### *Chapter Four*

**Numerals** ..... 89

1. Cardinal Numerals/89
  - 1) Pure Korean Cardinal Numerals • 90
  - 2) Sino-Korean Numerals • 92
2. Ordinal Numerals/93
  - 1) Pure Korean Ordinal Numerals • 93
  - 2) Sino-Korean Ordinal Numerals • 94

*Chapter Five*

**Verbs** ..... 97

1. Action Verbs/97
2. Descriptive Verbs/98
3. The Copula ‘-이다’/99
4. The Verb ‘있다’/101
5. Verb Conjugation/102
  - 1) What is Conjugation • 102
  - 2) Conjugation Classes • 102
  - 3) Conjugation and Suffixes • 104
  - 4) Irregular Verbs • 104

*Chapter Six*

**Adnominals** ..... 115

1. Demonstrative Adnominals/115
2. Numerical Adnominals/116
3. Descriptive Adnominals/116

*Chapter Seven*

**Adverbials** ..... 119

1. Classification of Adverbs according to Meaning/119
  - 1) Time Adverbs • 119
  - 2) Frequency Adverbs • 120
  - 3) General Adverbs • 121
  - 4) Degree Adverbs • 122
2. Classification of Adverbs according to Method of

Word-formation/122

- 1) Non-derived Adverbs • 123
  - 2) Derived Adverbs • 124
  - 3) Interrogative~Indefinite Adverbs and Negative Adverbs • 128
  - 4) Conjunctive Adverbs • 129
  - 5) Mimetic Adverbs • 137
3. Adverbial Forms of Verbs via Inflection/138
  4. Position of Adverbials/139

*Chapter Eight*

**Exclamations** ..... 141

1. They express the instinctive surprise or emotion of the speaker/141
2. Exclamations are used to call or reply to others/142
3. Exclamations include words which are used as a short of empty filler hedge/142

*Chapter Nine*

**Particles** ..... 143

1. Case Particles/144
  - 1) Subject Particle • 144
  - 2) Object Particle • 146
  - 3) Complement Particle • 148
  - 4) Adnominal Particle • 148
  - 5) Adverbial Particle • 149
  - 6) Vocative Particle • 158
2. Connective Particles/159
3. Auxiliary Particles/161

*Chapter Ten*

**Tense** ..... 189

1. Tense Marking via Final Verb Endings/189

- 1) Present Tense • 189
- 2) Past Tense • 191
- 3) Future Tense • 194
- 4) Progressive Tense • 196

*Chapter Eleven***Honorifics and Humilifics** ..... 199

1. Subject Honorification/199
2. Speech Levels/202
  - 1) Formal Speech Level • 204
  - 2) Informal Speech Level • 207
3. Honorification by Means of Lexical Expressions/210

*Chapter Twelve***Negation** ..... 213

1. Negation in Declarative and Interrogative Sentences/214
2. Negation in Imperative and Propositive Sentences/216
3. Lexical Negation/216
4. Negation in Confirmation Questions/217

*Chapter Thirteen***Special Expressions using Conjugational Endings** ..... 219

1. Final Endings/219
  - 1) Final Endings and Speech Levels • 221
  - 2) Final Endings with Special Uses • 221
2. Conjunctive Endings/236
3. Adnominal Endings/316
4. Nominalizer Endings/319
  - 1) Summative (Vst -ㄷ) • 319

*Chapter Fourteen***Auxiliary Verbs** ..... 339

1. Progressive Auxiliary Verbs/340
2. Terminative Auxiliary Verbs/343

3. Donatory Auxiliary Verbs/348
4. Exploratory Auxiliary Verbs/350
5. Iterative Auxiliary Verbs/351
6. Retentive Auxiliary Verbs/352
7. Desiderative Auxiliary Verbs/354
8. Descriptive Auxiliary Verbs/357
9. Negative Auxiliary Verbs/359
10. Auxiliary of Inability Verbs/362

*Chapter Fifteen***Passive and Causative** ..... 363

1. Passives/364
  - 1) Short Passives • 364
  - 2) Long Passives • 365
2. Causatives/366
  - 1) Short Causatives • 366
  - 2) Long Causatives • 368

*Chapter Sixteen***Quoted Speech** ..... 371

1. Direct Quoted Speech/372
2. Indirect Quoted Speech/373
  - 1) Characteristic for Indirect Quoted Speech • 373
  - 2) Deletion of the Quotation Particle ‘-고’ and of Dummy Verb ‘하-’ • 380

*Chapter Seventeen***Prefixes and Suffixes** ..... 399

1. Prefixes/399
2. Suffixes/411

Reference Punctuation/419

Recommendations for Further Reading/423

Index/429



## Special Features of Korean Grammar and Sentence Structure

A sentence is composed of one or more words, and imparts a unified thought or feeling. This thought or feeling must be construed properly in accord with proper sentence structure for a sentence to be effective.

Languages, like all social and natural phenomena, are characterized by an organically intertwined set of rules and structures. The systematization and codification of these rules and relationships is called grammar.

It is the goal of this first chapter of *Korean Grammar for Foreign Learners* to provide the learner with a comprehensive framework and overview of the fundamental building blocks of Korean grammar.

### 1. Parts of speech in Korean (품사)

Sentences are combinations of words. It is not always easy to classify all words grammatically, but “parts of speech” refers to groups of words which share certain features. The 1963 Committee of Education deliberations on a unified school grammar recognized nine parts of speech in Korean, and Figure 1 below is based on the materials from these deliberations.

〈Figure 1〉 Parts of speech in Korean

No.	Part of speech	Examples				
1	명사 Nouns	사람, person	개, dog	지하철, subway	사과, apple	나무 tree
2	대명사 Pronouns	나, I	우리, we	여기, here	철수 Ch'olsu	
3	수사 Numerals	하나, one	둘, two	일, one		이 two
4	동작동사 Action verbs	가다, go	보다, see	일하다 work		
5	상태동사 Descriptive verbs	비싸다, be expensive	좋다, be good	아름답다 be beautiful		
6	관형사 Adnominals	새, new	현, old	한, one		두 two
7	부사 Adverbs	참, truly	대단히, very	많이 abundantly		
8	감탄사 Exclamations	아! oh!	참! well!	어머나! oh my!		
9	조사 (Particles)	-이/가, -을/를, -와/과, -에, -에서, -(으)로				

The nine parts of speech presented above in Figure (1) can be further sub-classified as follows;

1) Content Words and Function Words (실사와 허사)

Content words are words with actual semantic content, while function words are items like particles which convey only grammatical meanings and relationships.

2) Sub-classification according to Inflecting vs. Non-inflecting Forms

Some words undergo changes in shape, while others maintain one constant shape. Verbals belong to the former class, and substantives and

modifiers to the latter.

Inflecting words: 가다 → 가고, 가니, 가서  
go  
아름답다 → 아름답고, 아름답운, 아름다워  
be beautiful

Non-inflecting words: 꽃, 사람, 개, 비둘기  
flower person dog pigeon

3) Sub-classification according to Word Function

Whereas some words can perform multiple functions within a sentence, others can perform only one. The former are called substantives, and include nouns, pronouns and numerals. The latter are called modifiers, and include adnominals (words which modify nouns) and adverbials (words which modify verbs).

4) Semantic Sub-classification

The classification into nine parts of speech is determined by semantic criteria. The only exception are the exclamations, which, because they differ in function from adnominals and adverbials, are considered as independent forms.

Based on the classifications above, we can reorganize the "Parts of Speech" table somewhat more systematically and conveniently as follows:

〈Figure 2〉 Classification of Parts of Speech\*

분류	단어 Word	실사 Content Words			허사 Function Words
	기능 Function			수식언 Modifiers	
형태 Form		체언 Substantives	용언 Verbals		

기	의미 Meaning	명사 Nouns	동사 Verbs	관형사 Adnominals	감탄사 Exclama- tions	조사 Particles
준		대명사 Pronouns	형용사 Adjectives	부사 Adverbials		
		수사 Numerals				

\* 고영근, 남기심, 박경조(1985). 「고등학교 문법」, 탑출판사.

Ko Yonggun, Nam Kisim, Pak Kyongjo (1985) Korean High School Grammar. Tower Press.

## 2. Special Features of Korean Grammar

In its morphology, Korean belongs to the 'agglutinative' languages, and in its genetic affiliation, Korean is thought to belong to the Altaic family of languages. Some of the typological features of these two groupings are as follows.

① The normal word order in a Korean sentence is S(subject)—O(bject)—V(erb). Other features of this word order are:

(A) Free word order of those elements preceding the verb. In other words, those elements other than the sentence-final verb are free to occur in almost any order:

### Examples:

선생님이	학생에게	숙제를	주셨다.
학생에게	선생님이	숙제를	주셨다.
숙제를	선생님이	학생에게	주셨다.
숙제를	학생에게	선생님이	주셨다.

The teacher gave the students homework.

(B) Modifier always precedes modified.

### Examples:

제 친구는 아주 예쁜 차를 샀어요.  
My friend bought a really pretty car.

(C) Korean word order does not change in interrogative sentences, and there is no rule requiring question words to appear in sentence-initial position.

### Examples:

이 가방은 누구의 가방입니까?  
Whose bag is this?

② A rich repertoire of particles and endings.

### Examples:

할머니가 좋다 → 할머니께서는 좋으셨겠습니다.  
Grandmother is nice. → Grandmother (honorific)  
must have been nice.

③ Korean has a highly developed system of honorifics and politeness.

④ Korean freely allows the omission of subjects, objects, complements and predicates. Omission is allowed where context or situation makes recovery of the omitted element possible.

### Examples:

선생님은 어디에 가십니까? → 어디 가십니까?  
Where are you going, Sir?      Where are you going?

⑤ The category of singular vs. plural is not obligatory in Korean.

⑥ Korean does not have grammatical gender, articles or relative pronouns.

### 3. Basic Sentence Structure of Korean

#### 1) Basic Sentence Types

The minimum requirements for a sentence are a Subject and a Predicate. Depending on the nature of the Predicate, we can distinguish five types of sentence in Korean, as outlined in Figure (3) below.

〈Figure 3〉 Sentence Types

No.	Basic sentence	Sentence Type acc. to nature of the predicate	Examples
I	무엇이 어찌한다 Something does something	무엇이 무엇을 어찌한다. Sth does sth to sth	영수가 잔다. Yongsu sleeps.
		무엇이 무엇이 된다. Sth becomes sth	영수가 책을 읽는다. Yongsu reads a book.
		무엇이 무엇이 된다. Sth becomes sth	비가 눈이 된다. Rain turns to snow.
II	무엇이 어떠하다 Something is some way	산이 푸르다. The mountain is green.	
III	무엇이 무엇이다 Something is something	그는 한국사람이다. He is a Korean.	
		무엇이 무엇이 아니다. Something is not something	그는 한국사람이 아니다. He is not a Korean.

\* 고영근, 남기심, 박경조 (1985). 「고등학교 문법」 탐출판사.  
Ko Yonggun, Nam Kisim, Pak Kyongjo (1985) Korean High School Grammar.  
Tower Press.

#### 2) Constituent Elements of Sentence Structure

The constituent elements that make up the structure of a sentence consist of all parts of speech with the exception of particles. These

constituent elements can be divided into main, subordinate and independent elements.

#### (1) Main Constituent Elements

The obligatory constituent elements of a sentence are Subject, Predicate, Object and Complement.

##### ① Subject (주어)

The subject of a sentence is usually a substantive. See Figure (4) below.

##### ② Predicate (서술어)

The predicate explains or says something about the subject. Basic predicate types include action verbs, descriptive verbs and the copula -이다 (treated by some Korean grammarians as a special kind of 서술격 조사 or 'predicative particle').

##### Examples:

순이가 놀아요. (동작동사)

Suni is playing. (Action verb or Processive verb)

산이 파랗습니다. (상태동사)

The mountain is green. (Descriptive verb)

존은 미국 사람입니다. (Copula)

John is an American.

〈Figure 4〉 Sentence Structure

Subject	Examples
① Substantive + Subject particle	철수가 옵니다. Ch'olsu is coming. 어머니께서 불고기를 만드셨어요. Mother prepared pulgogi. 철수는 머리가 좋습니다. Ch'olsu is smart.

	영희도 머리가 좋아요. Yonghui is also smart. 우리 집에서 잔치를 했어요. We had a banquet at our home.
② Nominalized verb + subject particle	한국말을 배우기가 힘들죠. Learning Korean is hard, isn't it? 쓰기가 어렵습니다. Writing is difficult.
③ Nominalized verb phrase + subject particle	아침마다 일찍 일어나기가 어려워요. Getting up early every morning is difficult. 문장을 만드는 것이 힘들죠. Composing sentences is hard, isn't it?

NB: ① It is also possible to attach the copula to substantives, nominalized verbs and nominalized verb phrases:

**Examples:**

제가 한국에 온 것은 지난 월요일입니다. (nominalized verb phrase)

It was last Monday that I came to Korea.

Moreover, one can also use predicate phrases or complex predicates made up of a main verb plus auxiliary verb:

**Examples:**

김 선생은 키가 커요. (predicate phrase)

Mr. Kim is tall.

담배를 피우지 마세요. (main verb + auxiliary)

Do not smoke.

NB: ② Depending on the characteristics of the verb used as predicate, the number of constituents needed in a sentence can vary. Thus, intransitive verbs tend to need only a subject, but transitive verbs tend to need both a subject and an object. Verbs like *되다* *become* and *아니다* *not to be*

require a complement.

**Examples:**

꽃이 피었습니다. (intransitive verb)

The flower bloomed.

애기가 우유를 먹습니다. (transitive verb)

The baby drinks milk.

존은 한국 사람이 아닙니다. (complement)

John is not a Korean.

물이 얼음이 되었습니다. (complement)

The water turned to ice.

**③ Object**

Objects are nouns, or clauses or phrases with noun-like qualities, which take the object particle *을/를*. Verbs which require objects are called transitive verbs, and objects typically appear before transitive verbs.

**Examples:**

김 선생님이 한국말을 가르치십니다. (noun)

Mr. Kim teaches Korean.

존은 한국 음식 먹기를 좋아 해요. (nominalized phrase in -기)

John likes to eat Korean food.

그가 친절한 사람임을 알아요. (nominalized clause in -(으)ㄴ다)

I know that he is a kind person.

In colloquial Korean, the object particle is often dropped. Furthermore, it is also possible to use one of the delimiters (e. g. *은/는*, *도*, *만*), which can either replace the object particle or precede it:

**Examples:**

존은 한국말 잘 해요. (object particle omitted)

John speaks Korean well.

전 아직 김치는 못 먹어요. (delimiter *은/는* for topic/contrast)

I can't eat kimchi yet [implication: but I can eat other Korean foods].

그 아이는 말도 잘 합니다. (delimiter *도* and, also, even)

That child can speak very well, too.

한국 사람은 밥만을 먹습니다. (delimiter *만* only, just + object particle)

Koreans eat only rice.

Korean sentences allow more than one object, and sometimes nouns or noun phrases designating places or directions can take the object particle for emphasis.

**Examples:**

어머니가 아이에게 사탕을 한 알 더 주셨어요.

The mother gave the child one more piece of candy.

지금 어딜 가니?

Where are you going now?

**4 Complement**

The complement is an obligatory constituent of sentences containing verbs like 되다 *become* and 아니다 *not to be*.

**Examples:**

물이 얼음이 되었습니다.

The water turned to ice.

그는 선생님이 아닙니다.

He is not a teacher.

그분은 결국 대통령이 되었어요.

Ultimately, he became president.

벌써 여름이 된 것 같습니다.

It seems like it has already become summer.

전 천사는 아니에요.

I am not an angel.

**(2) Attributive Constituents (Modifier Constituents) (부속 성분 (수식 성분))**

The two main types of modifier constituents are adnominals (or adnouns—things which modify nouns) and adverbs (things which modify verbs).

**1 Adnominals (관형어): things that modify nouns**

Adnominals precede the noun they modify, and further specify some-

thing about the characteristics or state of the modified noun. Unlike adverbs, adnominals cannot be used alone and must be used in front of a following noun. It is possible to use more than one adnominal in the same sentence, but in such circumstances Korean observes the order Demonstrative Adnoun—Numeral Adnoun—Descriptive Adnoun.

**Examples:**

백화점에서 예쁜 옷을 샀어요. (adnoun)

I bought some pretty clothes at a department store.

이 두 젊은 남녀는 서로 사랑하는 사이입니다.

(Demonstrative + Numeral + Descriptive adnoun)

This young boy and girl love each other.

Figure (5) below demonstrates modifying structures.

〈Figure 5〉

**Adnominals**

Adnominal Structures	Examples
All pre-nouns function as adnouns.	철수가 새 모자를 샀습니다. Ch'olsu bought a new hat.
Any combination of noun + possessive particle의 can function as an adnominal.	이것이 철수의 책입니다. This is Ch'olsu's book. 선생님의 책을 보았습니다. I saw the teacher's book.
Any combination of noun + a modifier form of the copula can function as an adnominal.	학자인 김 박사님을 존경해요. I respect Dr. Pak the scholar. 외국인인 존슨씨를 아세요? Do you know Mr. Johnson, the foreigner?
Substantive + Particle + possessive의	학생과의 만남이 즐거웠어요. The meeting with the students was enjoyable.

	학교에서의 생활이 유익합니다. Life at school is beneficial.
Noun+nominalized form of -이다+의	한국인임의 긍지를 가지세요. Please have pride in being a Korean.
Modifier form of any verb	좋은 선생입니다. He is a good teacher.
Nominalized form of a verb+possessive의	말하기의 방법을 알려 드리죠. Let me inform you of the method of speaking.

Verbs in one of the modifier forms can function as adnominals. The modifier endings -는, -(으)ㄴ, -(으)ㄹ and -던 also indicate tense. (See Chapter 13).

**Examples:**

저기 가는 분이 이 선생입니다.

The man walking over there is Mr. Lee.

이 편지를 보낸 사람이 제 친구입니다.

The person who sent this letter is my friend.

내일 만날 친구는 대학 동창입니다.

The friend who I will meet tomorrow is a university classmate.

여기 살던 사람이 이사를 갔습니다.

The person who used to live here moved.

지난 주에 먹었던 음식은 참 맛이 있었어요.

The food we ate last week was quite delicious.

② **Adverbials (부사어): things that modify verbs**

There are two types of adverbials—adverbs which modify elements at the sub-sentence level (constituent adverbs), and adverbs which modify the sentence as a whole (sentential adverbs).

Constituent Adverbs

**Examples:**

어서 갑시다.

Let go right away.

너무 아파서 못 갔습니다.

Because I was so sick, I couldn't go.

겨우 한 시간 잤어요.

I barely slept one hour.

Sentential Adverbs

**Examples:**

과연 한국은 아름답습니다.

Korea is indeed beautiful. (Indeed, Korea is beautiful.)

역시 겨울에는 눈이 많이 와야 제격이에요.

Sure enough, it just doesn't seem like winter without snow.

Adverbials are relatively compatible with delimiters and, unlike adnominals, are characterized by a relatively free word order.

**Examples:**

시간은 빨리도 가는군요!

The time is going by so fast!

김 선생님에게는 예쁜 딸이 있습니다.

Mr. Kim has a beautiful daughter.

과연 그는 머리가 좋은 사람입니다.

그는 과연 머리가 좋은 사람입니다.

그는 머리가 과연 좋은 사람입니다.

그는 머리가 좋은 사람입니다. 과연.

He is indeed a smart person.

NB: However, this freedom of word order does not apply when an adverbial modifies an adverb, adnominal or noun, or in the case of negation adverbs.

(3) **Free Forms (독립어)**

Free forms are independent constituents which nonetheless affect the entire sentence, and have the following characteristic: a sentence remains an acceptable sentence even if one removes them.

**Examples:**

야! 빨리 가자!  
 Hey! Let's go quickly!  
 자! 갑시다.  
 Well then! Let's go.

<Figure 6> below presents free forms.

<Figure 6> Free Forms

Types of Free Form	Examples
감탄사 Exclamations	어머나! 꽃이 피었네 Oh my! The flowers have bloomed!
응답어 Answers	예, 알겠습니다. Yes, I understand.
제시어, 표제어 Headings, Titles	젊음, 얼마나 활기찬 시간인가? Youth — such a vibrant time!
체언+호격조사 Noun+vocative particle	숙아, 나 좀 도와줘. Hey Suk! Can you please help me?
문장 접속부사 * Conjunctive Adverbs	비가 온다. 그러나 난 갔다. It's raining. But I left.

\* Conjunctive adverbs like 그러나, 그리고, 그런데, 그러므로, and 그래서 count as either Free Forms or Conjunctive Adverbs.

**3) Korean Sentence Structure Types**

Korean sentence structure can be divided into two types: simple sentences and complex sentences.

**(1) Simple Sentences (단문 or 홑문장)**

By 'simple sentence' is meant a sentence with just one subject and one predicate.

**Examples:**

그 분은 선생님이십니다.

That person is a teacher.  
 하늘이 푸릅니다.  
 The sky is blue.  
 자동차가 잘 달립니다.  
 The car runs well.  
 철수가 책을 읽습니다.  
 Ch'olsu is reading a book.  
 날씨가 좋지 않습니다.  
 The weather is not good.

**(2) Complex Sentences (복합문 or 겹문장)**

Complex sentences can be further subdivided into two types.

**Complex Sentences characterized by Conversion**

By this is meant cases when a simple sentence is converted into a nominalized verb phrase, modifier clause, adverbial clause, quotation, or the like, and is included within another sentence. In such cases, the number of converted sentences is one or more, and in cases where the matrix sentence and a converted sentence or clause share constituents, one of the shared constituents can be omitted.

**Examples:**

우리는 **존이 미국으로 귀국했다는 사실을** 알았다. (modifier clause)  
 We knew that John had returned to America.  
**그 선거에 부정이 있었음이 밝혀졌다.** (nominalized clause)  
 It was revealed that there were irregularities in the election.  
**그 아이가 그 대학에 입학하기를 기도했다.** (nominalized clause)  
 That child prayed to enter that university.  
**나는(내가) 그에게 돈을 꾸 준 기억이 없다.** (modifier clause)  
 I don't have any recollection of lending money to him.  
**이 책은 내용이 너무 좋다.** (predicate clause)  
 The contents of this book are very good.  
**그는 부모님의 도움 없이 대학을 졸업했다.** (adverbial clause)  
 He graduated from university without any help from his parents.



이 집은 돈이 많이 들었다. (predicate clause)

This house cost a lot of money.

나는 그의 결심이 옳았다고 생각한다. (quoted clause)

I think his determination was right.

그의 눈에선 눈물이 비 오듯이 흘렀다. (adverbial clause)

The tears flowed from his eyes like rain.

나는 "여행을 좋아 하십니까?"라고 물었다. (quoted clause)

I asked her: "Do you like traveling?"

### Complex Sentences characterized by Coordination and Subordination

Complex sentences of this type occur when two or more sentences are combined, either with coordinative endings like -고 and -(으)며, or with subordinative endings like -도록, -게, -(으)니, -(으)면, etc. In this case, too, it is possible to omit shared constituents, and the number of connected sentences is two or more.

#### Complex Sentences characterized by Coordination

##### Examples:

영수는 고향으로 내려갔고 철이는 군대에 들어갔다.

Yongsu went home and Ch'ori went into the army.

그는 늘 성격이 명랑하며 남과도 잘 어울린다.

He always has a cheerful character and fits in well with others.

봄에는 꽃이 피고 새가 운다.

In spring, the flowers bloom and the birds sing.

여름에는 비가 오고 겨울에는 눈이 온다.

In summer it rains and in winter it snows.

#### Complex Sentences characterized by Subordination:

##### Examples:

빗물이 들어 오지 않도록 창문을 닫았다.

I shut the window so the rain wouldn't come in.

소화가 잘 되게 꼭꼭 씹어 먹었다.

I chewed my food well so it could digest better.

봄이 되면, 날씨도 따뜻해지겠군요!

When spring comes, the weather will warm up, too!

지금은 피곤하니, 내일 만났으면 좋겠어요.

I'm tired now, so it would be better if we could meet tomorrow.

시간이 없어서 택시를 탔지만 늦었습니다.

Because there was no time, I took a taxi, but I was late.

NB: It is not always easy to distinguish between complex sentences characterized by coordination and subordination--the objective criteria for this distinction are weak. As a rule of thumb, we can characterize as coordination those complex sentences where it is possible to switch the positions of the two clauses without changing the overall meaning of the sentence.

##### Examples:

여름에는 비가 오고 겨울에는 눈이 온다.

In summer it rains and in winter it snows.



겨울에는 눈이 오고 여름에는 비가 온다.

In winter it snows and in summer it rains.

In the case of words connected by the coordinative particle 와/과 and functioning as subject, object or adverb, it is possible to replace the particle with a comma:

##### Examples:

인천과 부산은 항구도시이다.

인천, 부산은 항구도시이다.

Inch'on and Pusan are port cities.

그는 영어와 일어와 불어를 잘 한다.

그는 영어, 일어, 불어를 잘 한다.

He speaks English, Japanese and French well.

## Nouns

### 1. Noun Functions

Nouns have four main functions, which can be exemplified as follows.

① Nouns can be the subject of a sentence.

**Examples:**

철수는 학생입니다.

Subject

Cholsu is a student.

② Nouns can be modified.

**Examples:**

김 선생님은 좋은 분입니다.

Modifier Noun

Mr. Kim is a good person.

③ Particles attach to nouns to show grammatical case relations.

**Examples:**

선생님이 나의 책을 친구에게 보여 주셨어요.

Subject Possessive Object Dative

Particle Particle Particle Particle

The teacher showed my book to a friend.

④ Nouns can take plural markers

**Examples:**

우리들은 어제 친구네 집에서 놀았습니다.  
 Plural Marker Plural Marker  
 We played at some friends' house yesterday.

**2. Noun Type**

Words which name people or things are called nouns. Nouns can be divided into proper nouns and common nouns, and into free nouns and bound nouns. These distinctions are exemplified in Figure (7).

<Figure 7> Noun Types

Criterion	Noun Type	Nature & Definition	Examples
Sphere of Usage	Proper Nouns	names attached to a specific person or thing	동대문, 김영수, 대한민국, 한라산
	Common Nouns	names of things	지하철, 학교, 집
Freeness vs. Boundness	Free Nouns	nouns which can be used without the help of other words	하늘, 사람, 문, 제주도, 서류, 가방
	Bound Nouns	nouns which need other words to function	-분, -것, -만

**3. Bound Nouns**

Bound nouns have all the features of other nouns, but cannot be used

alone; instead, they are always preceded by some adnominal element like a modifier or pre-noun. They are also sometimes referred to as 'incomplete nouns' (불완전명사) or 'dependent nouns' (의존명사). (See page 86).

**Examples:**

친구가 온 것을 몰랐어요.  
 modifier Bound noun

I didn't know that my friend had come.

More examples:

그것은 내가 바라는 바가 아니에요.

That is not what I am hoping for.

단지 그 사람을 믿을 뿐이다.

I believe her and her alone.

옷을 입은 채로 물 속에 뛰어들었어요.

He jumped into the water with his clothes on.

NB: We have treated '그것' as a pronoun. (see page 86).

**1) Nouns Always Used Dependently**

**(1) 것 : thing; fact**

The bound noun -것 can designate things, phenomena or facts. It has few constraints on its usage, and thus can appear freely with various particles, the copula -이다, the verb 같다 *be like, seem like*, etc. Before vowels, the final ㅅ can drop, leaving just -거.

Vst +- (으)ㄴ / -는 / -(으)ㄹ 것

the fact that ... did~was/does~is/will do~be

**Examples:**

그가 일생 동안 쓴 것은 시 한 편뿐이었어요.

The only thing that he wrote his whole life was one poem.

장미꽃이 아름다운 것은 사실이지요.

Of course, it is a fact that roses are beautiful.

남을 설득한다는 건\* 쉬운 일이 아닙니다.

Persuading others is not an easy thing.

그 사람이 어려움을 겪고 있는 걸\* 아셨습니까?

Were you aware that she was experiencing difficulties?

요즈음은 객지 생활에 불편한 게\* 별로 없어요.

Lately I'm not experiencing particularly many inconveniences in [my] life on foreign soil.

NB: 것은 can abbreviate to 건, 것을 to 걸, and 것이 to 게.

Vst+-(-으)ㄴ/-는/-(-으)ㄴ 것이다

lit.: it is the case that ... did/is doing/will do or be; it is a matter of ... having done/doing/going to do or be;

A combination of the past, processive and future modifier, respectively, plus 것 followed by the copula, this pattern can be treated as a paraphrase of the simpler 했다, 한다 and 하겠다 forms. However, in the case of the pattern in -(으)ㄴ 것이다, the prospective modifier adds a note of tentativeness: *will probably do or be*.

#### Examples:

그 물건은 어제 시장에서 산 것입니다.

I bought that [item] yesterday at the market. [Lit.: That item is something I bought at the market yesterday].

이 옷은 제가 동생에게 선물한 거예요.

These clothes are something I gave to my younger sibling as a present.

이 약은 머리가 아플 때 필요한 거예요?

Is this medicine something you need when you have a headache?

이 소설책은 누가 읽는 거예요?

Who is reading this novel?

그 일은 마땅히 우리가 해야 할 것입니다.

That [thing] is something we are obligated to do.

Any Base+-(-으)ㄴ 것이다

is the case that ... will do or be; will probably do or be; one supposes that... will do or be

This pattern expresses the speaker's supposition about a future action or state. Sometimes the pattern can express the speaker's supposition about a current or past action or state, too.

#### Examples:

그 친구는 약속을 꼭 지킬 것입니다.

That friend will definitely keep her promise.

이번 주에 저는 부산에 출장갈 거예요.

This week I will probably be going on a business trip to Pusan.

이제 한국을 잘 이해하실 수 있을 거예요.

Now you can probably understand Korea well.

그 책은 별로 어렵지 않았을 것입니다.

That book probably wasn't or probably would't be particularly difficult.

그 음식은 외국인에게는 좀 매울 거예요.

That food is probably or probably will be a bit spicy for a foreigner.

AVst+-(-으)ㄴ 건가요?

lit.: is it the case that ... will do or be?; will it probably do or be?; does one suppose that... will do or be?

An abbreviation from -(으)ㄴ 것인가요?, this pattern solicits the hearer's opinion about a future action or state, or about a probable current event.

#### Examples :

일찍 집에 갈 건가요?

Are you going [to go] home early?

고향에 편지를 보낼 건가요?

Are you going to send a letter to the folks back home?

몇 시에 저한테 전화하실 건가요?

What time are you going to call me?

이번 주말에는 어디로 여행가실 건가요?

Where will you be traveling to this weekend?  
 약도도 없이 그 분 댁을 어떻게 찾으실 건가요?  
 How are you going to find her house without a map?

Vst+-(-으)ㄹ 거(요)

① But I wonder if...; But don't you think...?; Somehow I rather suspect that...

② (I wish I had) but... (I didn't) — regretting lost opportunities; I should have (but I didn't)

This pattern occurs in two different meanings.

① Pronounced with a rising question intonation, the pattern expresses the speaker's guarded opinion or supposition, often as a correction to what the hearer assumes or is thought to be assuming:

**Examples:**

김 선생님은 댁에 안 계실걸요?  
 But don't you think Mr. Kim probably isn't at home?  
 지금쯤 이 선생이 고향에 도착했을걸요?  
 Don't you think Mr. Lee will probably have arrived back home by now?  
 그 소설은 꽤 재미있을걸요?  
 I'll bet that novel is [actually] rather interesting.  
 신호등을 보지 않고 건너면 위험할걸?  
 Don't you think it would be dangerous to cross without looking at the signal?  
 가을에는 호텔마다 만원일걸?  
 Don't you think all the hotels will be full in the fall?

② Without a rising question intonation, the pattern expresses regret over a course of action not taken. In this meaning, the pattern is often rounded off with 그랬어요; the 그랬어요 is obligatory if one wishes to remain in the Polite (해요) Style.

**Examples:**

배가 아픈데, 점심을 굶을걸 그랬어요.

My stomach hurts — I should have skipped lunch.  
 등산 계획을 세우기 전에 미리 일기 예보를 들어 들걸.  
 I should have listened to the weather forecast first before making my hiking plans.  
 미리 시험 준비를 했더라면 좋았을걸.  
 It would have been better if I had prepared for the exam in advance.  
 친구들이 오는 줄 알았으면, 외출하지 않았을걸.  
 I wouldn't have gone out if I had known friends were coming.  
 오늘부터 연휴인 줄 알았더라면, 여행이라도 할걸.  
 I would have gone on a trip or something if I had known it was a long weekend starting today.

Vst+-(-으)ㄹ 거 없다

there is no need to (do), one need not (do); there is no point in doing; there is no reason/call to do it

Note that whereas -(-으)ㄹ 거(이) 없다 can mean literally there is nothing to do, in the idiomatic usage here, it is not possible to add the subject particle 이 to 것. One can use the opposite collocation -(-으)ㄹ 것이 있다 only in rhetorical questions.

**Examples:**

너무 걱정할 것 없어요.  
 There is no need to worry too much [about it].  
 그렇게 일찍 떠날 거 없잖아, 아직 시간이 있는데……  
 There no reason to depart so early — there still time…  
 괜히 불평할 거 없고, 열심히 해 봅시다.  
 There's no sense in us complaining needlessly; let's give it the old college try.  
 큰 소리만 칠 것 없이 직접 만나 보세요.  
 Instead of [lit.: without there being any need for] ranting and raving, why don't you meet them in person?  
 말이 통하지 않는 사람에게 뭐 말할 것이 있겠어요?  
 What the use in talking to a person who just won't listen to reason?

Vst+-(으)ㄴ/-는/-(-으)ㄹ 것 같다  
it seems like/looks like/appears that... did/is doing/ will do or be

**Examples :**

비가 올 것 같아요.

It looks like it's going to rain.

그 음식은 매우 맛이 있을 것 같군요.

Boy, that food sure looks like it will [or must] taste great!

그 집엔 아무도 살고 있는 것 같지 않아요.

It doesn't appear that there is anybody living in that house.

수업이 벌써 끝난 것 같습니다.

It looks like class is already over.

저 두 사람은 꽤 오랫동안 사귄 것 같아요.

It looks like those two have known each other [or have been dating] for quite a long time.

Vst+-(으)ㄹ 것 같으면  
if it seems/happens to be; if it is

While this pattern is a simple combination of the *seem* pattern in -(으)ㄹ 것 같다 and the conditional pattern in -(으)면, in addition to the literal meaning one would predict from this combination (i. e., if it seems that... will do or be), it also often carries the meaning of *if it seems to you that...*, i. e. *if you think that...*, *if you reckon that...*

**Examples :**

비가 올 것 같으면 우산을 가지고 나가시죠.

If it looks like rain, why don't you take your umbrella with you?

그 여자가 괜찮을 것 같으면 한번 더 만나보세요.

If you think she might be OK, arrange another meeting with her.

어제밤 꿈이 좋을 것 같으면 복권을 사십시오.

If you think last night's dream might be auspicious, buy a lottery ticket.

잠이 안 올 것 같으면 우리 얘기나 합시다.

If you don't think you'll be able to fall asleep, what say we talk a while?

별 도움이 될 것 같지 않으면, 더 만나지 마세요.

If you don't think it'll be much help, don't meet with them anymore.

Vst+-(으)ㄴ/-는 것 같던데요

[I recall that] it seemed... had done/was doing

This pattern combines the *seem* pattern in 것 같다 with Retrospective pattern in -던데요.

**Examples :**

그 사람은 늘 버스나 지하철을 이용하는 것 같던데요.

As I recall, it seemed he was always using either the bus or the subway.

손님이 오신 것 같던데 왜 이렇게 조용하지요?

As I recall, it seemed there were guests, so why is it so quiet?

벌써 비행기가 떠난 것 같던데요.

As I recall, it seemed the airplane had already left.

도둑놈을 잡은 것 같던데, 아직 물건을 못 찾으셨어요?

As I recall, it seemed they had caught the thief; you still haven't been able to find some of your things?

눈은 왔어도 다 녹아서 길은 미끄럽지 않은 것 같던데요.

Though it snowed, the snow all melted, so [as I recall] the roads didn't seem to be slippery.

Vst+-(으)ㄴ/-는 걸 보니

when one considers the fact that...; considering the fact that..., then

This pattern is a combination of the pattern in -(으)ㄴ/-는 것을 보다 meaning *see/consider the fact that* ... plus the Sequential pattern -(으)니 in its meaning of *since, because*.

**Examples :**

저 사람의 코가 빨간 걸 보니 술을 꽤 좋아하는 것 같아요.

Considering how red his nose is, it seems he is rather fond of alcohol.

목이 자주 마른 걸 보니 점심을 짜게 먹었나봐요.

Seeing how I keep getting thirsty, it would appear my lunch was too salty.

문이 잠긴 걸 보니 집안에 아무도 안 계시는 것 같군요.  
Given the fact that the door is locked, it would appear that nobody is home!

무슨 좋은 일이 있는 것 같아요. 흥얼거리는 걸 보니……  
Looks like something good has happened. Seeing how she's singing to herself.

낮에는 늘 집에 있는 걸 보니 회사를 그만두었나 봐요.  
Seeing how he always home during the day, it would appear he has quit his company.

**(2) 겸 and also, in addition, as well, plus, at the same time, combining (two functions)**

Patterns in 겸 are used when two or more actions happen simultaneously. The noun 겸 can function both as a post-noun in the pattern 'NOUN 겸 NOUN' and as a post-modifier in the pattern 'AVst+-(으)ㄴ 겸'

**Noun 겸 Noun  
Noun-cum-Noun**

**Examples:**

이곳은 강당 겸 실내 체육관으로 씁니다.  
We use this place as an auditorium-cum-gymnasium.  
수상 겸 국방장관인 그는 인품이 그만입니다.  
He holds the portfolios for both Prime Minister and Minister of Defence, and is said to be impeccable character.  
외딸이라 아들 겸 딸 노릇을 하지요.  
I am only daughter, so I play the role of both son and daughter.  
이걸 책상 겸 밥상으로 샀어요.  
I bought this to use as a desk-cum dining table.  
아침 겸 점심으로 11시쯤 밥을 먹었습니다.  
I ate an early lunch~late breakfast at around 11.

**AVst+-(으)ㄴ 겸  
with the combined/simultaneous purpose of ...ing**

This pattern also appears in an extended form as -(으)ㄴ 겸 ...-(으)ㄴ 겸 해서 or -(으)ㄴ 겸 겸사겸사해서, and is compatible only with action verbs.

**Examples:**

손자도 볼 겸 딸도 만날 겸 해서 왔습니다.  
I've come to combine visiting my daughter with seeing my grandson.  
전보도 칠 겸 편지도 부칠 겸 해서 우체국에 들렀습니다.  
I stopped in at the post office to [kill two birds with one stone and] send a telegram and post a letter.  
살도 뺄 겸 건강을 위해서 운동을 시작했습니다.  
I've started exercising for the sake of my health and so as to lose some weight.  
친구도 볼 겸 고향소식도 들을 겸 겸사겸사해서 왔어.  
I thought I come so as to see my friends and catch up on some hometown gossip.  
구경도 할 겸 기분전환도 할 겸 여행을 떠나려고 합니다.  
I'm planning to go away on a trip so as to combine some sight-seeing with a change of pace.

**(3) 김 (on the) impetus (of); while (one is at/about it), when, as, since, as long as (...anyway); incidental to the occasion of, in addition, as an incidental result of; on the spur of, by the force of, in an unplanned or unanticipated moment of...**

This pattern captures the idea of taking advantage of an opportunity to perform a related activity.

**AVst+-(으)ㄴ/-는 김에  
while one is at it/about it**

**Examples:**

떡 본 김에 제사를 지내지요. [속담]

Strike while the iron is hot. [Proverb]

여기에 온 김에 그 분을 만나고 가겠어요.

As long as I'm here, I'll meet him before I go.

말이 나온 김에 내 입장도 좀 설명하고 싶습니다.

Since we're on the subject, I like to explain my position, too.

생각난 김에 박 선생님께 전화를 거십시오.

Now that I think of it, why don't you call Mr. Pak?

이왕 쓰는 김에 한 장만 더 써 주세요.

As long as you're writing, why don't you write one more page for me?

\*Do not confuse this pattern with the pattern in -는 길에, which is highly compatible with the verbs of motion 오다 and 가다, and has a different meaning: on the way [coming/ going] to... [See page 66].

**Examples:**

한국에 가는 길에 일본에도 들를 계획입니다.

I plan to stop over in Japan on the way to Korea.

시내에 나가는 길에 양복도 한 벌 맞추고 싶어요.

I want to have a suit fitted on the way downtown, too.

김 선생을 만나러 가는 길에 제 사무실에도 좀 들르세요.

On your way to meet Mr. Kim why don't you drop by my office, too?

**(4) 나름 depending on...**

Noun 나름이다

depending on the Noun; it depends on the Noun

AVst+-기 나름이다

it depends on ...ing; depending on how one does it

**Examples :**

사람도 사람 나름이지 모두가 나쁜 것은 아닐세.

Of course, everything depends on the individual -- not all people are bad.

사랑받는 것은 자기가 하기 나름입니다.

Being loved depends on the effort that you put in.

칭찬도 칭찬 나름이지 그런 칭찬은 안 하느니만 못해요.

Praise though it may have been, it would have been better left unsaid.

백화점 물건이라고 다 좋은 것은 아니야. 물건 나름이지.

Just because it's from a department store doesn't mean it's a better product. It depends on the product.

먹기 나름이지만 음식이 모자라지는 않을 거예요.

It depends on how [much] people eat, but I don't think we'll be short of food.

**(5) 나위 need; leeway**

This pattern conveys the idea that there is no further need to perform the action of the preceding clause, or that there is no further room or flexibility for the action.

AVst+-(-으)리 나위가 없다

(not) enough (to); (hardly) worth ...ing; (no) need (to)

**Examples:**

기쁘기는 더 말할 나위가 없습니다.

It goes without saying that I'm happy.

더 이상 설명할 나위가 없네. 그만하면 알아들었을테니까.

There's no need to explain any further. With that much [explanation] he should have gotten it by now.

모두 끝난 일을 가지고 이렇다 저렇다 말할 나위가 있겠어요?

Is there any point in all of us carrying on about something finished and done?

그만하면 좋은 신부감이니까 더 생각해 볼 나위가 없다구요.

I'm telling you -- a guy that good is fine wife material, so there's no need to give it any more thought.

다시 재고할 나위없이 아주 완벽하답니다.

They say it's so absolutely perfect that there is no need for reconsideration.



## (6) 따름 just, only

This particular post-modifier can only be preceded by the prospective modifier -(으)르, and is always followed by the copula -이다. In meaning, this pattern is similar to that in -(으)르 뿐.

Vst+-(으)르 따름이다  
it is just/only that...

**Examples:**

그 아이가 놀기만 하니 한심할 따름입니다.

I just at a loss — all that kid does is fool around.

묵묵히 내 길만을 갈 따름이죠.

All I'm doing is going about my own business quietly.

소화가 좀 안 될 따름이지, 별 탈은 없습니다.

It's just that I'm having a bit of trouble with my digestion; otherwise no major complaint.

말 많은 세상이니, 그저 조심할 따름이에요.

There are all sorts of crazy rumors out there, so I'm just being careful.

자유가 아니면 죽음이 있을 따름입니다.

Without freedom, there is only death.

(7) 대로 as, just as, just as it is/was, with something still (as it was);  
in accordance with; as soon as

Noun 대로

in accordance with Noun

**Examples:**

생각대로 하세요.

Do it as you wish ~ Do it in accord with your own ideas.

선생님 마음대로 시간과 장소를 정하세요.

Why don't you settle on a time and place according to your preferences?

약속대로 전 비밀을 지켰습니다.

As promised, I kept the secret.

책상을 옮기지 말고 그냥 그대로 놓아 두세요.

Don't move the desk — just leave it as it is.

부하 직원들은 상관의 지시대로 움직이고 있습니다.

The subordinate personnel are acting in accordance with the directions of their superiors.

Noun은 Noun 대로

each... respectively; each in its own way; in accordance with the original nature of Noun

**Examples:**

큰 것은 큰 것대로 작은 것은 작은 것대로 놓으시오.

Put the big ones with the big ones and the little ones with the little ones.

시골 교회에 가면 아직도 남자는 남자대로, 여자는 여자대로 앉습니다.

If you go to a church in the countryside, the men still sit with the other men, and the women with the other women.

너희는 너희대로 우린 우리대로 행동하면 어때?

How about if you do it your way, and we do it our way?

기름은 기름대로 위에 뜰 뿐이지 물에 섞이지 않습니다.

As you would expect from oil [oil being oil; oil being the way it is], it only floats over water, and doesn't mix with water.

학생들은 학생들대로 각자 자기 생각을 갖고 있습니다.

As you would expect of students, they all have their own individual ideas.

Vst+-(으)ㄴ/-는/--(으)르 대로

as, just as did/was, is doing, will do~be, just as it was/did, is doing, will do~be, in accordance with

**Examples :**

아이들은 어른이 하는 대로 따라 해요.

Children copy what adults do.

잘 생각해서 좋을 대로 해 보세요.

Do according to what you think will be best.

심은 대로 거둔다는 옛말이 있죠.

Of course, there is the old saying that what you sow you shall reap.

이 세상은 마음먹은 대로 되지 않는 일이 많아요.

There are lots of things in life that don't turn out the way you want ['in accordance with the way in which you make up your mind.']

일이 끝나는 대로 퇴근하세요.

Please go home as soon as your work is finished.

The related pattern below in V-(으)ㄴ 대로 V-어(아, 여)서 has the meaning of 'do/be as much as is possible'

**Examples :**

그 책은 낡을 대로 낡아서 글씨가 제대로 안 보입니다.

This book is as worn out as worn out can be, so I can't make out the writing properly.

머리가 빠질 대로 빠져서 더 빠질게 없어요.

My hair has fallen out so much that there is no hair left to lose.

경제 상태가 어려워질 대로 어려워져서 문제예요.

The economic situation has gotten so difficult that it's a problem.

그 방법은 써 먹을 대로 써 먹어서 더 쓰면 안 돼요.

We've used that method so much that it's best not to use it any more.

인정이 메마를 대로 메말라서 삭막해요.

Everyone's humanity is so completely tapped out that life is bleak.

\*The -(으)ㄴ 대로 ... -어(아, 여)서 in this example is, for all practical purposes, another independent pattern meaning does/is as much as it is possible to do/be.

**AVst+-는 대로**

as soon as, no sooner than

**Examples :**

그 코끼리는 주는 대로 받아 먹어요.

That elephant eats up whatever you give him.

그는 돈을 버는 대로 다 써 버려요.

No sooner does he earn money than he spends it all.

그 아이는 보는 대로 사고 싶어해요.

That kid wants to buy everything he sets eyes on.

집에 도착하는 대로 전화 좀 걸어 주세요.

Please give me a call as soon as you arrive home.

편지를 받는 대로 곧 회답을 하겠지요.

She'll write back straight away as soon as she receives the letter.

**Vst+-(으)ㄴ 수 있는 대로**

as ... as possible; as ... as is feasible

**Examples:**

이 일은 할 수 있는 대로 빨리 끝내 주세요.

Please finish this as quickly as possible.

될 수 있는 대로 푹 쉬세요.

Please try to rest as thoroughly as possible.

재주를 부릴 수 있는 대로 부려 보세요.

Please show off your talents as best you can.

올 수 있는 대로 빨리 좀 오시면 좋겠어요.

It would be best if you could come as quickly as possible.

한국말로 표현할 수 있는 대로 해 보세요.

Please try to express yourself in Korean as best as possible.

**AVst+-는다는 대로**

in accordance with the way [somebody] said/told/ordered

This pattern is a contraction from the quoted structure -는다고 하는 대로, and thus means [act] as per the statement or instructions I am quoting.

**Examples :**

교수님이 하라시는 대로 했으니까 결과가 좋을 거예요.

I did as the professor said [told me to do], so the results should be good.  
해 달라는 대로 다 해 주었는데, 웬 불평이야.

I did everything just as you asked me to do, so why the complaining?  
친구가 가자는 대로 갔더니 술집이었어요.

I went along with my friend as requested, and it turned out to be a bar.  
그 애가 가겠다고는 대로 가도록 내버려 두었습니다.

I just let her go wherever it was she said she was going to go.  
부모님이 하자시는 대로 다 해 드렸습니다.

I did everything in accord with the way my parents suggested.

(8) 대신 **instead of ...**, **in place/lieu of**; **in recompense for**

**Noun** 대신(에)

**instead of Noun**

Vst+--(으)ㄴ/-는 대신(에)

**instead of doing/having done, in place/lieu of doing/having done; in recompense for doing/having done**

Note that the 에 is optional, and usually omitted, and that in the recompense meaning, the verb can appear in the negative with no change in the overall meaning of the pattern.

**Examples:**

회사에 출근을 안 하는 대신 집에서 일을 했습니다.

Instead of going to the office I worked at home [In recompense/As compensation for not going to the office, I worked at home].

이 물건은 값이 비싼 대신에 질은 아주 좋아요.

This item is expensive, but on the other hand it is of very high quality [In compensation for the high price, this item is very high quality].

그 병원은 시설이 좋은 대신 치료비가 비쌉니다.

That hospital has good facilities, but the medical fees are accordingly steep.

우리 나라에는 꿩 대신 닭이라는 속담이 있습니다.

In Korea we have a proverb that goes [settling for] a chicken instead of

a pheasant i. e. settling for next best.

저 대신 선생님이 그 분에게 안부를 전해 주십시오.

Please say hello to her for me [on my behalf, in my stead].

(9) 동안 **an interval, while,**

AVst+-는 동안(에)

**while (doing)**

**Examples:**

한국에서 사는 동안 많은 것을 배웠습니다.

I learned many things while living in Korea.

회의하는 동안은 전화를 받을 수 없습니다.

He can't answer the phone while he's in conference.

차집에서 친구를 기다리는 동안 편지를 썼습니다.

I wrote a letter while waiting for my friend at a teahouse.

식사하는 동안에는 너무 말을 많이 하지 않는 것이 예의죠.

Of course, it is good etiquette not to talk too much during meals.

선생님이 안 계시는 동안에 전화가 많이 왔어요.

A lot of phone calls came in while you were out.

(10) **등**

Vst+-는/(으)ㄴ 등

**you can tell whether; may or may not**

This pattern is used to show an alternation or vague choice between one of two or more contradictory but equally likely appearances, of which the second is usually, but not always, some form of 말다 *desists*. And the entire expression is usually concluded by the auxiliary verb 한다 or the auxiliary adjective 하다 as appropriate, but 하다 (or 그렇다) may be preferred when the Vst+-는 is viewed as static. This pattern can also attach to quoted structures, in which case the verb is usually descriptive.

**Examples:**

일을 하는 듯 마는 듯 게으름을 피우고 있어요.

He's being lazy — you can't tell if he's working or not.

말을 할 듯 말 듯 하다가 입을 다물고 말았어요.

He was on the verge of saying something, but ended up keeping his mouth shut.

밥을 먹을 듯 말 듯 하더니만 한 그릇을 다 먹더라고요.

He sort of picked at his rice half-heartedly, and the next thing I knew, he had eaten a whole bowl.

산이 가파르다는 듯 길이 미끄럽다는 듯 하면서 도중에 하산했어요.

Because ['saying'] the mountain was steep and the road slippery, they gave up midway and came back down.

시험이 쉬웠다는 듯 어려웠다는 듯 말들이 많아요.

Everybody got something to say about the exam — some say it was [too] easy, some say it was [too] hard.

**(11) 듯 appearance, similarity**

Vst + -(으)ㄴ/-는/- (으)리 듯(이)

appearing (to be), looking (like); seeming as if; as if/though

**Examples:**

그는 세상에서 자기가 제일 잘난 듯이 지껄이고 있었습니다.

He was blabbing on as if he were the greatest on earth.

자기가 최고인 듯 우쭐댁니다.

He keeps on swaggering around as if he were the greatest.

무슨 큰 일이라도 난 듯 범석대고 있었어요.

They were making a big fuss as if something important had happened.

대단한 손님이라도 오는 듯이 소란스러웠지요.

It was incredibly noisy as if some very important guest were arriving.

그는 때릴 듯이 주먹을 불끈 쥐고 있었단다.

They say he suddenly made a fist as if he might hit her.

AVst + -(으)리 듯 말듯 (하다)

-(으)ㄴ 듯 만 듯

-는 듯 마는 듯

seems one moment like it will, and the next moment like it won't ; can't really tell if the action came or will come full circle or to completion

**Examples:**

그는 나를 본 듯 만 듯 모른 척하고 지나갔어요.

I couldn't tell if he saw me or not; he passed by pretending not to notice me.

시간이 없어서 아침은 먹은 듯 마는 듯 하고 출근했다.

I didn't have any time, so I left for work without having eaten a proper breakfast.

피서를 갈 듯 말 듯 하더니, 떠나 버렸군요.

It looked like she might go away somewhere to get away from the heat — so I guess she's gone!

들릴 듯 말 듯한 목소리로 말하니 알아 들을 수가 없군요.

She's speaking in such a barely audible voice that I can't make out what she's saying.

Vst + (-으)ㄴ/-는/- (으)리 듯하다

seems

**Examples:**

비가 올 듯하군요.

Say, looks like it's going to rain!

철수가 요즘 병이 난 듯합니다.

It seems Cholsu is sick lately.

저 사람은 학생인 듯해요.

That person appears to be a student.

가뭄으로 타는 듯한 더위가 계속되고 있습니다.

The scorching heat on account of the drought is continuing apace.

그 애기는 금방 넘어질 듯 하면서도 잘 걷는군요.  
 Though it looks like he'll fall over any moment, the baby walks quite well!

Vst + -(으)ㄴ/-는/- (으)ㄴ 듯싶다  
 it seems [to me] that...

The auxiliary verb **싶다** in this pattern implies a more subjective and speaker-oriented kind of *seem* than the pattern above.

**Examples:**

그 옷에는 빨간 구두가 더 잘 어울릴 듯싶군요.  
 Somehow I think that red shoes would go better with that outfit.  
 무지개가 선 것을 보니, 내일은 날이 좋을 듯싶어요.  
 Seeing as there is a rainbow in the sky, I have a feeling the weather will be good tomorrow.  
 애기가 조용한 걸 보니까, 잠이 든 듯싶습니다.  
 Seeing as how quiet the baby is, it would seem she's asleep.  
 친구가 지금껏 안 오는 걸 보니, 무슨 일이 생긴 듯싶군요.  
 Seeing as your friend still hasn't come, it would appear something has come up.  
 그 사람이 큰 소리를 치는 걸 보니, 무슨 벼슬이나 한 듯싶은데요.  
 Seeing the way he shouts, I say he must have held a high government office in the past.

(12) 리 (good) reason that/to...

Vst + -(으)ㄴ 리가 있다/없다  
 grounds or good reason exist/do not exist to...

When this pattern is used with **있다**, the latter is typically in an interrogative sentence, in which case the question is usually rhetorical.

**Examples:**

그 사람이 약속을 잊을 리가 있나?  
 You don't suppose he would forget an appointment, do you?  
 그 분이 음주 운전을 했을 리 없을 텐데.  
 That strange, I wouldn't expect him to have driven drunk.  
 십 년 이상을 같이 살았는데 성격을 모를 리 있어요?  
 They've lived together for more than 10 years; how could he not know her personality?  
 여러 번 말했는데, 말 뜻을 모를 리가 없지요.  
 I told him several times, so there's no way he wouldn't understand what I meant.  
 그만큼 노력했는데, 일이 안 될 리가 있겠어요?  
 After putting in so much effort, how could it not succeed?

(13) 만

Noun 만(에); Noun 만이다  
 after [an interval]; for the first time after a period of time

**Examples:**

참 오래간만입니다.  
 Long time no see.  
 오랜만에 잠을 푹 잤습니다.  
 I had a good night sleep for the first time in ages.  
 십년 만에 고향에 오니까 서먹서먹하군요.  
 It makes me a bit teary to visit my hometown after some 10 years.  
 이삼일 만에 한번씩 장을 보곤합니다.  
 I usually go to the market once very two or three days.  
 그를 본지 이십년 만이지만 모습은 옛날 그대로였어요.  
 It had been twenty years since I had seen him, but he looked just the same as in the old days.

(14) 만큼 extent

Noun 만큼

## as much as Noun, equal to Noun

**Examples:**

그 나라만큼 어려움이 많았던 나라도 드물 거예요.

There are probably few countries to have experienced as many difficulties as that country.

오늘만큼 기분 좋은 날도 많지 않았어요.

There have been few days when I was in as good a mood as I am today.

저는 선생님만큼 한국말을 잘 하지 못합니다.

I can't speak Korean as well as my teacher. [Or: as you]

핵 전쟁만큼 무서운 전쟁이 어디 있겠어요?

What war could be more frightful than ['as frightful as'] a nuclear war?

우리만큼 다정한 친구가 또 있을까?

Do you think there could possibly ever be a pair of friends as close as we are?

## Vst + -(으)ㄴ/-는/- (으)ㄹ 만큼

## so much that, enough to, to the extent that

**Examples:**

내가 도와 준 만큼 그도 나를 도왔어요.

He helped me as much as I helped him.

내가 일한 만큼 대우를 받고 싶어요.

I want to be paid in an amount appropriate to the work I did.

나는 배우는 만큼 잊어 버리기도 하나 봐요.

It would appear that I forget as much as I learn.

우리가 다 들어 갈 만큼 방이 넓진 않았어요.

The room wasn't big enough for all of us to fit in it.

그 사람의 말을 못 알아들을 만큼 내가 둔하지는 않아요.

I'm not so thick as to be unable to understand what he was saying.

## Vst + -(느)니/- (으)니 만큼

## as much as the doing ~ having done; insofar as/seeing as did ~ does/ is ~ was

**Examples:**

일이 힘들니 만큼 대우도 잘 해줍니다.

They pay well in recognition of the difficulty of the work.

가뭄이 심하니 만큼, 물을 아껴 써야 합니다.

Insofar as the drought is severe, we should use water sparingly.

환절기이니 만큼 늘 감기에 조심하도록 해

Seeing as it's the change of seasons, keep careful you don't catch a cold.

명절날이니 만큼 친척 어른들을 찾아뵙도록 합시다.

Seeing as it's a holiday, let's try to pay our respects to our elder relatives.

배 부르게 먹었으니 만큼 운동도 열심히 해야겠죠.

Seeing as I've eaten myself full, I have to do some vigorous exercise, too.

## (15) 망정 it's a good thing that... ; it was a lucky thing that... ; only owing to; it is fortunate that... fortunately ... for otherwise

This particular bound noun always occurs mid-sentence as 망정이지, and can be preceded by a number of different forms: -(으)니, -기에, -길래.

**Examples:**

음식을 많이 준비했으니 망정이지 모자랄 뻔했어요.

Thank goodness I prepared lots of food — we almost ran short.

다행히 생각이 났으니 망정이지 하마터면 불 날 뻔했지 뭐야.

It's a good thing I thought of it — we almost had a fire!

막차라도 탔기에 망정이지 집에 못 들어왔을걸.

It was a lucky thing we caught the last train, otherwise we couldn't have made it home.

노처녀로 늙을 뻔했지, 나를 만났기에 망정이지.

You would have ended up an old maid, if it hadn't been for meeting me.

범인으로 몰렸을 거예요. 알리바이가 있었길래 망정이지요.

Good thing he had an alibi — otherwise he would have been accused as a criminal.

(16) 무렵 **the time/occasion (when)**

AVst+-(-으)ㄹ 무렵(에) ; -(-으)ㄹ 무렵이다

(at/on) the time/occasion (when); it is the time/occasion when...

**Examples:**

동틀 무렵에 해변가에 나가 보세요.

Why don't you go out to the seashore around daybreak?

여름이 다 갈 무렵에 새싹이 나기 시작했어요.

Just as summer was coming to a close the new buds began to come out.

우리가 철들 무렵이 되면, 부모님은 돌아가시고 안 계시겠죠.

At about the time we finally reach maturity, our parents will probably be dead and gone.

내가 군에 입대한 것은 전쟁이 끝날 무렵이었어요.

It was about the time the war ended that I entered the army.

웬지 해 질 무렵이 되면, 마음이 쓸쓸해져서 그래요.

It's because, for some reason, whenever it gets toward sunset, I start to feel lonely.

(17) 바 **way, means; a thing, that (which)**

AVst+-(-으)ㄹ/-는/-(-으)ㄹ 바

the fact that ... did~was/does~is/will do~be

**Examples:**

성경을 읽고 깨달은 바가 있어요.

I've come to realize something as a result of reading the Bible. [Lit. : There is something I've come to realize...]

그것은 그 사람 일이지 내가 알 바가 아니에요.

That's his business, and none of mine.

선생님도 아시는 바와 같이 저는 영어를 모르잖아요.

As you know, too, I don't know English.

요즘 들리는 바에 의하면 석유 값이 계속 내린다나 봐요.

According to what I hear lately, it seems they say the price of oil is still

going down.

문제가 커져서 어찌할 바를 모르겠어요.

The problem has become so big, I don't know what to do.

AVst+-(-으)ㄹ 바에야

if/since (as long as) one is to do

**Examples:**

친구를 도울 바에야, 아무 조건 없이 도와주십시오.

As long as/if you're going to help a friend, you should/might as well as do so unconditionally.

아무 치료도 받지 않을 바에야 왜 병원에 있습니까?

If you're not going to have any treatment, what the point of being in the hospital?

법을 만들기만 하고 지키지 않을 바에야 왜 애써 만들까요?

If you're going to make laws without observing them, what the point of going to the trouble of making them?

이왕에 떠날 바에야 미련 없이 떠나세요.

If you insist on leaving, please do so without any regrets.

집을 지을 바에야 한번 멋지게 지어 보세요.

If you're going to build a house, build a really nice one.

## (18) Vst+-(-으)ㄹ 뻔했다

is/comes/goes near (doing) ; almost, nearly, well-nigh (does) ; just barely escapes (doing)

Note that the auxiliary adjective 하다 in this pattern only ever occurs in the past tense. Usually the pattern occurs with action verbs, but in contrary-to-fact wish conditions in -더라면 the then-clause can consist of 좋을 뻔했다 or 좋았을 뻔했다.

**Examples:**

어제 계단에서 넘어질 뻔했어요.

Yesterday I almost fell down the stairs.

차에 치일 뻔했습니다.

I almost got hit by a car.

배가 아파서 죽을 뻔했습니다.

My stomach hurt so much I almost died.

다방에 갔더라면 그 친구를 만날 뻔했어요.

If we had gone to the tea house we could have ['almost'] met our friends.

같이 갔더라면 좋았을 뻔했네요.

Too bad you couldn't go with us [It would 'almost' have been good if...]!

**(19) 뿐 only; merely; just; alone; nothing but; constantly**

Vst+-(-으)ㄴ 뿐이다

all/the only thing one does/is is...

**Examples:**

말을 들었을 뿐이지 직접 보지는 못했어요.

I've only ever just heard of it; I've never seen it myself.

다른 묘책이 없으니 한숨만 나올 뿐이에요.

We have no other brilliant ideas, so all we can do is sigh about it. [Lit.: Since we have no other ingenious schemes, all that comes out are sighs [of regret].]

친구를 잠시 만났을 뿐, 아무 것도 하지 않았어요.

All I did was meet a friend briefly; besides that, I didn't do anything.

아무 말도 생각나지 않아서 듣기만 했을 뿐입니다.

I couldn't think of anything to say, so I just listened.

너무 어처구니 없어서 넋을 잃고 바라만 보았을 뿐이지요.

I was so flabbergasted all I could do was stare in awe.

Noun + 뿐이다

is only...; is just...; is nothing but...; is merely...

**Examples:**

내가 아는 사실은 이 한 가지 뿐입니다.

The only thing ['fact'] I know is this.

아이들을 안심하고 보낼 수 있는 곳은 집 앞 공원뿐이지요.

The only place I can send the kids in peace of mind is the park in front of the house.

산에 잡초뿐이지 큰 나무는 볼 수 없군요.

I can see any big trees on the mountain — it's nothing but weeds.

늘 말뿐이지 실천하는 것은 못 봤습니다.

I've never seen her actually do anything ['in practice'] — it always just words.

그 이야기를 믿고 있는 사람은 오직 김 선생뿐입니다.

The only person who believes that story is Mr. Kim.

Vst+-(-으)ㄴ 뿐(만) 아니라 : Noun+뿐(만) 아니라

not only... but (also); moreover; furthermore; as well as; besides, in addition, on top of that

**Examples:**

너뿐만 아니라 나도 그 일을 할 수 있다.

It's not only You — I can do that, too.

그 날은 날씨가 추울 뿐만 아니라 눈도 왔어요.

Not only was it cold that day — it was snowing, too.

이 음식은 어른뿐만 아니라 아이도 좋아합니다.

Both adults and children alike like this food. ['Not only adults, but also children like this food.']

그 여자는 마음이 착할 뿐만 아니라 얼굴도 예뻐요.

Not only is she a good person, she also has a pretty face.

그 친구는 공부를 잘 할 뿐 아니라 성격도 좋습니다.

Not only does she study well, but she also has a nice personality.

Vst+-(-으)ㄴ 뿐더러

not only... but (also); moreover; furthermore; as well as; besides, in addition, on top of that

This pattern is synonymous with the pattern above.

**Examples:**



공부도 잘 할 뿐더러 운동에도 소질이 많아요.

Not only does she study well, but she also has a lot of talent for sports.  
돈을 잘 벌 뿐더러 잘 쓸 줄도 압니다.

Not only does she earn a lot of money she knows how to spend it, too.  
그 외국인은 김치를 잘 먹을 뿐더러 고추장도 좋아해요.

Not only does that foreigner like kimchi' he also likes red hot pepper  
paste.

금년에는 천재도 많았을 뿐더러 인재도 많았어요.

This year there were not only lots of natural disasters, but also lots of  
man-made disasters.

그 법은 국민의 호응도 얻었을 뿐더러 실천도 잘 됩니다.

Besides being favorably received by the people, that law is also working  
well in practice.

**Vst+-다 뿐, followed by rhetorical question or by copula -이다**  
**is only...; is just...; is nothing but...; is merely...; it is merely that...?!**

This pattern has two usages. In its first usage, it is not much different  
from Vst+-(으)ㄴ 뿐이다, but the -다 has the effect of quoting a prior  
statement (whether real or presumed). Thus, this first usage can be used  
to reiterate, reaffirm, or recapitulate something more forcefully. Note,  
though, that the preceding verb in this pattern rarely occurs as 한다,  
even with action verbs. In its second usage, the pattern is followed by a  
rhetorical question, and has the same forceful reaffirming effect.

**Examples:**

할인대매출은 값만 싸다 뿐이죠. 질은 그저 그래요.

Sure, [but] big discount sales are just cheaper. The quality is still [only]  
so-so.

김군이 이군보다 성격이 좋다 뿐이죠. 둘 다 공부는 못해요.

The only difference between students Kim and Lee is that Mr. Kim has  
a better personality. They're both poor students.

어제에 비해서 오늘 기온이 조금 높다 뿐입니다. 그리 따뜻하지는  
않습니다.

Compared to yesterday the temperature today is only a little higher. It'

s not so warm.

그가 일을 끝내다 뿐이겠어요? 뒤통다꺼리도 잘 할 거예요.

Will he finish the job? Of course he will — he'll even do a good job with  
the tidying up when he's done.

그 친구는 돈만 없다 뿐이지 사람은 그만입니다.

The only problem with him is that he has no money; as a person, you  
can't beat him.

**(20) 수 a way, a means, a remedy, a resource, help; an occasion, a possible occasion, a possibility, a likelihood; ability, capability**

**Vst+-(-으)ㄴ 수 있다/없다**

**can/cannot do or be; one has(n't) the ability/capacity/possibility or resources to do or be; one has an occasion to do or be**

Note that, as a noun, 수 can be followed by any number of different  
particles, depending on the nuance called for: 가, 는, 도 밖에, etc.

**Examples:**

한국말을 조금 할 수 있어요.

I can speak a little Korean.

몸이 아파서 오늘 일을 할 수 없습니다.

I'm not feeling well, so I can't work today.

한자를 읽을 수는 있으나 쓰지는 못해요.

I can read Chinese characters, but I can't write them.

시험에 합격해야만 면허증을 받을 수가 있습니다.

You have to pass the test before you can get a license.

비행장엔 오늘 내가 나갈 수밖에 없습니다.

There is no choice but for me to go out to the airport today.

NB: This pattern typically occurs with action verbs, but on a descrip-  
tive base, is compatible with the meanings of 'possibility', 'case' or 'occa-  
sion'.

**Examples:**

평수가 적으니까 방들이 좁을 수밖에 없지요.

There's not much square footage, so the rooms have no choice but to be small. [Lit.: there is no possibility other than being small]

열이 오르면 속도 안 좋을 수가 있습니다.

When you have a fever, it is also possible to (there are also occasions when you) have an upset stomach

값이 비쌀 수는 없지요. 도매시장인데요.

There's no way the price would be expensive — it's a wholesale market.

상표에 따라서는 옷이 좀 클 수도 작을 수도 있습니다.

Depending on the brand, clothes can be a little bigger or a little smaller.

Vst+-(-으)ㄴ/-는 수가 있다/없다

a way or means exists/does not exist; there are(n't) times or occasions when did/was or does/is

**Examples:**

이 방법 말고 다른 좋은 수가 없을까요?

Would there be any other good way to do it besides this method?

하는 수 없이 그 일을 포기하고 말았어요.

There was nothing we could do about it — we ended up giving up on it.

돈이 떨어졌으니, 무슨 뽀족한 수가 있겠어요? 굶어야지.

Our money's all gone, so what other alternatives do we have? We'll just have to starve.

입학시험을 한번에 딱 붙는 수는 없을까요?

Do you suppose there mightn't be a way to pass the entrance examination in one try?

전기불도 나가고 촛불도 없으니 자는 수밖에 다른 도리가 없군요.

The electric lights have gone out, and we haven't any candles, so there's nothing to do except go to bed.

Any Base+-(-으)ㄴ 수가 있어야죠

How can one ever...? (rhetorical question)

**Examples:**

돈 쓸 일만 자꾸 생기니, 돈을 모을 수가 있어야죠.

We keep always having to spend money — When will we ever save any?

아무리 타일러도 말을 안 들으니, 큰소리 안 칠 수가 있어야죠.

She never listens, no matter how much I admonish her; how can I not shout at her?

그 사람 하는 짓이 저 꼴이니 눈뜨고 그냥 볼 수가 있어야죠.

What he's doing is so disgusting — I can't bare to look.

그릇도 수저도 없으니, 뭘 대접할 수가 있어야죠.

We've no plates and no utensils; there's no way for us to entertain them.

김치가 매워서 그냥 먹을 수가 있어야죠. 그래서 물에 씻어 먹었습니다.

The kimchi' was so hot it was impossible to eat. So I washed it off in water before eating it.

**(21) 양 [apparent] expectation, plan, intention**

AVst+-(-으)ㄴ 양(으로)

[as if] having the intention to...; as if meaning to

**Examples:**

불우한 이웃을 도울 양으로 이야기를 하더군요.

He was saying something about perhaps helping out unfortunate neighbors.

국회의원으로 나설 양으로 그 지역 일에 발 벗고 나서더군요.

[I recall] he had plunged into regional affairs as if perhaps intending to stand for office as a National Assemblyman.

기회만 있으면 덮칠 양으로 노려보는 호랑이 같아요.

He's like a tiger waiting for its chance to pounce, if only given the opportunity ['seeming as though intending to pounce, if only the opportunity arises'].

집을 한 채 지을 양으로 설계 중입니다.

I'm in the midst of drawing up plans [with the intention] to build a house.

금방 결혼할 양으로 서두르더니 아직 소식이 없죠?

They were rushing headlong into an imminent marriage — still no news?

Vst+-(-으)ㄴ/-는 양

as if/as though/seeming to have done~be doing~be

This particular *seem* pattern, which can be treated as an abbreviation of -(으)ㄴ/-는 모양, is perceived as softer and gentler than some of the other patterns with similar meanings, and thus appears frequently in poetry and *sijo*.

**Examples:**

사실도 아닌 일을 마치 사실인 양 잘도 꾸며대네요.

You sure do make up untrue stories just as if they were fact!

돈도 한푼 없는데 부자인 양 허세를 부리는군요.

You're just putting on airs as if you were rich when you don't even have a penny.

반장이라도 되는 양 어깨에 힘을 주고 다니던데요.

[I seem to recall] He was walking around with a [proud] strength in his shoulders as if he were becoming the Class Monitor or something.

온 세상이 자기 무대인 양 판을 치고 있어요.

He's carrying on as if the whole world were his stage.

무슨 잔치라도 벌이는 양 떠들썩하군요.

They're making a big racket as if throwing a banquet or something.

**(22) 적 the time (when), (on) the occasion**

This bound noun typically occurs as a post-modifier, but can also function as a post-noun.

Vst+-(으)ㄴ/-었(-았-, -였-)-던 적이 있다/없다

there is/is not an occasion of having done or been; has ever or once happened

**Examples:**

나도 그 사람을 만난 적이 있어요.

I met her once, too.

도서관에서 책을 잃어버린 적이 있어요.

I've lost a book once in the library.

언젠가 제주도에 여행갔던 적이 있어요.

I traveled to Cheju Island once on some occasion or another.

빨간 색 옷은 입은 적이 없습니다.

I've never worn red clothes.

택시에 우산을 놓고 내린 적이 많아요.

I've left umbrellas in taxis on many occasions.

Vst+-(으)ㄴ 적

the time when it is/does (or is about to do)

**Examples:**

세살 적 버릇이 여든까지 간다.

A three-year old habits last to 80. (Proverb)

어렸을 적에 고향에 가 본 적이 있어요.

I went to my hometown once when I was little.

내 얘기를 들을 적에 뭘 생각하고 있었어요?

What were you thinking about when you heard about me?

아이가 울 적마다 어떻게 달래셨어요?

How did you calm the baby down every time it cried?

천둥 번개가 칠 적마다 깜짝깜짝 놀라곤 합니다.

Every time thunder and light strike, I startle.

**(23) 줄 the assumed fact; the likelihood, probability; the how, the way (how to)**

This post-modifier typically appears with verbs of knowing like 알다 and 모르다.

AVst+-(으)ㄴ 줄 알다/모르다

knows how to do; knows the way to do

**Examples:**

은행에서 돈을 찾을 줄 알아?

Do you know how to take money out of the bank?

너는 술 마실 줄 아니?

Do you know how to drink?

나도 영어로 말할 줄 알아요.

I know how to speak in English, too.

저 애는 아직 심부름을 할 줄 몰라요.

That kid doesn't know how to run errands yet.

한국노래를 부를 줄 알지만, 지금은 부르고 싶지 않군요.

I know how to sing Korean songs, but I don't want to sing just now.

Vst+-(-으)ㄴ/-는/-(-으)ㄴ 줄 알다/모르다

thinks (supposes, assumes, expects, believes) that it or one did ~ was/  
is doing ~ is/will do ~ be

**Examples:**

내가 네 마음을 모르는 줄 아니?

Do you think I don't understand what you're feeling?

어제 밤 사이에 눈이 이렇게 많이 온 줄 몰랐어요.

I had no idea so much snow had fallen last night.

그 사람에게 이렇게 여러가지 재주가 있는 줄 몰랐어요.

I had no idea she had so many varied talents.

비가 올 줄 모르고 우산을 안 가지고 나왔네요.

Not knowing it was going to rain, I've come out without my umbrella.

나는 아드님이 벌써 결혼한 줄 알았는데요.

Gee, I thought your son would have already married [by now].

- (24) **지** the uncertain fact whether; given the state of being; it is so ...  
that; (the time since) its happening

AVst+-(-으)ㄴ 지

(the long time) since, from the time when

The clause following this form with the time expression typically employs the verbs like *되다* and *지나다*. Note that the verb before *-(으)ㄴ 지* can be either affirmative or negative with no effect on the truth value.

**Examples:**

그 사람을 만난 지 일주일이 되었습니다.

It has been one week since I met her.

내가 서울에 온 지 십년이 되었습니다.

It has been 10 years since I came to Seoul.

한국말을 배우기 시작한 지 몇 달 되지 않았어요.

It's been only a few months since I started learning Korean.

시장에 간 지 한 시간이 지났는데 아직 돌아오지 않았습니다.

An hour has passed since she went to the market, and she still hasn't come back.

비행기가 이륙한 지 50분 만에 제주도에 착륙했습니다.

Just 50 minutes after taking off, the airplane landed on Cheju Island.

Any Base+-(-으)ㄴ/-는/-(-으)ㄴ 지 알다/모르다

-었(았, 었)는지

knows/doesn't know whether ~ why ~ where ~ when ~ how did ~ was/  
is doing ~ is/will do ~ be

When used as a single complex ending, this pattern is always accompanied by a question word. Otherwise, two such clauses in ... *-(으)ㄴ 지* ... *-(으)ㄴ 지*, ... *-는지* ... *-는지* or ... *-(으)ㄴ 지* ... *-(으)ㄴ 지* can be juxtaposed to pose a choice between two uncertain or unknown possibilities.

**Examples:**

김 선생은 무엇을 하는지 알 수 없어요.

I have no idea what Mr. Kim is doing.

그 사람이 어디에 갔는지 모르겠어요.

I don't know where he went.

지금 떠나면 몇 시에 대구에 도착할지 모르겠어요.

I don't know what time you'll arrive in Taegu if you leave now.

이게 좋을지 저게 좋을지 생각해 보시고 말씀해 주세요.

Please give some thought as to whether this one would be good or that one, and then let me know.

택시가 빠른지 지하철이 빠른지, 어서 알려 주세요.

Please let me know which is faster — the subway or a taxi.

얼마나 + Vst + -(으)ㄴ/-는지 **알다/모르다**  
 did or was/does or is so much or incredibly

A kind of exclamation, this pattern literally means *I have no idea how much it did or does [because it was so much or so incredible]*. In place of 얼마나 one can also use other similar expressions like 어쩌나 or 어떻게나. This pattern is also frequently used in rhetorical questions.

**Examples:**

길이 얼마나 막히는지 몰라요.

The roads are so clogged up!

밥 먹고 난 후 설거지하기가 얼마나 귀찮은지 알아요?

Do you have any idea what a pain it is to do the dishes after eating?

쓰레기 종량제 실시 후에 쓰레기 양이 얼마나 줄었는지 몰라요.

You have no idea how much the amounts of garbage reduced after we charged individuals for each garbage bag.

지난 밤은 어쩌나 더웠는지 몰라요.

Last night it was incredibly hot.

어떻게나 보고 싶은지요.

I miss her so much!

**(25) 참 (at) the point of doing, just as it is happening**

AVst + -(으)ㄴ 참이다

the intention to do; when something is about to happen, when one is going (set) to do

**Examples:**

금년에는 꼭 결혼할 참이야.

This year I'm going to get married for sure.

방금 선생님께 전화할 참이었어요.

I was just about to call you.

내년부터는 가능하면 저축을 실천해 볼 참입니다.

From next year, if possible, I intend to accumulate some savings.

봄이 되면 새 집으로 이사갈 참인데요.

We plan to move to a new house once spring comes.

졸업 후에는 취직하는 대신 유학을 갈 참이에요.

After graduation, I'm planning to go abroad to study instead of getting a job.

AVst + -(으)려던 참이다

on the point/verge of; just when it was (has been) happening

**Examples:**

지금 막 전화를 걸려던 참이었습니다.

We were just about to call you now.

은행에 가니까 마침 문을 내리려던 참이더군요.

When I went to the bank, they were just about to close the doors.

외출을 하려던 참에 친구가 와서 같이 나갔어요.

Just as I was about to go out, my friend came, so we went out together.

택시를 타려던 참인데 버스가 마침 오더군요.

I was just about to get into a taxi when the bus came.

지금 심심해서 뭘 마시려던 참인데 같이 마십시다.

I was just feeling bored and fixing to get something to drink, so let's drink something together.

**(26) 채 just as it is, intact, as it stands, with no change**

AVst + -(으)ㄴ 채(로)

just as it is/did, (in) the original state of ... as is/was

**Examples:**

옷을 입은 채로 물에 뛰어 들어갔지요.

We jumped into the water with our clothes on, of course.

입을 꼭 다문 채 아무 말도 하지 않더군요.

He didn't say a word, and [just] kept his mouth sealed shut.

문이 열린 채 아무도 없었습니다.

The door was open and there was nobody there.

사고난 자동차를 길에 버려둔 채로 도망가 버렸어요.

58 Chapter Two

They just left there bashed-up car as it was in the street and ran off.  
텔레비전을 켜 놓은 채로 잠이 들었나봐요.  
Seems he fallen asleep in front of the TV.

(27) 체 **pretense**

This pattern is synonymous with the pattern in -(으)ㄴ/-는 척하다.

Vst+-(으)ㄴ/-는 체하다  
pretends/makes as if did~was/does~is

**Examples:**

그 남자는 늘 열심히 일하는 체합니다.  
That man always pretends to be working hard.  
아무리 자는 체해도, 소용없습니다.  
No matter how much you try ['pretend'] to sleep, it's no use.  
일부러 기분 좋은 척했지만, 친구들이 알아차렸습니다.  
I made a point of trying hard to pretend to be in a good mood, but my friends figured it out.  
알고도 모르는 체할 수밖에 없었습니다.  
Even though we knew, all we could do was pretend ignorance.  
보고도 못 본 체, 들어도 못 들은 체, 알고도 모르는 체했어요.  
We saw, but pretended we hadn't, we heard, but pretended we didn't, and we knew, but pretended not to know.

(28) 탓 **fault; reason, ground(s); because**

This bound noun usually expresses the reason or cause for some unwanted or undesirable result. The reason or cause can also serve as an excuse.

Noun + 탓이다  
is the fault of Noun, can be blamed on/attributed to Noun

**Examples:**

잘 되면 내 탓이고 못 되면 조상 탓이래요.  
They say if all goes well, they take credit themselves, and if it doesn't work out, they blame their ancestors.  
건망증이 심한 건 나이 탓이죠.  
The fact that he is so terribly forgetful can be blamed on his [advanced] age.  
악덕 기업주 탓으로 많은 사람들이 희생되었죠.  
A lot of people fell victim on account of vicious big business owners.  
그 교통사고는 미숙한 운전 탓입니다.  
The traffic accident was due to inexperienced driving.  
내가 오늘 학교에 늦은 것은 늦잠 탓입니다.  
I was late to school today because I woke up late.

Vst+--는/--(으)ㄴ 탓으로, Vst+--는/--(으)ㄴ 탓이다  
is because of, due to [the fault of], on account of

**Examples:**

애들이 예의가 없는 건 가정교육을 잘못 시킨 탓이죠.  
The fact that children have no manners is the fault of improper home education.  
엄마하고만 지내는 탓인지 다른 아이들보다 낯가림이 심한 편이에요.  
Maybe it's because she only spends time with her mother, but she terribly shy compared to other kids.  
매일 과도한 탓으로 몸살이 났나 봐요.  
Seems he had a physical collapse on account of overwork everyday.  
날씨가 추운 탓인지 꼼짝도 하기 싫군요.  
Maybe it's the cold weather, but I don't feel like budging.  
집이 지저분한 것은 어머니께서 안 계신 탓이에요.  
The house is so dirty because their mother isn't around.

(29) 터 **relationship, friendship, terms, footing; a circumstance; plan, schedule; expectation, anticipation, intention**

Note that both **터** and **테** occur interchangeably, although **터** is more likely to be encountered in written language, and **테** is more likely to be found in spoken language. The form in **테** is due to the vowel of original **터** assimilating under the influence of the following copular **-이-**: **터+-이다** → **테다**, etc.

**AVst+-(-으)ㄹ 테야**

it is the intention/expectation to be/do; is going to, will likely; is expected/supposed to

A contraction from **-(-으)ㄹ +터 + -(이)야**, this pattern expresses an intention or plan. Note that this pattern occurs almost exclusively in the Intimate (**해**) and Plain (**한다**) Styles. The meaning of intention or plan appears to be limited to first-person statements and second-person questions, whereas sentences with third-person subjects carry the meaning of supposition or anticipation (I think/reckon he/she/it...).

**Examples:**

난 바빠서 먼저 갈 **테야**.

I'm busy, so I'm going to take off first.

나도 엄마를 따라갈 **테야**.

I'm going to go with mom, too.

이번에는 꼭 우승을 하고 말 **테야**.

This time I determined to come out victorious.

또 다시 이런 일을 할 **테야**, 안 할 **테야**?

Are you going to do this again? Or not?

오늘 중으로 이 일을 마치고 말 **테야**.

I determined to finish this job within the day.

**Vst+-(-으)ㄹ 테니까**

since it is the expectation/intention that ...

This is a combination of two patterns. The first is the pattern above in **-(-으)ㄹ테(이)다** where the post-modifier **테** means intention; expectation: The second is the 'sequential' **-(-으)니(까)** in its meaning of since, as,

because, etc. (see page 265). This pattern tends to occur mostly in the first person ('I', 'we'), and sets up a following command, request or suggestion. The combined effect of this pattern, then, is: Since I/we intend to do something, ... **COMMAND/REQUEST/SUGGESTION**.

**Examples:**

나는 집에 있을 **테니까** 전화하세요.

I'll be at home, so please call.

운전은 내가 할 **테니까** 좀 주무세요.

I'll drive, so why don't you sleep a bit?

무거운 건 남자들이 옮길 **테니까**, 가벼운 짐이나 옮기세요.

The men will move the heavy items, so just move the light loads.

친구들이 기다리고 있을 **테니까** 서둘러 갑시다.

Our friends must be waiting, so let's hurry up.

버리지 마세요. 그 영수증은 나중에 필요할 **테니까요**.

Don throw that away — you'll probably need the receipt later.

**Vst+-(-으)ㄹ 텐데**

would be/do; would have been/done

This is a combination of two patterns. The first is the pattern in **-(-으)ㄹ테 (이)다** where the post-modifier **테** means intention; expectation, and the second is the Imminent Elaboration pattern in **-(-으)ㄹ/-는데(요)** meaning given the circumstance that ... or in view of the circumstance that ... [I have something more to say, namely (see page 264)].

**Examples:**

배가 고플 **텐데** 라면이라도 드세요.

You must be hungry — why don't you eat some ramen or something?

손님이 올 **텐데** 빨리 준비하세요.

The guests will be arriving so hurry up and get ready!

그쪽 방향으로 갈 **텐데** 같이 갑시다.

I'll probably be going in that direction, so let's go together.

김 선생을 만나야 할 **텐데** 어디 계신지 모르겠어요.

I'm probably going to have to meet with Mr. Kim, but I have no idea

where he is.

거긴 길이 미끄러울 텐데요.

The roads there will probably be slippery [and I could elaborate — be careful!]

**Vst+-(-으)ㄴ 테면**

if it is the expectation/intention that...

This is a combination of the patterns in -(-으)ㄴ 테 (이)다 mean intention; expectation, and the conditional in -(-으)면 meaning if ... (see page 302).

**Examples:**

일을 할 테면, 끝까지 해 봐요.

If you're going to do the work, do complete job of it.

반대할 테면 반대하라지, 겁날 것 없어.

Tell her that if she's going to oppose it, she should go ahead and oppose it — there's nothing to be afraid of.

혼자 살 테면 혼자 살라고 하세요.

Tell him to go ahead and live by himself if he so intends.

때릴 테면 때려봐. 나도 가만히 있지는 않을 테니까.

Hit me, if you will — [but] I'm not just going to take in sitting down.

이를 테면 도시의 인구집중 같은 거 말이에요.

What I mean is, so to speak/as it were, a kind of urban population concentration.

**Vst+-(-으)ㄴ 테지요**

of course, it is the expectation/intention that ...; it is the expectation/intention that..., right?

This pattern is a combination of the pattern in -(-으)ㄴ +터 +(-이)다 and Suppositive -지(요). As such, it is used to express (or ask for confirmation of) a near-certain conviction or supposition on the part of the speaker.

**Examples:**

그에게서 내일쯤은 무슨 소식이 올 테지.

We're bound to get some sort of news from him by tomorrow.

그가 지금쯤은 미국에 도착했을 테지요.

He must have arrived in the US by now.

방안이 이만큼 추우니까, 밖은 더 추울 테지요.

If it's this cold indoors, it must be even colder outdoors.

여러 번 말했으니까, 이제 알았을 테지요.

I told her several times, so she must have understood by now.

그 아이가 지금은 어른이 되었을 테죠?

She must have grown up by, don't you think?

**(30) 편 side, direction, inclination, preponderance, alternative**

**Vst+-(-으)ㄴ/-는 편(이다)**

is on the ... side; does or is rather ...

The word 편 denotes a side or direction. In its function as a post-modifier, 편 indicates that a quality or action inclines toward or approximates one direction out of various possibilities.

**Examples:**

오늘 날씨는 어제보다 덜 추운 편이에요.

Today's weather is rather less cold than yesterday [lit. : is on the less cold side].

동생보다 형의 마음이 너그러운 편인가 봐요.

It seems the older brother is rather more easy-going in spirit than the younger brother.

그 사람은 뚱뚱한 편도 아니고 마른 편도 아니에요.

He neither on the fat side nor on the skinny side.

그 사람은 다른 사람에 비해서 책을 많이 읽는 편입니다.

He reads rather more books than others [lit : compared to other people, he is on the reading-a-lot-of-books side].

노력에 비해 결과가 그리 좋지 않은 편입니다.

Compared to the effort put in, the results are not so great [are on the good side].



(31) 한 **limit. end-point**

AVst+-는 한

as far as, to the limit that; (NEG+) unless

**Examples:**

제가 도울 수 있는 한 돕겠어요.

I'll help you to the best of my abilities/as much as I can.

노력하지 않는 한 성공은 불가능하죠.

Success is impossible unless you work hard at it.

내가 밥을 굶는 한이 있어도 그 책은 사야겠어.

I have to buy that book, even if it means ['having the limit of'] skipping meals.

장사를 계속 하는 한 먹고 사는 건 걱정이 아니에요.

As long as I continue doing business, day-to-day survival is not a worry.

나한테 사과하지 않는 한 용서할 수 없어요.

Unless he apologizes to me, I cannot forgive him.

## 2) Free Forms which also function as Bound Nouns/Post-Modifiers

Whereas the bound forms or post-modifiers treated in section (3) above tend not to be able to function as free forms, there is also a class of post-modifiers which consists of nouns which can occur as both bound and free forms. Because nouns like these often take on special grammatical usages and nuances when used as post-modifiers, they are a potential source of confusion for the foreign learner. Below are a few such dual-purpose nouns with examples of their usage.

(1) 관계 **relationship, bearing, connection**

Noun + 관계로

in connection with, as a result of, because of

**Examples:**

공사 관계로 불편을 끼쳐 드려 죄송합니다.

We apologize for any inconvenience caused in connection with the construction work.

그 분은 등록 관계로 외출을 하셨습니다.

He's gone out in connection with registration business.

우천 관계로 오늘 경기는 내일로 연기한대요.

They say they're postponing today's competition on account of inclement weather.

사업 관계로 둘 사이의 우정에 금이 갔어요.

A rift entered the friendship between the two of them on account of business.

여비 관계로 여행을 포기할 수밖에 없군요.

I see we have no choice but to give up our trip on account of the travel expenses.

Vst+- (으)ㄴ/-는 관계로

in connection with, as a result of, because of

**Examples:**

비가 오지 않는 관계로 시민들이 식수난을 겪고 있어요.

On account of the lack of rain, the citizens are suffering a drinking water problem.

시간이 없는 관계로 용건만 말씀드리겠습니다.

Due to the lack of time, I'll just tell you what I've called about.

오늘은 주말인 관계로 교통이 더욱 혼잡합니다.

Because it's the weekend today, the traffic is even worse than usual.

몸이 약한 관계로 힘든 일은 어렵습니다.

He has a difficult time with hard jobs on account of his physical weakness.

예산이 부족한 관계로 공사가 중단되었어요.

Construction has been suspended on account of insufficient budget.

(2) 길 **road, way, course**

The original meaning of 길 is road, but as a post-modifier it typically occurs after verbs of motion like 가다 and 오다.

AVst+-는 길이다, AVst+-는 길에

in the midst of a way/course/process, incidental to a course of action; on the/one way, while, when, as, on the occasion (of), as a side event (to)

**Examples:**

어디 가시는 길이세요?

Where are you on your way to?

저는 지금 학교에 가는 길입니다.

I'm on my way to school.

집에 돌아 오는 길에, 시장에서 물건을 샀어요.

I bought some things at the market on the way home.

영화 보러 가는 길에, 식사도 하려고 합니다.

I intend to eat on the way to see the movie, too.

퇴근하는 길에 다방에 들러 친구를 만나야 합니다.

On the way home from work I have to stop at a tea house to meet a friend.

NB: This pattern can also be used with the connective endings -(으)니까 and -(으)는데 :

**Examples:**

점심하러 나가는 길이니깐 나중에 얘기하죠.

I'm just on my way out to get lunch, so let's talk later.

지금 시내에 나가는 길인데, 같이 가지겠어요?

I'm just on my way downtown now; would like to come with me?

**(3) 끝 the end. conclusion, finish**

Noun 끝에 and AVst+-(으)ㄴ/-던 끝에

(as) the final consequence of doing; in the end, after doing; as a result of doing

These two patterns imply that the result in the second clause is an expected or natural one, but that it was achieved only with much effort and/or hardship.

**Examples:**

말 끝에 싸움이 시작되었습니다.

After exchanging words, they came to blows.

그 분이 과로 끝에 쓰러져서 병원에 입원했습니다.

He collapsed from overwork and was hospitalized.

오랫동안 궁리하던 끝에 사표를 제출했습니다.

After giving the matter much thought, she tendered her resignation.

고생 끝에 낙이 온다는 말이 있습니다.

There is a saying to the effect that "After suffering comes joy."

여기저기 헤맨 끝에 찾아냈어요.

After wandering about here and there, I found it.

**(4) 날 day**

AVst+-는 날에는

on days when...; the day that...

This pattern expresses a condition for an extreme situation, or a condition accompanied by tension: *should such a [tension-inducing and extreme] thing ever happen...* Thus, it is typically used in cases where the then-clause expresses an extreme supposition.

**Examples:**

핵 전쟁이 일어나는 날에는 온 세상이 재가 될 걸.

The day a nuclear war breaks out, the whole world will probably turn to ashes.

황소가 성을 내는 날에는 아주 무섭다구요.

It's really scary when the bull gets angry.

며느리가 시부모 눈 밖에 나는 날에는 끝장이죠.

The day the daughter-in-law falls out of favor with her parents-in-law, that's the end.

그렇게 정신없이 뛰어다니다가 넘어지는 날엔 크게 다친다.  
 If you run around half-crazy like that, once you fall you'll get badly hurt.  
 형이 한번 화를 내는 날엔 물불을 가리지 않습니다.  
 Once my brother loses his temperature, he really flies off the handle.

## (5) 때 time

Noun + 때

(the time) when

**Examples:**

저녁때 몇 시쯤 집에 돌아가십니까?  
 Approximately what time do you return home in the evenings?  
 점심때 어디에서 식사를 할까요?  
 Where shall we eat at lunch[-time]?  
 고등학교때 열심히 공부해야 합니다.  
 You have to study hard when you are a high school student.  
 방학때 경주로 여행하려고 합니다.  
 I'm planning to travel to Kyongju during the vacation.  
 초등학교때가 제일 즐거웠습니다.  
 My elementary school days were the most enjoyable.

Vst + -(으)ㄹ 때

(the time) when

**Examples:**

선생님은 어렸을 때부터 키가 크셨어요?  
 Have you been tall since you were a kid?  
 한국말로 말 할 때는 언제나 긴장돼요.  
 I always feel nervous when I speak in Korean.  
 오늘 아침에 해가 뜰 때까지 잤습니다.  
 I slept until ['the time when'] the sun came this morning.  
 학교에 갈 때는 버스를 타고 갑니다.  
 I take the bus when I go to school.

가끔 친구에게 전화할 때가 있어요.  
 There are sometimes occasions when I call my friends.

## (6) 도중 the midst, before finishing

Noun 도중에 and AVst + -는 도중에

(in) the midst of doing, while doing; before finishing

These patterns are slightly different from the patterns in -는 중이다 and Noun+중, in that they imply that a new event occurs while the event in the first clause is in progress, in effect replacing or interrupting the original activity. The patterns with 중 imply that the activity in the first clause continues uninterrupted.

**Examples:**

제가 일하는 도중에 불이 나갔습니다.  
 There was a blackout while I was working.  
 우리가 시내로 가는 도중에 차 사고가 났습니다.  
 We had an accident as we were on our way downtown.  
 남이 말하는 도중에 끼어들지 마세요.  
 Don't interrupt while others are talking.  
 식사하는 도중에 말을 많이 하지 않는 것이 한국 예절입니다.  
 It is considered Korean etiquette not to talk a lot during meals.  
 수업 도중에 하품하는 학생들이 가끔 있습니다.  
 There are sometimes students who yawn in ['the middle of'] class.

## (7) 마당 yard; plac

AVst + -는 마당에

under/given the circumstance that...; while

This pattern sets the scene for the event or situation in the following clause, and tends to imply a ridiculous or lamentable contrast between the two clauses.

**Examples:**

모두들 일하는 마당에 너만 놀아서 되겠니?

Since when is it OK for you to goof around when everybody else is working?

내가 나 자신도 못 믿는 마당에 누구를 믿겠어?

Who am I to trust when I don't even trust myself?

너도 나도 세계화를 위해 애쓰는 마당에 우리도 함께 노력해야지. Seeing as everyone and his uncle is working towards 'globalization' we should make an effort, too.

제대로 먹지도 못하는 마당에 자동차는 어떻게 굴리니?

How can you go tooling around in a car when we can hardly eat properly?

사느냐 죽느냐 하는 마당에 이런 작은 일로 말다툼하고 있어요?

We're in a life-or-death situation, and you're quarreling over a petty thing like this?

### (8) 모양 appearance

Vst +-는/-(-으)ㄴ/-(-으)ㄹ 모양이다

appears or seems to be doing/to have done or be/to be going to do

#### Examples:

오늘은 회의가 일찍 끝난 모양이에요.

Seems the meeting finished early today.

밖을 보니 비가 올 모양이에요.

[Now that I look outside, ] looks like rain.

김 선생이 아픈 모양이군요.

Looks like Mr. Kim is sick.

그 친구는 요즘 매우 바쁜 모양입니다.

She seems to be very busy lately.

그 집에서는 아무도 살지 않는 모양입니다.

It appears there isn't anybody living in that house.

### (9) 바람 impetus, momentum, influence

AVst +-는 바람에

(in) conjunction (with); (in) the process (of); (as a) consequence (of); (as a) result (of)

Note that the consequence in a sentence with this pattern is typically adverse or negative.

#### Examples:

가게 문을 닫는 바람에 돈을 못 벌었어요.

I wasn't able to earn any money on account of closing the store.

사람들이 떠드는 바람에 정신이 나갔었습니다.

I lost my concentration because of all the noise people were making.

아이들이 하도 조르는 바람에 그 장난감을 사주고 말았어요.

The kids pestered me so much for it that I [capitulated and] bought them the toy.

친구가 술을 권하는 바람에 취하도록 마셨어요.

I got drunk because my friend kept offering me drinks.

갑자기 출장가는 바람에 약속을 못 지켰어요.

I wasn't able to keep my appointment, as I had to go away suddenly on business.

### (10) 반면 the other side/hand

Vst +-(-으)ㄴ/-는 반면(에)

whereas on the one hand, ...; and /but on the other hand...

#### Examples:

값이 비싸지 않은 반면에 질이 안 좋은 것 같아요.

It's not expensive, but on the other hand, it doesn't seem to be of high quality.

그 사람은 부지런한 반면에 성격이 급해요.

He's hard-working, but on the other hand he also has a short fuse.

그 직장은 대우를 잘 해 주는 반면에 일이 힘든가 봐요.

The pay in that job is good, but on the other hand it appears the work is difficult.

살다보면 괴로울 때도 있는 반면 즐거울 때도 있습니다.  
 In life there are hard times, but then again, there are also good times.  
 그분은 말이 좀 많은 반면 뒤끝은 없다고 해요.  
 He talks a good talk, but on the other hand, he never holds grudges  
 against others.

## (11) 법 law

Vst+-는/-(으)ㄴ 법이다

it is fitting and proper that... does/is; there is [every] reason to expect; it is (or seems) reasonable that...; it can be expected that...; it ought (it is supposed) to be that...; it seems likely that

**Examples:**

열심히 노력하면 성공하는 법입니다.  
 Work hard, and you shall succeed.  
 돈을 빌렸으면 당연히 갚아야 하는 법입니다.  
 If you've borrowed money, it is only natural that you should pay it back.  
 죄를 지으면 벌을 받는 법이지요.  
 Crime begets punishment.  
 여름은 덥고 겨울은 추운 법입니다.  
 It's hot in summer, and cold in winter [such is the natural order of things].  
 자기가 한 대로 대우받는 법입니다.  
 Treat others as you would be treated yourself [lit. : It is in the natural order of things that one is treated as one does unto others].

AVst+-는 법이 있다/없다

there is no good reason (justification) to be/do; there is no reason to expect; it hardly seems reasonable that...; it cannot be expected that ...

This pattern typically occurs in the negative with 없다, but can occur with 있다 in rhetorical questions.

**Examples:**

굶어 죽으란 법은 없지요.  
 It hardly seems likely they would just let them starve.  
 그는 아무리 욕을 해도 골을 내는 법이 없어요.  
 You can chew her out as much as you like, but she never shows her temper.  
 원숭이는 나무에서 떨어지지 말라는 법이 있나요?  
 Is there any reasonable expectation that monkeys never fall from trees? (i. e. even the best fail on occasion)  
 여자만 집안 일을 하라는 법이 있나요?  
 Since when is there a law [dictating] that women have to do the housework?  
 어른 앞에서 담배 피우지 말라는 법이 있나요?  
 Is there some law against smoking in front of one elders? [Since when is it reasonable to expect an injunction against...?]

Vst+--(으)ㄴ 법하다

there is good reason (justification) to expect that will do/be; it is (or seems) reasonable or likely that...; it can be expected that...

**Examples :**

과로를 했으니, 몸살도 날 법합니다.  
 He's been overdoing it at work, so in all likelihood he'll suffer a physical breakdown.  
 학생 신분으로 유흥업소에 드나들었으니, 퇴학을 당할 법도 하죠.  
 Insofar as he was frequenting entertainment establishments as a [with the social status of a] student, it stands to reason that he'll be expelled from school.  
 거짓말도 그럴 법하게 해야지 누가 믿겠어요?  
 [If you lie,] You have to lie in a believable way [‘in such a way that it makes sense or stands to reason’] — Who's going to believe that?  
 자식이 부모를 모른다고 하니 될 법이나 한 말이에요?  
 The children say they don't know their [own] parents; does that make any sense?

감정 살 만한 말을 했으니 화를 낼 법도 하죠

He said something that might touch off some ill feelings, so it stands to reason they get angry.

## (12) 사이 space, interval

Note that 사이 can abbreviate to 새.

### ① 사이 as post-modifier.

Vst + -(으)ㄴ/-는/- (으)ㄴ 사이에

while, during the time that; when, after

#### Examples:

내가 없는 사이에 전화 온 거 없어요?

Were there any calls while I was out?

집이 빈 사이에 도둑이 들었어요.

The burglar entered while the house was empty.

사고란 눈 깜짝할 사이에 일어납니다.

Accidents happen in the twinkling of an eye ['in the space of time it takes to blink an eye'].

너무 바빠서 전화할 새가 없었어요.

I was so busy I didn't have a spare moment ['interval'] to call you.

잠깐 눈을 붙인 사이에 친구가 왔었다 봐요.

Looks like a friend came and went while I was catnapping ['during the interval when I just briefly napped'].

② 사이 as post-noun. As a post-noun, 사이 can mean either an interval (of elapsed time) or a relationship together or between.

Noun 사이에

interval (of elapsed time); relationship together

#### Examples:

너도 1년 사이에 많이 변했구나.

My, you've changed a lot in one year ['elapsed time'], too!

그 사람과는 오래 전부터 친구 사이였지요.

I've been friend with him since a long time ago. ['My relationship with

him has been one of friendship since long ago'].

우리 사이에 차값을 따로 계산할 수는 없지.

In our [close] relationship we can't be paying separately for every cup of tea.

부부 사이에 이기고 지는 게 어디 있어요?

Since when do spouses keep track of wins and losses? ['Since when is there such a thing as winning and losing in the relationship of husband-and-wife?']

너와 나 사이는 형제 이상이다.

Our relationship is above and beyond that of brother-to-brother.

## (13) 셈 calculation, conjecture, supposition;

The pattern below expresses the speaker's conjecture about or evaluation of an a fact or event, but can also be used by the speaker to express, for convenience's sake, a presumption about an event even when (s)he knows it not to factually so: for all practical purposes as far as I concerned,...

Vst + -(으)ㄴ/- (으)ㄴ 셈이다

accounting (for); judgement based on appearances, to all appearances/indications, that one might call...; intention, idea, expectation; for all practical purposes as far as I concerned,...

#### Examples:

그 학생은 너에 비해 열심히 공부한 셈이지.

I guess [I can assume that] that student studying harder compared to you.

내년쯤에는 집을 옮겨 볼 셈입니다.

I'm thinking of moving house sometime next year.

다음 주부터 시험이니, 이번 학기도 다 끝난 셈입니다.

Next week is exams; I guess this semester is all but over.

네가 한번 이기고 내가 한번 이겼으니까 비긴 셈이야.

You won once and I won once, so I guess that makes us even.

빚을 90% 갚았으니 거의 다 갚은 셈입니다.

I've paid off %90 of the debt, so I guess you could say I've paid it all.

AVst +-는/- (으)ㄴ/- (으)ㄹ 셈치다

supposes, assumes, grants (that); tells oneself that; pretends to oneself that

This pattern is used when the speaker wishes to (usually quite arbitrarily) rationalize or justify an event or course of action. Note that the pattern frequently occurs with -고.

**Examples:**

부모를 버린 자식인데, 자식이 없는 셈치세요.

He has abandoned his [own] parents, so you can assume you have no children yourself.

재수하는 셈치고 1년 휴학하기로 했어요.

I told myself I would take time to study for the university entrance exams again, and decided to drop out of school for a year.

월급을 안 받은 셈치고 불우 이웃을 돕기로 했어요.

Pretending I was forgoing my salary, I decided to help out those less fortunate than me.

친구에게 속는 셈치고 돈을 꾸어 주었어요.

Assuming I was being cheated by my friend, I lend him the money.

옷감을 버릴 셈치고 한복을 만들어 봤어요.

Half-assuming I would ruin the material, I tried my hand at making a hanbok.

(14) 일

□ The following pattern is used to express a past experience.

Vst(으)ㄴ 일이 있다/없다

**Examples:**

나는 저 산에 올라간 일이 있습니다.

I've been up that mountain before.

나도 스키를 배운 일이 있어요.

I learned to ski once, too.

대학 입학시험에 떨어진 일이 있습니까?

Have you ever failed the university entrance examination?

언젠가 그 분을 한번 만난 일이 있는 것 같아요.

It seems I met her once.

② In the following examples with -는, this pattern expresses a recurring habitual action, an ever-present possibility, or an action that *never* happens. (Note that the 도 is more or less redundant in the first three examples.)

Vst는 일이 있다/없다

**Examples:**

일요일에 가끔 교회에 가는 일도 있습니다.

I sometimes go the church on Sunday, too.

조심하지 않으면 길에서 넘어지는 일도 있어요.

If you're not careful, you can sometimes even fall down in the street.

가끔 당구장에서 당구를 치는 일도 있습니까?

Do you sometimes play billiards at the pool hall?

그 사람은 집에서 공부하는 일이 없습니다.

He never studies at home.

그 여자는 화를 내는 일이 없어요.

She never gets angry.

③ (15) 정도 degree, grade, extent

Noun 정도

to the degree or extent of Noun

Vst+- (으)ㄴ/-는/- (으)ㄹ 정도

did~was/does~is/will do~be to the extent that...

The original meaning of 정도 is an appropriate limit or extent, a fixed/determined amount, or relative superiority~inferiority in compari-

son with others. Usually this post-noun and post-modifier is followed by the particle로, but one also finds it followed by other particles.

**Examples:**

어머니가 화를 내실 정도라면, 얼마나 나쁜 일이었는지 알 수 있어요.

If [it was to the extent that] mother got angry about, I can imagine how awful it must have been.

기술자가 할 수 있는 정도로는 불가능하지만 최선을 다해 보겠습니다.

It's beyond the abilities of a [mere] technician, but I'll do my best. [Lit. : For the extent possible of a technician it is impossible, but...]

인사불성이 될 정도로 술을 마시면 되겠습니까?

Do you think it is acceptable to drink yourself into a coma? [Lit. : to the point of becoming unconscious]

고등학교 정도의 학력이면 취직할 수 있지요.

It is possible to find work with a high school-level educational background.

아무리 술을 못해도 맥주 한 잔 정도야 하겠지요.

However poor you may be at drinking, surely you can handle [the extent of] a glass of beer?

**(16) 지경 [lamentable/adverse] situation, condition, circumstance**

Note that the situation or circumstance referred to in this pattern is typically one which causes trouble or discomfort, and in general has adverse repercussions.

AVst+-(-으)ㄹ 지경이다

is in the [lamentable/adverse] situation, condition, circumstance of being about to...

**Examples:**

너무 피곤해서 쓰러질 지경입니다.

I'm so tired I could collapse.

어제는 배가 고파서 죽을 지경이었어요.

Yesterday I was so hungry I could have died.

물건 값이 너무 비싸서 기가 막힐 지경이에요.

Things are so expensive it just amazes me.

두 사람이 이혼할 지경에 이른 것은 아니에요.

Things haven't yet reached the stage where they might divorce.

보기만 해도 좋아 죽을 지경인가봐요.

It would appear she is thrilled to bits just looking at them.

**(17) 통 as a consequence/result of (something disturbing)****① AVst+-는 통에**

as a consequence/result of doing, under the influence of ...

This pattern is used when the speaker regards the contents of the noun or clause preceding 통 to be severe or disturbing, and the following clauses typically exercises an adverse effect. In general, this pattern is similar to that in 바람에.

**Examples:**

친구들이 떠드는 통에, 아무 말도 못 들었어요.

Because of all the noise my friends were making, I couldn't hear a thing.

그 사람이 고집부리는 통에 내가 양보를 했지요.

I gave in because he was being so stubborn.

아내가 화를 내는 통에, 나도 화가 났지요.

Because my wife was angry, I got angry, too.

문이 갑자기 닫히곤 하는 통에 자주 손을 다쳤습니다.

She injured her hand because the doors kept closing suddenly.

눈코 뜰 새 없이 바쁘게 일하는 통에 서류를 잃어 버렸어요.

We were so busy working at full tilt that we lost the document.

**② Noun + 통에**

as a consequence/result of NOUN, under the influence of (something disturbing)

The number of nouns which can occur with 통에 in this construction



is quite restricted.

**Examples:**

전쟁 통에 가족이 헤어졌어요.

The family split up as a result of/in the chaos of the war.

난리 통에 집을 잃었어요.

They lost their house amidst all the confusion.

복새 통에 서류를 놓고 왔어요.

In all the confusion, I left without the documents.

**(18) 후 afterwards, later (on)**

**Noun 후**

**after the Noun**

action Base+-(-으)ㄴ 후

after (doing)

This pattern is synonymous with the patterns in -(으)ㄴ 뒤(에) and -(으)ㄴ 다음에\*.

**Examples:**

점심을 먹은 후에 잠깐 쉬어요.

I rest a bit after eating lunch.

계획을 세운 후에 실천에 옮기세요.

After you've made the plans, put them into practice.

수술을 받은 후부터 몸이 건강해졌습니다.

Ever since having my operation I ['my body'] have become healthier.

식사 후에 다시 전화하도록 하지요.

I'll make a point of calling you after supper.

잠시 후에 다시 뵙겠어요.

I'll see you shortly.

\* The opposite of these after-patterns is the before-pattern in -기 전(에).

**Examples:**

나는 외출하기 전에 점심을 먹겠어요.

I'll eat lunch before I go out.

약을 먹기 전에 먼저 진찰을 받으세요.

You should get yourself examined before taking any medicine.

## Chapter Three

# Pronouns

Pronouns are used in the place of words for people, places and things. Korean pronouns can be divided into personal pronouns and demonstrative pronouns.

### 1. Personal Pronouns

The personal pronouns in Korean include honorific expressions, a characteristic feature of the Korean language. Thus, according to the degree of honorification or politeness expressed, pronouns can be divided into Honorific (High) (높임말), Plain (Regular) (예사말) and Deferential (Low) (낮춤말). In the third person, we can also distinguish interrogative~indefinites and indeterminate pronouns. By 'interrogative~indefinite pronoun' is meant a pronoun which designates a person whose identity is unknown, and by 'indeterminate pronoun' is meant a pronoun which vaguely designates someone or anyone out of a group. Observe the following chart. (see page 210).

<Figure 8> Personal Pronouns

구분 Classification	계층 Level	단수 Singular	복수 Plural
1인칭 1st Person	높임말 Honorific	—	—
	예사말 Plain	나 I	우리(들) We
	낮춤말 Deferential	저 I	저희(들) We
2인칭 2nd Person	높임말 Honorific	선생, 어른, 자네, 그대, 어르신 Mr., Mr., You, You, Sir	선생들, 어른들, 자네 들, 그대들, 어르신들 Mr., Mr., You, You, Sirs
	예사말 Plain	너 You	너희(들) You
	낮춤말 Deferential	—	—
3인칭 3rd Person	높임말 Honorific	이 분, 그 분, 저 분 This, That or That person	이 분들, 그 분들, 저 분들 These, or Those people
	예사말 Plain	이이, 그이, 저이, 그 This or That Per- son	이들, 이이들, 그이들, 저들, 저이들, 그들 These or Those people
	낮춤말 Deferential	애, 재, 개 This, That or That person	—
	미지칭 Interrogative -Indefinite	누, 누구 Who? Someone	—

	부정칭 Indeterminate	아무, 아무개 Anyone, So-and -so, some-one or other	
--	----------------------	--	--

**Examples :**

나는 구두를 샀습니다.

I bought some shoes.

제가 그 분을 만났습니다.

I met him [‘that esteemed person’].

선생은 어디에서 일하십니까?

Where do you work?

우리가 직접 일을 합니다.

We do the work personally. or We do the work ourselves.

그 분들이 저희에게 길을 물었습니다.

They asked us for directions.

누가 누구에게 반말을 하지?

Who spoke in Intimate Style to whom?

교실에는 아무도 없습니다.

There is no one in the classroom.

**2. Demonstrative Pronouns**

Demonstrative pronouns stand in the place of expressions for places or things. Depending on the distance from the speaker and hearer, we can distinguish proximal (close to the speaker), medial (closer to the hearer or else mentioned in or known from earlier discourse) and distal (equally far from both speaker and listener) pronouns.

	사 물 Things	장 소 Places
근칭 Proximal	이것	여기
중칭 Medial	그것	거기
원칭 Distal	저것	저기
미지칭 Interrogative~ Indefinite	무엇, 어느 것	어디
부정칭 Indeterminate	아무 것	아무데

Some of these pronominal expressions undergo abbreviation when they combine with particles; these abbreviations are common in colloquial speech.

- |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 이것이 → 이게 | 이것은 → 이건 | 이것을 → 이걸 |
| 그것이 → 그계 | 그것은 → 그건 | 그것을 → 그걸 |
| 저것이 → 저계 | 저것은 → 저건 | 저것을 → 저걸 |
| 여기는 → 여긴 | 여기를 → 여길 |          |
| 거기는 → 거긴 | 거기를 → 거길 |          |
| 저기는 → 저긴 | 저기를 → 저길 |          |

**Examples :**

이것이(이계) 내 책입니다.  
This is my book.  
그것은(그건) 무엇입니까?  
What is that?  
아무 것도 없어요.  
There is nothing. or I have nothing.

이것들은 모두 김 선생 그림입니다.  
These are all Mr. Kim's drawings.  
여기는(여긴) 서울역입니다.  
This [place] is Seoul Station.  
저기를(저길) 어떻게 올라가요?  
How do you get up there?  
저기에 무엇이 있습니까?  
What is there over there?  
주말에는 차가 밀려서 아무데도 가기 싫어요.  
I hate to go anywhere on the weekends because the traffic is always backed up.

## Chapter Four

# Numerals

Numerals are words which designate the quantity or sequence of nouns. Thus, we can distinguish cardinal numerals (양수사) and ordinal numerals (서수사).

### 1. Cardinal Numerals

Cardinal Numerals are the basis and building blocks for all other numerical concepts.

아라비아 숫자 Arabic Numbers	한글 수사 Korean	한자어 수사 Chinese	아라비아 숫자 Arabic Numbers	한글 수사 Korean	한자어 수사 Chinese
1	하나	일	50	쉰	오십
2	둘	이	60	예순	육십
3	셋	삼	70	일흔	칠십
4	넷	사	80	여든	팔십
5	다섯	오	90	아흔	구십
6	여섯	육	100	*백	백
7	일곱	칠	1,000	천	천
8	여덟	팔	10,000	만	만
9	아홉	구	100,000	십만	십만

10	열	십	1,000,000	백만	백만
20	스물	이십	10,000,000	천만	천만
30	서른	삼십	100,000,000	억	억
40	마흔	사십			

\* For all numerals above 99, Chinese character-based vocabulary are used.

1) Pure Korean Cardinal Numerals (한글 양수사)

Pure Korean numerals occur in sentences in combination with particles, or in combination with dependent nouns denoting units (counters or classifiers). When occurring with classifiers, numerals precede the classifier as modifiers; in some cases, the pure Korean numeral takes on an altered form as a modifier.

**Examples :**

빵 하나를 주세요. (numeral)

Please give me a loaf of bread.

빵 한 개를 주세요. modifier (numerical modifier)

Please give me a loaf of bread.

양수사 Cardinal Numeral	관형사 Modifier Form
하나	→ 한
둘	→ 두
셋	→ 세
넷	→ 네
다섯	→ 다섯
.	→ .
.	→ .
열	→ 열
스물	→ 스무
스물하나	→ 스물한
스물둘	→ 스물두

스물셋	→ 스물세
스물넷	→ 스물네
스물다섯	→ 스물다섯

**Examples :**

사탕 하나 줄까?

Shall I give you a piece of candy?

이 일은 혼자보다 둘이 하는 것이 낫겠다.

It would be better for two to do this rather than doing it alone.

지금 한 시 몇 분이에요?

It is now one o'clock and how many minutes?

교실에 학생 두 명밖에 없어요.

There're only two students in the classroom.

혼자서 술 세 병을 마셨어요.

I drank three bottles of booze by myself.

고양이가 새끼 네 마리를 낳았어요.

The cat had four kittens.

There are also circumstances where two or more numerals combine to form an approximate numeral; here, too, the form of the numeral (s) may undergo certain changes.

**Examples :**

커피 한두 잔

one or two cups of coffee

책 두세 권

two or three books

연필 서너 자루

three or four pencils

사과 너댓 개

four or five apples

국수 대여섯 그릇

five or six bowls of noodle

선생님 예닐곱 분  
six or seven teachers

The pure Korean numerals for counting days and dates are as follows:

1	하루 (초하루) *	11	열하루
2	이틀	12	열이틀
3	사흘	13	열사흘
4	나흘	14	열나흘
5	닷새	15	열닷새 (보름) *
6	엿새	20	스무날
7	이레	21	스무하루
8	여드레	28	스무여드레
9	아흐레	29	스무아흐레
10	열흘	30	그믐 *

\* '초하루' designates the first day of a month, and '그믐' the last day of a month.  
\* '보름' can mean either the 15th day or a 15-day period.

**Examples :**

오늘은 5월 초하루예요.  
Today is the first of May.  
부산에 가서 사흘 있을 거예요.  
I'll be going to Pusan for three days.  
정월 보름은 대보름이라고 해요.  
The fifteenth of January is called Taeborum.  
아파서 보름 동안 회사에 못 나갔어요.  
I couldn't go to work for fifteen days because I was sick.  
내일이 그믐인데 세금 다 냈어요?  
Tomorrow is the last day of the month; have you paid all your taxes?

**2) Sino-Korean Numerals (한자어 양수사)**

Sino-Korean numerals differ in some aspects of their usage from pure

Korean numerals. For example, only Sino-Korean numerals can be used with nouns like 년 year, 월 month, 일 day, or with foreign loan words or for counting money. etc.

**Examples :**

1986년 2월 21일 February 21st 1986	천구백팔십육년 이월 이십일일
41쪽 page 41	사십일쪽
1,390원 1,390 won	천삼백구십 원
제 56과 Lesson 56	제오십육과
3, 4개월 3 or 4 months	삼, 사 개월
4인분 4 portions (4 servings)	사 인분
600그램 (g) 600 grams	육백 그램
25킬로미터 (km) 25 kilometers	이십오 킬로미터

**2. Ordinal Numerals**

Ordinal numerals are words which show the order or sequence of nouns.

**1) Pure Korean Ordinal Numerals (한글 서수사)**

Pure Korean ordinal numerals follow the pattern 'cardinal numeral' + (번) 째', and designate the order of number of times. The cardinal

numerals 하나 1, 둘 2, 셋 3, and 넷 4 in this pattern are replaced by 첫, 두(둘), 세(셋) and 네(넷), respectively. The '번' is optional up to '9' but obligatory from '10' up.

**Examples :**

첫(번)째
first
두(번)째 — 둘째
second
세(번)째 — 셋째
third
네(번)째 — 넷째
fourth
다섯(번)째
fifth

여섯(번)째
sixth
열번째
tenth
열 한번째
eleventh
열 두번째
twelfth

**Examples :**

그분이 첫번째 손님입니다.

He is the first customer.

우리 집은 여기서 세번째 집입니다.

Our house is the third house from here.

두번째 골목으로 들어 오세요.

Please come in via the second alleyway.

일년중 첫번째 달을 정월이라고 합니다.

The first month of the year is called January.

그 마라톤 선수가 세번째로 들어왔습니다.

That marathon runner came in third.

## 2) Sino-Korean Ordinal Numerals (한자어 서수사)

Sino-Korean ordinal numbers follow the pattern 제 + (Sino-Korean) cardinal numeral, and express a number or order.

**Examples :**

제일
First; Number One
제이
Second; Number Two
제삼
Third; Number Three
제사
Fourth; Number Four

제십
Tenth; Number Ten
제백십이
One hundred and twelfth; Number One hundred and twelve

**Examples :**

제육과를 펴 보세요.

Please open up to chapter six.

제십차 UN총회가 열리고 있습니다.

The 10th UN General Assembly is in session.

한국은 나의 제이의 고향입니다.

Korea is my second home.

제일차 시험에는 합격했습니다.

He passed the examination on the first round.

우리가 왈가왈부할 것이 아니라 제삼자의 말을 들어봅시다.

Let's not argue the pros and cons between us; let's listen to a third party's opinion.



## Chapter Five

# Verbs

Verbs are used as the predicate in a sentence, and play the role of saying something about the subject of the sentence. There are two main types of verb in Korean: action and descriptive. action verbs denote actions, activities, motions or processes. Descriptive verbs (also called 'adjectives' denote qualities or states.

### 1. Action Verbs (동작동사)

Action verbs denote actions or processes.

**Examples :**

학생이 학교에 간다.

The student goes to school.

비가 옵니다.

It's raining.

아이가 밥을 먹습니다.

The child is eating.

나는 노란 색 옷을 입었습니다.

I wore yellow clothes.

강물이 흐른다.

The river is flowing.

## 2. Descriptive Verbs (상태동사)

Descriptive verbs denote qualities or states.

### Examples :

이 백화점은 물건값이 싸입니다.

The prices in this department store are cheap.

오늘 날씨가 매우 좋습니다.

The weather is very nice today.

여기에 꽃이 아주 많습니다.

There are lots of flowers here.

저 아이는 예쁩니다.

That child is pretty.

나에게는 이 색이 어울려요.

This color suits me.

Unlike action verbs, descriptive verbs have no command or suggestion (et...) forms. Moreover, action verbs can take the Plain Style declarative ending in '-ㄴ/-는다', but descriptive verbs take only the declarative ending '-다' in the Plain Style. Thus, the Dictionary form in -다, which has the same form as the Plain Style declarative ending, is not actually used in the case of action verbs (except in rare cases of poetic language).

### Examples :

학생들이 학교에 간다.

The students are going to school.

식당에서 밥을 먹어라.

Eat lunch in the cafeteria!

날마다 한국말을 열심히 공부하자.

Let's study Korean diligently every day.

이 물건은 질이 좋다.

This is good quality merchandise.

그 아이의 얼굴은 매우 예쁘다.

That child has a very pretty face

## 3. The Copula '-이다'

□ The Copula -이다 functions to equate or link the subject of a sentence with a predicate noun. It can also denote that the subject of the sentence belongs to or is subsumed in/included in the predicate noun. It is usual for a noun to precede '-이다', but sometimes a phrase or clause functioning as a noun can also appear in this position. Thus, the copula '-이다' functions to allow nouns or noun-like expressions to act as predicate. This is why some Korean grammarians call the copula the redicative case marker.

### Examples :

나는 김영수입니다.

I am Kim Yongsu.

이것은 책입니다.

This is a book.

이 책은 한국말 교과서이다.

This book is a Korean language textbook.

오늘은 금요일이에요.

Today is Friday.

오늘 숙제는 5페이지까지입니다.

Today's homework is up to page five.

□ The copula -이다 conjugates like a descriptive verb. Thus, it does not have a command or suggestion form, but takes declarative, interrogative and exclamatory endings. Of course, like other verbs, (whether descriptive or action), it can take a full range of connective endings, modifier endings and nominalizer endings, and can also combine with endings for tense and honorification.

### Examples :

그는 매우 좋은 사람이에요.

He is a very good person.

아들이 군인이에요?

100 Chapter Five

Is your son a soldier?

이것은 햅쌀이구나.

So this is new rice!

이 일은 네 책임인데 모른척 하거나?

This is your responsibility; are you trying to pretend not to know?

아마 금년이 처음일 것이다.

This year is probably the first time.

네 말이 진정 사실이기를 바란다.

I hope what you say is the true facts of the case.

네가 나의 영원한 친구임을 고백하고 싶어.

I want to confess that you are my eternal friend.

㉓ The Copula -이다 takes a number of special endings which are unique to it; these are the final endings for the speech levels Super Honorific (아주 높임) and Super Humble (아주 낮춤).

[예] ‘-(이)올시다’, ‘-(이)로소이다’, ‘-(이)로다’, ‘-(이)로구나’

**Examples :**

산 뒤에 또 산이로구나.

It's one mountain after another!

그것은 제 것이올시다.

That is mine.

이는 저의 소원이로소이다.

This is my wish.

보아하니, 그는 틀림없는 선비(이)로군.

Judging from appearances, I would say he is definitely a classical scholar.

그가 거짓말을 하다니 이상한 일(이)로다.

He lied, you say? How strange.

㉔ The ‘-이’ of the copula can be dropped after nouns ending in a vowel.

**Examples :**

이것은 의자(이)다.

This is a chair.

네가 영자(이)구나.

So you're Yongja!

키 작은 쪽이 언니(이)로군요.

So the short one is the older sister!

참 맛있는 사과(이)네요.

This is a really tasty apple.

이게 어제 온 편지(이)야.

This is the letter that came yesterday!

㉕ The negative of the copula -이다 is ‘아니다’. Parallel with ‘-이다’, ‘아니다’ conjugates similarly to a descriptive verb.

**Examples :**

그 일은 제가 할 일(이)인데요.

That is something I've got to do.

그럼 내가 걱정할 일이 아니로군.

Well then, it's nothing I should worry about.

그 사람은 양심 없는 사람은 아닐 거(이)예요.

He is not someone who wouldn't have a conscience.

학생(이)인데 늘 집에서 놀(이)아요.

He may be a student, but he's always goofing off at home.

이 기사는 사실(이)이 아(이)님.

This news report isn't fact.

4. The Verb ‘있다’

The verb ‘있다’ expresses existence, location or possession. In its meaning of ‘exist’, ‘있다’ has an honorific equivalent in ‘계시다’. In its meaning of possession, the honorific equivalent is ‘있으시다’.

**Examples :**

책이 책상에 있(이)어요.

The book is on the table.

부모님이 집에 계(이)십니다.

Her parents are at home.

너희 회사는 어디에 **있니**?  
 Where's your company located?  
 할머니, 돈이 얼마나 **있으세요**?  
 How much money do you have, grandmother?  
 너, 오늘 할일이 **있니**?  
 Do you have things to do today?

The verb '있다' shares features of both descriptive and action verbs. Thus, like other action verbs, '있다' has a command form and a suggestion form. But sometimes it is also conjugated like a descriptive verb.

**Examples :**

우리가 돌아올 때까지 너는 집에 **있어라**.  
 Stay home until we return!  
 이 가방을 좀 가지고 **있어**.  
 Please hold this briefcase for a while.  
 밖에 나가지 말고 그냥 집에 **있읍시다**.  
 Let's not go out; let's just stay home.  
 사장님이 요즘 한국에 안 **계신데요**.  
 The president of the company is currently not in Korea these days.  
 돈은 **있는데** 시간이 없어 여행을 못 갑니다.  
 I have the money for travelling, but not the time.

**5. Verb Conjugation (동사의 활용)**

**1) What is Conjugation?**

Korean verbs are made up of bases and endings. The bases are constant, while the endings can take more than one shape. The notion of variable endings attaching to unvarying verb bases is called conjugation.

**2) Conjugation Classes**

Through conjugation, verbs can take on numerous different functions.

Depending on these functions, we can classify Korean verb conjugation as in Figure 9 below.

**<Figure 9> Verb Conjugation**

기본형 Base form		가다	좋다	이다	있다	
		Goes	Is good	Is	Exists	
평서형 Declarative		가 -는다	좋-다	이-다	있-다	
종결형 어미	의문형 Inquisitive	가 -(느)냐	좋-(으)냐	이-냐	있-(느)냐	
	명령형 Command	가 -(아)라	/	/	있-어라	
Final endings	청유형 proposition	가 -자	/	/	있-자	
	감탄형 Apperceptive	가 -는구나	좋-구나	이-구나	있-구나	
비종결- 형 어미 Non- final endings	연결형 어미	대등적 Equivalent	가 -고	좋-으며	이-며	있-고
	Connect- ive endings	종속적 Subordinate	가 -면	좋-으면	이-면	있-으면
		보조적 Helping	가 -고 있다	좋-지 않다	이-다	있-지 않다
	전성형 어미	명사형 Nominal	가 -ㅁ	좋-음	이-ㅁ	있-음

Category changers	관형사형 Modifier	가 -는	좋-은	이-니	있-는
----------------------	------------------	------	-----	-----	-----

3) Conjugation and Suffixes

Verbs are made up of 'Bases+Endings' but there also suffixes which can enter between bases and endings and impart various grammatical functions to the verb form. Examples of such suffixes are those for passive, causative, honorific, tense, aspect, etc. When more than one such suffix occurs, the suffixes appear in a predetermined order. (See page 411).

Examples :

어머니께서 아이에게 밥을 먹이셨습니다.

The mother fed the child.

먹 - 이 - 시 - 었 - 습니다.

어간 사동 존대 시제 어미  
base caus. honorific tense ending

김 선생은 회사에 갔더군요.

My goodness! Mr. Kim went to the office!

가 - 았 - 더 - 군요.

어간 시제 시상 어미

base tense tense-aspect ending

4) Irregular Verbs (불규칙동사)

If we define 'regular verbs' as those verbs attach bases to endings without any changes in either the base or the ending, then 'irregular verbs' are those verbs which undergo unpredictable changes in the course of attaching base+ending. Some irregular verbs change or delete the final portion of their base, others add a phoneme, and yet others may experience a change in the form of an ending. Observe the following chart:

〈Figure 10〉 Irregular Verbs

불규칙 동사 Irregular verbs	변화의 양상 Types of change	예 Examples		규칙동사 Regular verbs
		동작동사 action	상태동사 descriptive	
ㅅ 동사 ㅅ verbs	The base-final ㅅ is dropped before vowels  예 : 짓+어 → 지어	짓다, 붓다, 굿다, 짓다, 잇다 build, fill, draw, stir, connect	낫다 be preferable	벗다, 웃다, 씻다, 빗다, 솟다, 빼앗다 take off, laugh, wash, comb, rise, snatch
ㅂ 동사 ㅂ verbs	The base-final ㅂ is changed to '오/우' before vowels  예 : 돕+아 → 도와	돕다, 눕다, 깎다, 줍다 help, lie down, mend, pick up	고맙다, 춥다, 반갑다, 덥다, 곱다, 맵다, 무겁다, 가볍다, 아름답다 thanks, cold, pleasing, hot, pretty, spicy, heavy, light, beautiful	잡다, 뽑다, 씹다, 입다, 접다 catch, pull out, chew, wear fold
ㄷ 동사 ㄷ verbs	The base-final ㄷ is changed to ㄹ before vowels  예 : 걸+어 → 걸어	걷다, 묻다, 듣다, 신다, 긴다, 깨닫다 walk, ask, hear, load, draw water, realize	받다, 닫다, 얻다, 묻다, 믿다, 쏟다 receive, close, get, bury, believe, pour	

〈Figure 10〉 Irregular Verbs (cont.)

불규칙 동사 Irregular verbs	변화의 양상 Types of change	예 Examples		규칙동사 Regular verbs
		동작동사 action	상태동사 descriptive	
르 동사 르 verbs	A ㄹ is added when the base-final 으 is dropped  예 : 부르+어 → 불러	부르다, 나르다, 고르다, 오르다, 누르다, 흐르다 call, transport, select, go up, press, flow	다르다, 빠르다, 서투르다, 이르다 differ, be fast, be clumsy, be early	치르다, 들르다 pay, drop in
ㅎ 동사 ㅎ verbs	The base-final ㅎ is dropped before vowels and the endings '아, 어' are changed to '애'  예 : 그렁+어서 → 그래서		그렇다, 빨강다, 노랑다, 까맣다, 파랗다 be that way, red, yellow, black, blue	좋다, 놓다, 낳다 good, put, give birth

ㄹ-verbs lose their ㄹ in front of endings beginning with ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ; insofar as one can state this as a regular phonological rule, one could argue that this class of verbs is not really 'irregular'. However, because of the change to the shape of the verb base, we include them here with other 'irregular' verbs.

ㅅ-irregular verbs

□ ㅅ-irregular verbs lose their ㅅ in front of endings beginning with a vowel.

Verb	-어(아, 여)요	-(으)면	
낫다	나아요	나으면	recover
붓다	부어요	부으면	pour
긋다	그어요	그으면	draw
잇다	이어요	이으면	connect
젓다	저어요	저으면	stir
짓다	지어요	지으면	build

Examples :

이제 감기가 다 나았어요.

My cold is all better now.

잔에 술을 가득히 부었어요.

She filled the glass full of liquor.

금을 똑바로 그으면, 보기가 좋아요.

If you draw the line straight, it looks good.

이 줄을 이어서 씩시다.

Let tie this string together and use it.

집을 지어보면, 얼마나 어려운 일인지 알게 돼요.

If you ever build a house, you'll realize how difficult it is.

② The following verbs end in ㅅ, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

빼앗다	벗다	웃다
snatch	take it off	laugh
씻다	빗다	솟다
wash	comb	rise

Examples :

동생한테서 빼앗은 게 뭐예요?

What did you snatch from your brother?

손을 깨끗이 씻으면 좋겠는데...

It'd be good if you washed your hands clean...

안경을 벗으면 판 사람같이 보입니다.  
 You look like a different person with your glasses off.  
 머리를 예쁘게 빗었네.  
 You've combed your hair pretty!  
 너무 웃어서 배가 다 아파요.  
 We laughed so much even our stomachs hurt.

**ㅁ-irregular verbs**

ㅁ-irregular verbs drop their 'ㅁ' before an ending beginning with a vowel, and then add '오' or '우'. Usually '우' is added, but the verbs 돕다 *help* and 곱다 *beautiful* add '오' when followed by the ending '-어(아, 여)'.

Verb	-어(아, 여)요	-(으)면	
반갑다	반가워요	반가우면	pleasing
고맙다	고마워요	고마우면	thankful
아름답다	아름다워요	아름다우면	beautiful
맵다	매워요	매우면	spicy
춥다	추워요	추우면	cold
곱다	고와요	고우면	pretty
돕다	도와요	도우면	help

**Examples :**

너무 반가우면 눈물이 납니다.  
 When I am very pleased to see someone, I cry.  
 지난번에는 참 고마웠어요.  
 Thank you so much for last time.  
 매운 음식은 싫어요.  
 I don't like spicy food.  
 저 아름다운 하늘을 보세요.  
 Look at that beautiful sky.  
 아이들이 잘 도와 줘요.

The kids help well.

㉔ The following verbs end in ㅁ, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

입다    잡다    씹다    넓다    업다  
 wear    catch    chew    wide    carry on the back  
 뽑다    접다    좁다    집다    붙잡다  
 pull out    fold    narrow    pick up    catch

**Examples :**

옷을 따뜻하게 입어요.  
 Wear warm clothes.  
 좁은 방에서 여러 사람이 잤습니다.  
 Several people slept in the small room.  
 애기를 업어서 재웁니다.  
 I put the baby on my back so it will fall asleep.  
 교실에서 껌을 씹으면, 안 돼요.  
 You mustn't chew gum in the classroom.  
 그분을 대통령으로 뽑았어요.  
 They elected that person president.

**ㄷ-irregular verbs**

㉕ ㄷ-irregular verbs change their final ㄷ to ㄹ before endings beginning with a vowel:

Verb	-어(아, 여)요	-(으)면	
걷다	걸어요	걸으면	walk
묻다	물어요	물으면	ask
듣다	들어요	들으면	hear
싣다	실어요	실으면	load
걷다	걸어요	걸으면	draw water
깨닫다	깨달아요	깨달으면	realize

**Examples :**

집에서 학교까지 **걸어와요.**

I walk from home to school.

내가 물으면 대답하세요.

If I ask, please answer.

선생님이 들은 대로 이야기해 보세요.

Please tell it like you heard it.

차에 짐을 많이 실었어요.

I loaded a lot of luggage into the car.

잘못을 깨달을 때까지 아무 말도 하지 마세요.

Until you realize your mistake, please don't say a word.

㉔ The following verbs end in ㄷ, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

받다	닫다	얻다
receive	close	receive
믿다	묻다	쏟다
believe	bury	pour

**Examples :**

생일날 선물을 받으셨어요?

Did you get any birthday presents?

친구한테서 예쁜 볼펜을 얻었어요.

I got a pretty pen from my friend.

쓰레기를 땅에 묻어 주세요.

Please bury your garbage in the ground.

문을 닫으면 먼지가 안 들어와요.

If you close the door, dust can get in.

내 말을 좀 믿어 주십시오.

Please believe what I say.

**르-irregular verbs**

The 으 of 르-irregular verbs drops before the ending '아/어', and the 르 is doubled, in effect changing '아/어' to '라/러'. Choice of '라/러'

depends on vowel harmony: 라 after '아, 오' and 러 after '어, 우, 으, 이'. (See page 209).

Verb	-어(아, 여)요	
다르다	달라요	differ
빠르다	빨라요	be fast
이르다	일러요	report; be early
서두르다	서둘러요	hasten
나르다	날라요	transport
고르다	골라요	select
부르다	불러요	call
흐르다	흘러요	flow

**Examples :**

물건을 골라서 삽니다.

I select things before I buy them.

택시가 버스보다 훨씬 빨라요.

Taxis are much faster than buses.

동양과 서양은 생활습관이 달라요.

Asian and Western habits are different.

아무리 불러도 대답이 없군요.

No matter how I yell, there is no answer.

아버님 생신이 언제인지 몰랐어요.

I didn't know when my father's birthday was.

**ㅎ-irregular verbs**

㉕ The base-final 'ㅎ' drops before an ending beginning with a vowel, and if the ending is '아, 어', this changes to '애'. This rule holds only for descriptive verbs.



Verb	-(-으)ㄴ	-(-으)면	-(-으)ㄹ까요?	-(-으)세요	-어(아, 여)요	
어떻다	어떤	어떠면	어떨까요?	어떠세요?	어때요	be how
이렇다	이런	이러면	이럴까요?	이러세요	이래요	this
그렇다	그런	그러면	그럴까요?	그러세요	그래요	that
저렇다	저런	저러면	저럴까요?	저러세요	저래요	that
빨강다	빨간	빨가면	빨갈까요?	————	빨개요	red
까맣다	까만	까마면	까말까요?	————	까매요	black
파랑다	파란	파라면	파랄까요?	————	파래요	blue
하얗다	하얀	하야면	하얗까요?	————	하얘요	white
노랑다	노란	노라면	노랄까요?	————	노래요	yellow

**Examples :**

이것이 어떨까요

How would this be?

빨간 옷이 노란 옷보다 더 예뻐요.

Red clothes are prettier than yellow clothes.

그러면 우리 어디로 갈까요?

In that case, where shall we go?

어떤 색을 좋아하세요?

What color do you like?

그러시면, 언제 만날까요?

If that is the case [for you], when shall we meet?

㉔ The following verbs end in ㅎ, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

많다	괜찮다	낳다
many	OK	give birth
싫다	좋다	넣다...
dislike	good	put in

**Examples :**

많은 사람이 초대를 받았습니니다.  
Many people received invitations.

그 부인이 어제 아들을 낳았어요.

That woman had a son yesterday.

싫어도 싫은 척을 하지 않는군요.

She hates it, but is pretending not to.

그 사람은 괜찮은 사람이에요.

That guy is nice.

좀 더 좋은 생각은 없나요?

Can you think of anything a bit better?

**㉒-irregular verbs**

Verb bases ending in consonants typically need the buffer vowel '으' when connecting with endings which begin with a consonant, but the ㄹ of ㉒-irregular verbs does not need this buffer vowel. The ㄹ drops in front of endings which begin with ㄴ, ㅂ or ㅅ.

Verb	-ㅂ니다 -(-으)세요	-는	
알다	압니다 아세요	아는	know
놀다	놀니다 노세요	노는	play
만들다	만듭니다 만드세요	만드는	make
팔다	팝니다 파세요	파는	sell
들다	듭니다 드세요	드는	lift
살다	삼니다 사세요	사는	live
열다	엽니다 여세요	여는	open
울다	웁니다 우세요	우는	cry
쓸다	썩니다 쓰세요	쓰는	sweep

**Examples :**

아는 사람을 만났어요.

I met an acquaintance.

아이들이 밖에서 놀니다.

The children are playing outside.

집에서 빵을 만드십니까?

Do you make bread at home?

돈을 조금 벌니다.

I'm earning a little money.

사과를 파는 아줌마가 예뻐요.

The applemonger is pretty!

## Chapter Six

# Adnominals

Adnominals are bound forms which cannot be used independently; instead, they always precede and modify another noun. One can distinguish three different types of adnominal:

demonstrative adnominals: (지시 관형사)	이, 그, 저, 다른, 전 this, that, that, other, previous/prior
numerical adnominals: (수 관형사)	한, 두, 서너, 모든, 석 One, two, three or four, all, three
descriptive adnominals: (성상 관형사)	새, 현, 옛, 갖은 new, used, old, all sorts of

### 1. Demonstrative Adnominals

Demonstrative adnominals point to or pick out a noun:

**Examples :**

이 아이는 제 동생입니다.

This child is my younger brother.

저 버스가 동대문에 갑니다.

That bus over there is going to Tongdaemun.

요 꼬마가 노래를 잘 해요.  
This li'l guy sings well.

## 2. Numerical Adnominals

Numerical adnominals denote the quantity or sequence of the nouns they modify:

### Examples :

책 한 권에 얼마입니까?

How much does one book cost?

세 여자가 모이면 어떨까요?

What do you suppose it's like if three women meet?

여러 사람이 힘을 쓰면 모든 일을 쉽게 할 수 있어요.

If several people combine their efforts, anything can be accomplished easily.

뭐니 뭐니 해도 건강이 첫째입니다.

Say what you like, but your health comes first.

## 3. Descriptive Adnominals

Descriptive adnominals say something about the outer appearance or inner qualities or state of the noun they modify:

### Examples :

나는 오늘 새 옷을 한 벌 샀습니다.

Today I bought a new set of clothes.

여름에는 날 생선을 조심하세요.

In summer, be careful with raw fish!

인간은 사회적 동물입니다.

Man is a social creature.

뜻 나물 냄새가 상긋하지요.

The first vegetables of the season smell fresh.

There are occasions when an adnominal can be preceded by yet another adnominal, but in such cases the first adnominal does not modify the second; rather, both are in apposition, modifying the following noun.

### Examples :

이 새 집은 제 친구(의) 집입니다.

This new house is my friend's.

한 외 기러기가 날아가는구나.

There goes a lone, wild goose flying away!

어느 한 남자가 집을 보러 왔었어요.

Some man or other ['a certain man'] came to see the house.

무슨 날 음식을 먹었길래 배탈이 났니?

Did you eat some raw food to give you a tummy ache? [lit. : What raw food did you eat to give you [such] a tummy ache?]

그런 민족적인 동기가 3.1운동을 일으키게 했다고 봐요.

It is my opinion that such a nationalist motivation gave rise to the March First Movement.

## Chapter Seven

# Adverbials

Adverbials can modify not only verbs, but also adnominals, numerals, pronouns, other adverbs, and entire sentences. Adverbs can be classified in one of two ways; according to their meaning, or according to their method of word-formation.

### *Examples :*

그건 **바로** 너 때문이야. (대명사 수식)

It's precisely because of you. (modifying a pronoun)

**아주** 낡은 옷을 버렸어요. (동사 수식)

I threw away the very old clothes. (modifying a verb)

**바로** 옆 집에 살고 있어요. (관형사 수식)

I live in the house right next door. (modifying an adnominal)

**오직** 하나 바라는 것이 있어요. (수사 수식)

I have just one desire. (modifying a numeral)

**가장** 일찍 온 학생이 누구예요? (부사 수식)

Who is the student who came the earliest? (modifying an adverb)

## 1. Classification of Adverbs according to Meaning

### 1) Time Adverbs

Time adverbs denote relations of time.

**Examples :**

나는 어제 다방에서 김 선생을 만났어요.

I met Mr. Kim in a tea house yesterday.

겨울이 되어서 이제 날씨가 추워질 거예요.

It's winter now so the weather will get colder.

저는 내일 부산에 출장을 가려고 합니다.

Tomorrow I'm going to Pusan on business.

고향을 떠난 지 벌써 1년이 지났습니다.

A year has already passed since I left home.

나는 머리가 아파서 요즘 공부를 못했습니다.

I haven't been able to study lately because my head hurts.

NB: The time adverbs 어제 *yesterday*, 오늘 *today*, 내일 *tomorrow*, 모레 *day after tomorrow*, and 지금 *now* can also be used as nouns:

**Examples :**

어제가 내 생일이었습니다.

Yesterday was my birthday.

내 동생의 생일은 오늘입니다.

My little sister's birthday is today.

내일은 일요일입니다.

Tomorrow is Sunday.

지금은 일곱 시 오 분 전입니다.

It is now five to seven.

**2) Frequency Adverbs**

Frequency adverbs denote the frequency of an action or state.

**Examples :**

저는 가끔 김 선생과 같이 영화 구경을 갑니다.

I sometimes go to the movies with Mr. Kim.

그 사람은 다시 만나고 싶지 않아요.

I don't want to meet him again.

저는 요즘 자주 시장에 갑니다.

Lately I go to the market often.

소나무는 늘 푸릅니다.

Pines are always green.

어제 책을 샀는데, 오늘 또 샀습니다.

They bought some books yesterday and today they bought again.

**3) General Adverbs**

General adverbs are very common, and each has its own peculiar meaning.

**Examples :**

우리들은 모두 연세대학교 학생입니다.

We are all Yonsei University students.

어제 어머니와 함께 시장에 갔습니다.

I went to the market with my mother yesterday.

김 선생과 이 선생은 서로 좋아합니다.

Ms. Kim and Mr. Lee like each other.

배가 아픈데, 약을 좀 주시겠어요?

Would you please give me some medicine? My stomach hurts.

어제 밤에는 겨우 세 시간 잤어요.

Last night I barely slept three hours.

저 아이는 공부를 잘 합니다.

That kid studies well.

일이 끝났으니까 어서 집으로 돌아 갑시다.

Since we are done working, let's hurry home.

The general adverbs 그리 *so*, *to that extent*, 전혀 *[not] at all*, 별로 *[not] particularly*, 결코 *[not] at all*, 여간 *quite*, *rather*, and 절대로 *[not] at all; absolutely [not]* are always used with a negative verb:

**Examples :**

내가 하는 일은 그리 어렵지 않습니다.

The work I'm doing isn't that difficult.

배가 아파서 아침 밥을 전혀 먹지 못했습니다.

Because of my stomach-ache, I couldn't eat a thing for breakfast.

나는 그 사람은 **별로** 좋아하지 않아요.

I don't especially like that guy.

**결코** 나쁜 일은 하지 않겠습니다.

I will absolutely never do anything bad.

친구와 헤어지니까, **여간** 슬프지 않습니다.

Now that I've just parted with my friend, I'm quite sad.

#### 4) Degree Adverbs

Degree adverbs express a degree:

##### Examples :

그 사람은 노래를 **아주** 잘 부릅니다.

He sings very well.

겨울은 가을보다 **훨씬** 더 춥습니다.

Winter is much colder than fall.

저는 **꽤** 오랫동안 고향에 가지 못했습니다.

I haven't been able to get back home for quite a long time.

김 선생은 영어를 **꽤** 잘 합니다.

Mr. Kim speaks English rather well.

설악산의 경치는 **매우** 아름답습니다.

The scenery at Mt. Sorak is very beautiful.

## 2. Classification of Adverbs according to Method of Word-formation

In terms of method of word-formation, one can divide Korean adverbs into two types: adverbs which are etymologically just adverbs and are not derived from some other part of speech, and adverbs derived from other words (nouns, verbs, etc.) by means of a suffix.

Classification of Adverbs according to Method of Word-formation

Non-derived Adverbs	꽤, 여간, 더, 차라리, 꽤 quite very more rather very
Derived Adverbs	같이, 당연히, 정말로, 멀리 together as a matter truly far of course

#### 1) Non-derived Adverbs

Non-derived adverbs are adverbs which, etymologically speaking, have always functioned as adverbs and cannot be derived from some other word.

##### Examples :

여간, 오히려, 얼른, 가끔, 다시,

quite, contrary to quickly sometimes, again,

what one might

think

늘, 이미, 벌써, 더, 꽤, 꽤……

always, already already, more very, fairly……

##### Examples :

그 소식을 **벌써** 들어 알고 있습니다.

I've already heard that news.

밤보다 **오히려** 낮이 시원하더군.

Actually [contrary to what one might expect] the days were cooler than the nights.

고향에 가시게 되어 **여간** 기쁘시지 않겠습니다.

You must be really happy now that you have a chance to go to your hometown.

흐리다가 **가끔** 한두 차례 비가 올 겁니다.

There will be periods of cloud interrupted by the occasional one or two showers.

꾸물대지 말고 얼른 따라오너라.

Stop hanging about and hurry up and follow me.

## 2) Derived Adverbs

Derived adverbs are adverbs formed by the suffixation of -이, -리, -히, -오/우, or -로' to a noun, verb stem, or the like.

### Adverbial Suffix -이

#### ① Adverbial Suffix -이 can attach to verb stems to form adverbs:

① In the case of ㅁ Verbs (see page 108), the ㅁ drops:

곱다 → 고이, 쉽다 → 쉬이, 탐스럽다 → 탐스러  
beautiful easy attractive

#### Examples :

반가이, 새로이, 가까이, 외로이, 자유로이  
gladly, newly, closely, lonely, freely

② Adverbial Suffix -이 attaches to descriptive verbs other than those ending in -하다 as follows:

없다 → 없이, 같다 → 같이, 깊다 → 깊이  
not exist be like be deep

#### Examples :

높이, 길이, 많이, 헛되이, 바빠, 슬피  
high, long, much, vainly, busily, sadly

#### ② Adverbial Suffix -이 can attach to certain reduplicated morphemes:

번번 + 이 → 번번이, 쌍쌍 + 이 → 쌍쌍이  
'time' all the time 'pair' in pairs

#### Examples :

나날이, 집집이, 곳곳이, 먼먼이,  
daily, house after house, everywhere, each one,  
날날이, 푼푼이  
separately, penny by penny  
piece by piece

#### ③ Some words which are already adverbs optionally take an additional adverbial -이 :

일찍 + 이 → 일찍이  
early

#### Examples :

더욱 → 더욱이  
moreover, besides

#### ④ Adverbial Suffix -이 attaches to verbs ending in ㅅ as follows:

#### Examples :

방긋이, 깨끗이, 느긋이, 어렴풋이, 꼳꼳이 반듯이  
gently, cleanly, pleasingly, dimly, firmly, orderly

#### Examples :

그녀는 어떤 가정에서인지 고이 잘 자랐어요.

I don't know what sort of family she grew up in but she has matured beautifully.

탐스러이 피어 있는 그 꽃 이름은?

What's the name of that lovely blooming flower?

큰어머님께서 반가이 맞아 주셨습니다.

My aunt welcomed me warmly.

한 푼도 없이 집을 떠났습니다.

He left home without even a penny.

그분의 도움에 깊이 감사하고 있습니다.

I'm deeply grateful for his help.

이건 할아버지께서 물려주신 것이니까 **길이** 간직할 것입니다.

I inherited this from my grandfather, so I will treasure it for a long time.

**번번이** 신세를 지는 사람에게 다시 신세를 지게 됩니다.

Yet again I put myself in the debt of someone to whom I am always indebting myself.

**나날이** 발전해 가는 이때, 고루한 생각을 좀 버리시오.

In these times when things are changing with each passing day, put away your narrow-minded thinking.

**푼푼이** 모아 둔 돈을 아들이 다 탕진해 버렸습니다.

The son squandered away all the money they had saved penny by penny.

**일찍이** 우리 나라에 이런 일은 없었다.

This has never happened in our country before.

이 독에 **가득이** 담겨 있던 쌀이 어디 갔을까?

This jar was full to the brim with rice. Where has it gone?

#### Adverbial Suffix -리

This adverbial suffix occurs only with descriptive 르 verbs (see page 111). The forms are made by dropping the final 으 of the verb stem, doubling the 르, and adding -리.

빠르다 → **빨리**, 다르다 → **달리**, 멀다 → **멀리**  
fast                      different                      far

#### Examples :

게을리, 널리, 배불리  
lazily, widely, heartily

#### Examples :

거북이보다 토끼가 **빨리** 달릴걸

I'll bet you the rabbit runs faster than the turtle.

**달리** 보아 둔 신부감이 있습니까?

Do you have a different woman in mind that you plan to marry?

사랑하는 님이 **멀리** 떠나갔습니다.

The one I love has gone far away.

게을리 굴다가 입학 시험에 떨어졌습니다.

He lazed around for a while and then failed the entrance exam.

그 헛소문이 **널리** 퍼지고 말았어요.

That groundless rumor ended up spreading far and wide.

#### Adverbial Suffix -히

① This adverbial suffix attaches to descriptive Sino-Korean roots which can take -하다. The -하다 is replaced by -히 to derive the adverb. This particular suffix is highly productive.

족하다 → **족히**, 공손하다 → **공손히**, 심하다 → **심히**  
suffice                      deferential                      severe

#### Examples :

상당히, 자연히, 충분히, 안녕히, 귀히,  
considerably, naturally, sufficiently, peacefully, preciously,  
급히, 대단히……  
urgently, greatly

② Similarly, -히 can attach to pure Korean descriptive roots which combine with -하다 to form derived adverbs.

부지런하다 → **부지런히**, 쓸쓸하다 → **쓸쓸히**  
diligent                      lonely

#### Examples :

느슨히, 골똘히, 거뜰히, 꼼꼼히, 알뜰히,  
loosely intently, nimbly, meticulously, frugally,  
천천히, 뻔히, 가득히, 똑똑히, 딱히  
slowly obviously, fully clearly, pitifully

#### Examples :

**공손히** 인사하는 법을 배워야겠구나.

You're going to have to learn to introduce yourself respectfully.

시간이 **상당히** 흘렀는데 그 일을 잊을 수가 없어요.

A great deal of time has passed since then, but I can't forget it.



이 문제는 시간을 충분히 갖고 생각해 봅시다.  
 Let's take plenty of time to think about this problem.  
 그는 무언가 골똘히 생각하고 있다.  
 He's thinking intently about something.  
 좋지 않은 결과가 나올 줄 뻔히 알면서 그 일에 손을 대다니 알 수 없군요.  
 I just don't understand why you took it on, clearly knowing there would be a bad result.

**Adverbial Suffix -(으)로**

This adverbial suffix typically attaches to nouns.

정말+로 → 정말로, 실제+로 → 실제로, 때때+로 → 때때로  
 truth truly actuality actually times sometimes

**Examples :**

억지로, 참으로, 날로  
 against one will, truthfully, truly daily, day by day

**Examples :**

서울의 모습은 실제로 많이 달라졌다.  
 Seoul's appearance has, indeed, changed a great deal.  
 오늘은 때때로 소나기가 온다고 했습니다.  
 They said there would be showers at times today.  
 하기 싫은 일을 어떻게 억지로 할 수 있겠습니까?  
 How do you expect me to do, against my will, something I don't want to do?  
 남을 돕기란 참으로 어려운 일입니다.  
 Helping others is truly difficult.  
 우리 회사는 날로 발전하고 있습니다.  
 Our company is growing by the day.

**3) Interrogative~Indefinite Adverbs and Negative Adverbs (미지칭 부사)**

Interrogative~ Indefinite/Negative adverbs is a catch all for adverbs which can function either as interrogatives, or as negatives. Negative adverbs are these adverbs which convey negation or meanings of 'not', 'not yet', etc.

**Examples :**

나무가 왜 말랐을까요?  
 Why do you suppose the tree has dried up?  
 어디에 갔었어요?  
 Where have you been?  
 그 사람이 어디에 가고 없어요.  
 He has gone away somewhere.  
 영수가 아직 안 일어났니?  
 Hasn't Yongsu gotten up yet?  
 난 그 일 못 해.  
 I can't do that.

**4) Conjunctive Adverbs**

Conjunctive adverbs (접속부사) function to connect or join word +word, or sentence+sentence. Historically, many of the conjunctive adverbs in Korean have their origins in various inflected forms of verbs like 그러하다 and 그리하다 *be so/do so*. However, now they function as separate and independent words. Examples of conjunctive adverbs are: 그리고, 그러나, 그러면, 그래서, 그런데, 즉, 곧, 및, 혹은, 또는, etc. Here we examine only a few of these adverbs.

**그리고 And**

□ This conjunctive is used to conjoin a preceding sentence with a following sentence, regardless of the semantics of the sentences, or else is used to introduce a new, conjoined sentence which adds new content to the preceding sentence.

**Examples :**

책 **그리고** 연필도 주세요.

Give me a book and a pencil, please.

제 이름은 숙희예요. **그리고** 제 친구 이름은 영희구요.

My name is Sukhi. And my friend's name is Yonghi...

그 사람은 마음이 좋습니다. **그리고** 얼굴도 예뻐요.

That person has a very good heart. And she has a pretty face, too.

김 선생님은 영어를 잘 합니다. **그리고** 수학도 잘 합니다.

Mr. Kim speaks English well. And he's also good at math.

동생은 중학교에 다닙니다. **그리고** 형은 고등학교에 다닙니다.

My younger brother goes to middle school. And my older brother goes to high school.

㉔ The conjunctive **그리고** can also be used to show a sequential relationship between the preceding sentence and the following sentence.

**Examples :**

아침을 먹었습니다. **그리고** 학교에 갔습니다.

I ate breakfast. And then I went to school.

어제 친구를 만났습니다. **그리고** 같이 다방에 가서 커피를 마셨습니다.

I met a friend yesterday. And then we went to a tea house and had a cup of coffee.

책을 샀습니다. **그리고** 그날 밤 그 책을 다 읽었습니다.

I bought a book. And then I read it through that night.

30분 동안 쉬겠습니다. **그리고** 다시 공부하겠습니다.

I'm going to take a thirty minute break. And after that I'll resume studying.

그 집에 전화를 했어요. **그리고** 30분 후에 갔는데 집에 없더군요.

I called their house. And then when I went there 30 minutes later, nobody was home!

**그러나 But; However**

The conjunctive adverb **그러나** is a concessive. That is, it concedes the

contents of the preceding sentence, while prefacing a new sentence, the contents of which either gainsay or contrast with the contents of the first. Thus, it is similar in meaning to **그렇지만** *but*.

**Examples :**

그 여자는 얼굴이 밍습습니다. **그러나** 마음이 곱습습니다.

That lady's face is unpleasant to look at. But she has a beautiful heart.

그 분은 몹시 가난합니다. **그러나** 마음은 부자입니다.

He is extremely poor. But in his heart he is wealthy.

오늘은 학교에 가는 날입니다. **그러나** 집에서 쉬겠습니다.

Today is a school day. But I'm going to take a break at home.

벌써 밤 12시입니다. **그렇지만** 아직 할 일이 많습니다.

It's already midnight. But there's still a lot to do.

나는 짠 음식을 좋아합니다. **그렇지만** 그분은 좋아하지 않습니다.

I like salty food. But that person doesn't.

**그러면 If so; In that case; Then**

The conjunctive adverb **그러면** expresses the idea that the preceding idea establishes a condition or prerequisite for the following sentence. The following sentence usually offers an explanation or explication of the preceding sentence.

**Examples :**

지금 몇 시입니까?

오전 8시 30분입니다.

**그러면** 출근해야겠습니다.

What time is it now?

Eight thirty in the morning.

In that case I've got to work.

오늘 시간이 있습니까?

미안합니다. 오늘은 좀 바쁩니다.

**그러면** 내일은 어떻습니까?

Do you have any time today?

I'm sorry, today I'm a bit busy.  
 In that case, how's tomorrow?  
 장 선생님, 학생들이 왔습니다.  
 그래요? 그러면 수업을 시작합니다.  
 Mr. Chang, the students have come.  
 Really? In that case let's start class.  
 우유는 소화가 잘 안 되는데요.  
 그러면 다른 걸로 시키죠.  
 I don't digest milk very well.  
 Then order something else.  
 그 식당은 늘 만원입니다.  
 아, 그렇습니까? 그러면 미리 예약을 합시다.  
 That restaurant is always busy.  
 Oh, is that right? Then let's make reservations before we go.

그래서 Therefore; So; Thus; That why

The conjunctive adverb **그래서** is used when the preceding sentence is a reason or cause for the following sentence.

**Examples :**

배가 아픕니다. 그래서 굶었습니다.  
 My stomach hurts. So I didn't eat.  
 물건 값이 비쌉니다. 그래서 사지 않았습니다.  
 The prices are expensive. So I didn't buy anything.  
 첫눈이 내렸습니다. 그래서 기분이 좋아요.  
 The first snow of the year has fallen. So I'm in a good mood...  
 그 분은 외국사람입니다. 그래서 한국말을 못합니다.  
 He's a foreigner. That's why he can't speak Korean.  
 이 짐은 너무 무겁습니다. 그래서 혼자 들 수 없군요!  
 This bag is too heavy. That's why I can't carry it alone!

그런데 Well; By the way; However; But; And yet

① Like 그러나, the conjunctive adverb **그런데** can express concession; one concedes the contents of the preceding sentence, and the following sentence presents contents which oppose or contrast with the contents of the preceding sentence.

**Examples :**

비가 옵니다. 그런데 우산이 없군요.  
 It's raining. But I don't have an umbrella!  
 내일은 시험이 있습니다. 그런데 공부를 하지 못했습니다.  
 I have a test tomorrow. But I haven't been able to study.  
 신문을 샀습니다. 그런데 아직 읽지 못했습니다.  
 I bought a paper. But I haven't read it yet.  
 빨간 연필은 있습니다. 그런데 까만 연필은 없습니다.  
 He has a red pencil. But not a black one.  
 그 분을 한 번 만난 일이 있습니다. 그런데 이름을 잊었어요.  
 I met him once. But I've forgotten his name.

② The conjunctive adverb **그런데** can also be used when one wants to express the contents of the preceding sentence in other words, or when one wants to elaborate on or explain more about the preceding sentence. In this usage, **그런데** functions rather like a verbal equivalent to a semi-colon(";").

**Examples :**

책상 위에 잡지가 있습니다. 그런데 그 잡지는 동생이 찾던 것이었습니다.  
 There's a magazine on the table. And (by the way) it's the one my brother was looking for.  
 어제는 외식을 했습니다. 그런데 거기서 국민학교 동창을 만났습니다.  
 I ate out yesterday. And I also happened to meet one of my grade school classmates there.  
 지난 주말에 소설을 읽었습니다. 그런데 그 책은 전쟁에 관한 것이었습니다.

Last weekend I read a book. It was about the war.

어제 친구를 만났습니다. 그런데 그 친구는 벌써 결혼을 했더군요.

Yesterday I met a friend of mine; turns out he's already married!  
작년에 집을 하나 샀습니다. 그런데 그 집은 문제가 많았습니다.  
I bought a house last year; but it had lots of problems.

그래도 Nevertheless; Still; In spite of that; Nonetheless; But; Yet

The conjunctive adverb **그래도** is yet another concessive. It concedes or acknowledges the contents of the preceding sentence, but stresses that the contents of the following sentence are nonetheless necessary.

**Examples :**

한국말이 어렵습니다. **그래도** 배우겠습니다.

Korean is difficult. Nevertheless, I'm going to learn it.

오늘은 피곤합니다. **그래도** 이 일은 끝내겠습니다.

I'm tired today. Still, I'm going to finish this work.

김치는 아주 맵습니다. **그래도** 한국사람은 잘 먹습니다.

Kimchi' is very spicy. Nevertheless, Koreans eat a lot of it.

공부를 열심히 하지 않았습니다. **그래도** 시험은 잘 봤습니다.

She didn't study hard. Nonetheless, she did well on the test.

내일은 토요일입니다. **그래도** 출근해야 합니다.

Tomorrow is Saturday. But I still have to go to work.

그러니까 So; Therefore; Thus; That why; What I mean to say is...

The conjunctive adverb **그러니까** is used to preface a sentence which expresses a result following from the reason given in the preceding sentence.

**Examples :**

세상은 무서워요. **그러니까** 말조심 하세요.

The world is a scary place. So be careful what you say.

한국말을 빨리 배우고 싶지요? **그러니까** 한국말로 하세요.

You want to learn Korean quickly, don't you? So speak Korean.

책지 생활이 힘들죠. **그러니까** 고향으로 돌아가세요.

Living in a foreign land is hard, isn't it? So go home.

이 반찬은 짜요. **그러니까** 조금씩 잡주세요.

This side dish is salty. So eat it just a little at a time.

내일 결승전이 있습니다. **그러니까** 일찍 자야 해요.

Tomorrow is the final game. So I've got to get to bed early.

그러면서 While doing so; In the process; While saying this

The conjunctive adverb **그러면서** denotes that the contents of the second sentence are added to or simultaneously occur with the action or state in the first sentence.

**Examples :**

선생님이 이 책을 주셨습니다. **그러시면서** 내일까지 읽으라고 하셨습니다.

My teacher gave me this book and told me to read it by tomorrow.

어머님은 외출하셨습니다. **그러시면서** 좀 늦게 돌아오시겠다고 말씀하셨습니다.

Mother left, saying she would be home somewhat late.

일이 너무 힘들다고 합니다. **그러면서** 쉬게 해 달라고 합니다.

He wants me to give him a break, saying the work is too hard.

내일은 애기 돌이라고 합니다. **그러면서** 저녁을 같이 먹자고 합니다.

She wants me to come over for dinner tomorrow as [she tells me] it is her child's first birthday.

인형을 저에게 주었습니다. **그러면서** 생일을 축하한다고 했습니다.

He gave me a doll while wishing me happy birthday.

그렇지 않아도 As it turns out; As luck would have it; Wouldn't you know it; Even without that; Nevertheless; On top of that

The conjunctive adverb **그렇지 않아도** prefaces a sentence when the speaker was just thinking a similar thought or was about to carry out the idea expressed in the preceding sentence. It can also be expressed as **그러지 않아도**. The verb ending in the second sentence is usually **-(으)려고 했다** *was intending to do*, **-(으)려던 참이다** *was just about to do*, or **-고 싶었다** *wanted to do*.

**Examples :**

가: 여기 콜라가 있으니 드세요.

There's some cola here; here, have some.

나: **그렇지 않아도** 음료수를 사러 가려고 했습니다.

Actually, I was just about to go out and buy something to drink.

가: 이것 좀 가르쳐 주세요.

Could you please show me how to do this?

나: **그렇지 않아도** 나도 이것을 물어려던 참이었어요.

Actually, I was just going to ask the same thing myself.

가: 시간이 있으세요? 여행이나 갑시다.

Do you have any time? Let's go on a trip or something.

나: **그렇지 않아도** 나도 그런 생각을 했는데...

You know, that's just what I was thinking.

가: 꽃 좀 꽃으세요.

Here are some flowers for you [to insert in a vase or something].

나: 웬 꽃이야? **그러지 않아도** 꽃을 사려고 했는데.

Flowers?! You know, I was just about to buy some myself.

가: 김 선생님 계세요?

Is Mr. Kim home?

나: 어서 오세요. **그러지 않아도** 한 번 뵙고 싶었어요.

Please come in. Actually, I wanted to see you, too.

**즉 Namely; That is to say**

The conjunctive adverb **즉** is used when one wants to stress the con-

tents of a preceding sentence or word, and add 'what I mean to say is none other than/precisely...' or 'needless to say, what I mean is...' etc. It is used to exemplify or amplify the contents of the preceding word or sentence.

**Examples :**

두 가지가 다르다. **즉** 양과 질의 문제이다.

They're different. Namely, it is a question of quantity and quality.

**5) Mimetic Adverbs**

Mimetic adverbs are adverbs which express the outer appearance, attitude, movements or sound of a thing or person. Korean grammatical terminology usually distinguishes two broad types of mimetic adverbs: **의태어** or 'phenomimes' are adverbs which try to approximate with speech sounds an action or attitude. **의성어** or 'phonomimes' are adverbs which try to approximate with speech sounds the sounds of animals or the natural world. The class of **의태어** or 'phenomimes' also includes nouns and descriptive verbs, but adverbs are most numerous.

**의태어** : 반짝반짝, 슬슬, 깡총깡총, 흔들흔들...

sparkling, gentle, hopping, shaky...

**의성어** : 드르렁드르렁, 졸졸, 째랑째랑, 펄럭펄럭...

noisily (snoring), babbling (brook), jingling, fluttering...

**Examples :**

아기가 나를 보고 **방긋방긋** 웃어요.

The baby sees me and beams a big smile.

학생들이 **웅기웅기** 모여서 뭘 하고 있네요.

The students are crowded close together doing something.

포도가 **주렁주렁** 열려 보기 좋군요.

The grapes have ripened in rich clusters and look great.

코 고는 소리가 **드르렁드르렁** 시끄럽군요.

The drone of his snoring sure is loud!

감기에 걸려서 하루종일 **콜록콜록** 해요.

She's been coughing and hacking all day with this cold she's caught.

### 3. Adverbial Forms of Verbs via Inflection

Korean verbs can take the adverbative ending -게 and function adverbially. However, note that when a verb takes the ending in -게, it is still not completely a derived adverb. Rather, it functions as an adverb while retaining most of its verbal qualities. Thus, these forms are simply cases of the ending -게 attaching to the stems of basic verb forms in the lexicon. This ending is highly productive, and is compatible with nearly all descriptive verbs.

크다 → 크+게 → 크게, 차다 → 차게, 놀랍다 → 놀랍게  
big cold surprising

**Examples :**

푸르게, 나쁘게, 다르게  
Blue(ly) bad(ly) different(ly)

**Examples :**

그 사람은 사업을 해도 크게 할 사람이야.

If he were to start a business, he would go far.

감기에 걸렸을 때는 몸을 따뜻하게 해야 돼요.

When you catch a cold, you should keep ['your body'] warm.

그 선수는 공을 정확하게 넣습니다.

That player shoots the ball accurately.

한국의 가을 하늘은 유난히 푸르게 보입니다.

In the fall the sky in Korea looks exceptionally blue.

그 아이가 일 년 동안에 놀랍게 자랐습니다.

That child has grown surprisingly over the last year.

### 4. Position of Adverbials

The general rule for placement of adverbs in sentences is that they immediately precede the element they modify. Thus, sentential adverbs are placed at the beginning of a sentence, and adverbs which modify verbs or other adverbs are placed immediately in front of the appropriate verb or adverb. This is an important point, because if an adverb is inappropriately placed, the sentence in question can no longer properly convey its meaning.

**Examples :**

다행스럽게, 철수는 감기가 다 나았습니다.

Fortunately Cholsu got over his cold.

내일 친구가 우리 집에 오기로 했습니다.

A friend of ours has arranged to come over tomorrow.

주말에는 가끔 영화 구경을 합니다.

Sometimes I go to the movies on weekends.

아침에 밥을 너무 많이 먹었어요.

I ate too much this morning for breakfast.

김 선생과 이 선생은 서로 도우면서 지냅니다.

Mr. Kim and Mr. Lee get along helping each other.

## Exclamations

Exclamations are a special class of non-inflecting words which cannot take particles after them. They are also special in that their position within a sentence is relatively free; thus, they belong to the set of 'free forms' Usage of exclamations falls into the three broad categories.

### 1. They express the instinctive surprise or emotion of the speaker.

*Examples :*

어머나, 벌써 점심 때가 되었네요.

Oh my, it's already time for lunch!

뭐, 사고가 났다고?

What? There's been an accident?

오! 하나님, 감사합니다.

Oh God! Thank you.

아니, 누가 그런 말을 해요?

Wait a minute —, who said that?

아이, 깜짝이야.

Jeez — you gave me a fright.

와, 경치가 그만이네요.

Wow! What splendid scenery!

야, 하늘에 별들이 반짝 반짝 빛나네요.  
 Say, the stars are sparkling brightly in the sky!  
 흥, 자기는 뭘 그렇게 부지런하다구.  
 Hmmph — since when does he think he's so hard-working?  
 글썄, 그게 사실이라면 큰일이죠 뭐.  
 Hmmm... If that's true, I guess we've got a big problem.

2. Exclamations are used to call or reply to others.

Examples :

여러분, 나를 믿어보세요.  
 Please, all of you, try to believe me.  
 여보게, 잠깐 만나세.  
 Say, there — let's get together briefly.  
 야, 네 이름이 영철이 맞지? 몰라보게 컸네.  
 Hey! Your name is Yongchol, isn't it? You've grown so big I hardly recognized you.  
 예, 오늘 오후에 회의에 갈 거예요.  
 Yes, I'm going to the conference this afternoon.

3. Exclamations include words which are used as a sort of empty filler or hedge.

Examples :

저 분을 어디서 만났더라. 어, 생각이 안 나는데요.  
 Now where did I meet that guy. Uh, I just can't remember.  
 과장님, 저, 이 일은 내일 해도 늦지 않겠죠?  
 Boss — um..., tomorrow wouldn't be too late for this, would it?  
 애, 이렇게 하면 어때? 음, 다음 주에 다시 의논하자.  
 Hey! How's this? Umm, let's discuss it again next week.

Chapter Nine

Particles

Particles typically attach to nouns; they denote case relations, or the grammatical relation of the noun they mark with other words in the sentence. In addition to nouns, particles can also attach to adverbs, adverbial particles, connective endings, and other particles. According to their function, particles can be divided into three types : Case Particles, Connective Particles and Auxiliary Particles.

〈Figure 1〉 Particles

	Classification	Forms
Case Particles 격조사	<b>Subject Particle</b> 주격조사	이/가, 께서, 에서
	<b>Object Particle</b> 목적격조사	을/를
	<b>Complement Particle</b> 보격조사	이/가
	<b>Adnominal Particle</b> 관형격조사	의
	<b>Adverbial Particles</b> 부사격조사	에, 에게, 한테, 께, 에서, 에 게서, 한테서, (으)로.
	<b>Vocative Particle</b> 호격조사	아/야/(이)여



<b>Connective Particles</b> 접속조사	와/과, 하고, 에(다), (이)며, (이)랑
<b>Auxiliary Particles</b> 보조사	은/는 도 만, 뿐 까지, 마저, 조차 부터 마다 (이)야 (이)나, (이)나마...

### 1. Case Particles (격조사)

Case particles are defined as those which impart a specific case relation to the noun preceding them. Korean has the following case particles : subject, object, complement, adnominal, adverbial and vocative.

#### 1) Subject Particle (주격조사)

-이/가, -께서, -에서

① The subject particle is used to mark the subject of a sentence. Nouns ending in a consonant take 이, while nouns ending in a vowel take 가.

**Examples :**

눈이 옵니다.

It's snowing.

꽃이 예쁩니다.

The flower is pretty.

버스가 달립니다.

The bus is racing along.

죽느냐 사느냐가 문제입니다.

It is a question of living or dying.

택시로 가는 것이 더 빠릅니다.

It's faster to go by taxi.

② The subject particle **께서** is used to honorificate the subject. When this particle is used, it is usual to find the honorific suffix (으)시 appearing on the verb as a kind of agreement marker. (See page 200).

**Examples :**

아버님께서 지금 말씀중이십니다.

Father is in the middle of saying something.

김 선생님께서 택으로 가셨습니다.

Mr. Kim has gone home.

사장님께서는 외출하셨습니다.

The boss has gone out.

선생님께서는 어디에 사십니까?

Where do you live?

할머님께서 집에 돌아 오셨습니다.

Grandmother is back.

③ The subject particle **에서** is used to denote corporate or institutional subjects.

**Examples :**

이번 경기는 우리 학교에서 우승을 했다.

Our school won the last meet.

김 선생님 댁에서 우리를 초대했습니다.

The Kims have invited us.

정부에서 뭐라고 말했습니까?

What did the government say?

④ In some case, Korean sentences allow two or more nouns to be marked with the subject particle. In such cases, the first noun functions as main subject of the entire sentence, while subsequent nouns function as the subject of a predicate clause.

**Examples :**

철수가 마음이 좋습니다.  
Cholsu has a good heart.  
순희가 얼굴이 예쁩니다.  
Sunhi has a pretty face.  
코끼리가 코가 길니다.  
The elephant has a long nose.  
그 사람이 의사가 되었어요.  
He became a doctor.  
저 분이 김 선생이 아니에요.  
That's not Mr. Kim.

㉕ The 1st-person pronouns 나 and 저, the 2nd-person pronoun 너, and the interrogative-indefinite 누구 become 내가, 제가, 네가 and 누가, respectively, when they combine with the subject particle.

**Examples :**

내가 그 일을 했습니다.  
I did that job.  
제가 숙제를 했어요.  
I did my homework.  
네가 어제 나에게 전화를 했니?  
Did you call me yesterday?  
누가 영어를 가르칩니까?  
Who teaches English?

**2) Object Particle (목적격조사)**

-을/를

㉑ The object particle is used to mark the object of a sentence. Nouns ending in a consonant take 을, while nouns ending in a vowel take 를.

**Examples :**

그 분은 운동을 좋아해요.  
She likes sports.

나는 아침에 신문을 읽습니다.  
I read the paper in the morning.  
저 분은 영어를 잘 합니다.  
She speaks English well.  
나는 어제 부모님께 편지를 썼습니다.  
I wrote a letter to my parents yesterday.  
점심을 맛있게 먹었습니다.  
I had a delicious lunch.

㉒ The object particle can attach to other particles or to the long negative form to express emphasis. In such case, it is usual for 를 to abbreviate to 르.

**Examples :**

몇 시쯤 집에를 가세요?  
About what time are you going home?  
전 부산엘 자주 출장 갑니다.  
I go to Pusan on business often.  
매일 시장엘 들르십니까?  
Do you stop at the market every day?  
놀라질 마세요.  
Don't be surprised.  
그 아이가 말을 잘 듣질 않아요.  
That kid [just] doesn't listen.

㉓ Both the subject and object particle can be omitted. This is especially common in colloquial speech.

**Examples :**

책(이) 어디 있니?  
Where's the book?  
그 사람(이) 의사입니까?  
Is she a doctor?  
운동(을) 좋아하십니까?  
So you like sports?

저 분은 영어(를) 잘 합니다.  
She speaks English well.  
철수(가) 밥(을) 먹었어요.  
Cholsu has eaten.

### 3) Complement Particle (보격조사)

-이/가

The complement particle has the same shape as the subject particle, but is different in its meaning and function. Nouns ending in a consonant take 이, while nouns ending in a vowel take 가.

**Examples :**

나는 **아이가** 아닙니다.  
I am not a child.  
그 학생은 **3학년이** 되었다.  
She's a 3rd-year student now.  
그건 제 **책임이** 아닌 것 같은데요.  
That doesn't seem to be my responsibility.

### 4) Adnominal Particle (관형격조사)

-의 of, with respect to, pertaining to

㉠ The adnominal particle functions to join two nouns into a larger noun phrase. It is also commonly called the 'genitive particle' or the 'possessive particle' Like the subject and object particles, the adnominal particle is often dropped, but there are also cases when it is obligatory.

**Examples :**

이건 **누구(의)** 안경이에요?  
Whose glasses are these?  
**그 분(의)** 직업이 뭐예요?  
What's his profession?

요즘 **부산(의)** 날씨는 어떻습니까?  
What's the weather like in Pusan these days?  
**시골의** 아름다운 풍경을 그리고 있습니다.  
I'm painting the beautiful countryside scenery.  
**평화의** 종소리가 울립니다.  
The bells of peace are ringing.  
**가을은 독서의** 계절입니다.  
Autumn is the book-reading season.

㉡ When the adnominal particle attaches to the pronouns 저, 나 and 너, the resulting combinations can be contracted to 제, 내 and 네, respectively.

**Examples :**

**제(저의)** 이름은 김영수입니다.  
My name is Kim Yongsu.  
**내(나의)** 짐은 차에 실었어.  
I put my luggage in the car.  
이건 **네(너의)** 책이니?  
Is this your book?

### 5) Adverbial Particles (부사격조사)

Adverbial particles turn nouns and noun phrases into adverbials. Korean has a rich variety of adverbial particles depending on the nature of the noun and predicate of the phrase or clause in question. For convenience's sake, let us classify them in the first instance by general meaning, and then add further explanations according to usage. Note that, unlike the subject and object particles, adverbial particles are not normally dropped.

-에, -에게/한테, -게 to, at, for, by

㉠ Humans and animals take -에게 or -한테 ; -에 is used elsewhere.

**Examples :**

철수가 꽃에 물을 줍니다.  
Cholsu waters the plants.

나무에 손을 대지 마시오.  
Don't touch the tree.

나는 친구에게 생일 선물을 보냈어요.  
I sent a birthday present to my friend.

누구에게 편지를 쓰십니까?  
Who are you writing a letter to?

누가 고양이한테 방울을 달지?  
So who's going to tie the bell to the cat?

㉔ The particle -께 is the honorific equivalent of -에게 and 한테.  
(See page 211).

**Examples :**

선생님께 여쭙어 보세요.  
Ask the teacher.

부모님께 말씀을 드렸습니다.  
I told my parents.

할머님께 안부 전해 주세요.  
Please say hello to your grandmother for me.

어른들께 먼저 인사를 드리세요.  
You should greet elders first.

박 선생님께는 초청장을 보내지 못했습니다.  
I wasn't able to send an invitation to Mr. Pak.

㉕ The particle -에 marks the dative (-에, -에게/한테, -께) as well as several other functions.

① In conjunction with a verb of motion, the particle -에 marks a goal.

**Examples :**

영수가 인천공항에 나갔습니다.  
Yongsu went out to Incheon airport.

나는 학교에 갑니다.

I'm going to school.

내일 우리 집에 오세요.

Come to our place tomorrow.

이 기차는 내일 아침 부산에 도착합니다.

This train arrives in Pusan tomorrow morning.

고향 집에 편지를 보냈습니까?

Did you send a letter back home?

㉖ When a verb other than a verb of motion is predicate, the particle -에 is used with nouns denoting spaces to mark spatial location.

**Examples :**

저는 내일 집에 있겠습니다.

I'll be at home tomorrow.

부모님은 제 고향에 계세요.

My parents live in my hometown.

철수는 대학교에 입학했습니다.

Cholsu got into university.

그 옷은 내 몸에 꼭 맞아요.

Those clothes fit me perfectly.

이 약은 신경통에 좋습니다.

This medicine is good for neuralgia.

㉗ When used in conjunction with nouns denoting time, the particle -에 marks temporal location : *in*, *on*, or *at* a certain time.

**Examples :**

몇 시에 학교에 갑니까?

What time do you go to school?

아침에 우리 집에 오세요.

Come to our house in the morning.

나는 토요일에 집에 있었어요.

I was at home on Saturday.

시월에 제주도에 가겠습니다.

I'm going to Cheju Island in October.

여름에는 바닷가에 가요.  
In the summer I go to the seaside.

- ④ The particle -에 can also mark the source of an action.

**Examples :**

바람에 나무가 쓰러졌습니다.  
The tree fell down in the wind.  
천둥 소리에 깜짝 놀랐어요.  
I was startled by ['at'] the sound of the thunder.  
비에 옷이 흠뻑 젖었군요.  
My clothes have gotten completely soaked in the rain!  
가뭄에 벼가 다 탔어요.  
The rice plants all dried up in the drought.  
그 친구는 병에 시달리고 있습니다.  
That friend [of mine] is suffering from a disease.

- ⑤ When used in conjunction with nouns denoting numerals, the particle -에 marks a unit of value or proportion (*at, in, for, by, per*).

**Examples :**

그것을 얼마에 사셨어요?  
How much did you buy that for?  
이 물건은 한 개에 천원입니다.  
This product costs 1000 won per unit.  
일주일에 다섯 일해요.  
I work 5 days per week.  
한 달에 한 번 출장 갑니다.  
I go away on business once a month.  
이 시계는 하루에 1분씩 틀려요.  
This watch loses one minute per day.

-에서, -에게서/한테서 at, in (dynamic location)/from; from

- The particle -에서 is used in conjunction with processive verbs and nouns denoting places to mark the location of an action.

**Examples :**

어디에서 일하십니까?  
Where do you work?  
시장에서 바지를 샀습니다.  
I bought some trousers at the market.  
한국에서 무엇을 하십니까?  
What do you do in Korea?  
길에서 친구를 만났어요.  
I met a friend on the street.  
친구가 사무실에서 기다려요.  
My friend is waiting in the office

- ② The particle -에서 can also be used to mark a spatial or temporal point of departure.

**Examples :**

어느 나라에서 오셨어요?  
What country are you from?  
학교에서 몇 시에 집에 갑니까?  
What time do you come home from school?  
열에서 일곱을 빼면 셋이 됩니다.  
Ten minus seven is three.  
이 책은 도서관에서 가져 왔어요.  
I brought this book from the library.  
저는 아침 여섯 시에서 일곱 시 사이에 일어납니다.  
I wake up between six and seven in the morning.

- ③ In the meaning of *from* (paraphrasable in Korean as -(으)로부터), nouns denoting humans and animals take -에게서/한테서, while all other nouns take -에서. The particles -에게서 and -한테서 are interchangeable.

**Examples :**

나는 어머니에게서 그 말을 들었어요.  
I heard that from my mother.  
친구에게서 초대를 받았어요.  
I was invited by my friend ['I received an invitation from my friend.']

154 Chapter Nine

영자한테서 그 책을 빌리겠습니다.

I'll borrow the book from Yongja.

개한테서 냄새가 나요.

The dog smells ['There is a smell emanating from the dog.'].  
 그 회사에서 배운 것이 많아요.

I learned many things from [or at] that company.

㉔ Like -에, the particle -에서 denotes places, but their usages are different, and thus they are not interchangeable. This is because choice of -에 vs. -에서 is determined by the predicate.

**Examples :**

학생들이 교실에 있습니다.

학생들이 교실에서 공부합니다.

The students are in the classroom.

The students are studying in the classroom.

쥐가 저 구멍에 숨어 있어요.

쥐가 저 구멍에서 죽었어요.

The mouse is hiding in that hole.

The mouse died in that hole.

다방에 친구와 같이 갔어요.

다방에서 친구를 만났어요.

I went to a tea house with a friend.

I met a friend at a tea house.

저는 어제 서울에 왔습니다.

저는 서울에서 태어났습니다.

I came to Seoul yesterday.

I was born in Seoul.

시장에 갑니다.

시장에서 물건을 삽니다.

I'm going to the market.

I buy things at the market.

- (으)로 with, using, by means of; as, for, in the capacity of; (change of state) into; to, in the direction of; because of/ due, owing to

㉑ The basic function of the instrumental particle (조격조사) -(으)로 is to denote the method, instrument or means by which a certain action comes about. Nouns ending in a final consonant (except ㄹ) take -으로, and nouns ending in a final vowel or ㄹ take -로.

**Examples :**

한국에 비행기로 왔어요.

I came to Korean by airplane.

한국음식은 수저로 먹어요.

Korean food is eaten with a spoon and chopsticks.

붓으로 그림을 그립니다.

I am painting a picture with a brush.

그 책상은 나무로 만들었어.

That desk is made of wood.

녹음 테이프로 한국말을 공부합니다.

I am studying Korean with tape recordings.

영어로 말씀하세요.

Please say it in English.

말로 하고 때리지 마세요.

Say it in words don't hit me!

㉒ The particle -(으)로 has other functions besides marking instrumentals.

① In conjunction with verbs of motion, the particle -(으)로 can denote direction.

**Examples :**

어디로 가세요?

Where are you going? [in which direction are you heading?]

내일 유럽으로 떠납니다.

I am leaving for Europe tomorrow.

그 버스는 종로로 가지 않아요.

That bus doesn't go to Chongno.

저는 남쪽으로 여행을 가겠어요.

I am going to travel south.

오른쪽으로 돌아가세요.  
Turn to the right.

- ② The particle -(으)로 can also denote a source or reason.

**Examples :**

무슨 일로 오셨어요?

Why have you come? [ n account of what have you come?

저는 병으로 무척 고생했습니다.

I really suffered on account of my sickness.

그 사람은 교통사고로 많이 다쳤습니다.

He got really hurt in [ n account of a traffic accident.

회사 일로 정신이 없어요.

I am losing my mind because of work at the office.

이번 비로 피해가 많아요.

There are a lot of damage on account of the latest rain.

- ③ The particle -(으)로 can denote either the manner or an action or the end-point of a process of change.

**Examples :**

그 사람은 반가운 얼굴로 나를 맞이했습니다.

He greeted me with a happy face.

서로 악수로 인사를 나눕니다.

We exchange greeting via a handshake.

이젠 밝은 마음으로 돌아 왔습니다.

I've come back now with a bright heart.

물이 얼어서 얼음으로 변했어요.

The water has frozen and turned into ice.

결국 동생과 같이 가기로 결정했어요.

In the end I decided to go with my younger sister.

- ③ The particle -(으)로 can attach to nouns denoting humans to express status, capacity, position or qualifications.

**Examples :**

저는 선교사로 한국에 왔습니다.

I've come to Korea as a missionary.

그 분은 의사로 병원에서 일해요.

She works as a doctor at a hospital

그 분은 운전기사로 취직했습니다.

He got a job as a driver.

그 친구가 졸업생 대표로 답사를 했습니다.

He made a reply as a graduate representative.

그 여자는 신부감으로 좋아요.

She's good bride material.

-(으)로서 as, in the capacity of, fo

Like the last usage of particle -(으)로 above, -(으)로서 functions to express status, capacity, position or qualifications. The last usage of particle -(으)로, above can be treated as an optional shortening of -(으)로서.

**Examples :**

그는 사회사업가로(서) 이름이 났어요.

He is well known as a social worker.

권투선수로(서) 유명한 사람은 누구지?

Which one is the person famous as a boxer?

그 사람은 결혼 상대로(서) 맞지 않아요.

She is not appropriate as a marriage partner.

그는 고아를 아들로 삼았어요.

He adopted an orphan as his son.

선생으로서의 책임을 다 해야지요.

Of course, I have to assume all my responsibilities as a teacher.

-(으)로써 with, by means of, using; because of, due to; in accord  
[ance] with

The particle -(으)로써 combines with nouns or nominalized forms of action verbs to express an instrument or means. The nominalized form is usually -(으)ㄴ.

**Examples :**

옳은 정치를 함으로써 이 나라가 부강해져요.  
 This country will become wealthy by means of righteous politics.  
 일을 성실히 함으로써 기반을 잘 닦을 수 있어요.  
 One can lay a good foundation through conscientious work.  
 힘을 합침으로써 어려움을 이겨낼 수 있어요.  
 We can overcome difficulties by combining our forces.  
 독서로써 교양을 쌓을 수 있습니다.  
 One can accumulate learning through the reading of books.  
 여행으로써 전문을 넓히려고 하죠.  
 I intend to broaden my experience through travel.

#### 6) Vocative Particles (호격 조사)

-아, -야, -(이)여

The vocative particles are used in order to call a person or an object. Nouns ending in a vowel take -아, -어, and nouns ending in a consonant take -아, -이여.

##### Examples :

영철아, 너 어디 가니?  
 Hey Yongchol, where are you going?  
 수희야, 빨리 와 봐.  
 Suhi Hurry over here.  
 태풍이여, 잔잔하여라.  
 O typhoon! Please subside.  
 젊은이들이여, 야심을 가져라.  
 My dear young people, be ambitious!  
 동포여, 분발하자.  
 Fellow brethren, let us work hard together!

## 2. Connective Particles (접속조사)

-와/과, -하고, -(이)랑 [together] with; and

① The conjunctive particles serve to link or conjoin two words in a sentence as coordinates. Nouns ending in a vowel, take -와 or -랑 and nouns ending in a consonant take -과 or -이랑. Both of these particles are interchangeable with -하고.

##### Examples :

이 방에 의자와 책상이 많아요.  
 There are lots of chairs and desks in this room.  
 시장에서 생선과 채소를 삽니다.  
 I buy fish and vegetables at the market.  
 토요일과 일요일에는 한가해요.  
 I relatively free on Saturday and Sunday.  
 선생님하고 학생이 이야기하고 있어요.  
 The teacher and the student are talking.  
 철수랑 순희는 학교에 갔습니다.  
 Cholsu and Sunhi went to school.

② When coordinative particles are used in conjunction with predicates which require two nouns, they express the idea that the two nouns either have something in common or are comparable. In other words, certain predicates call for use of a coordinative particle.

##### Examples :

철수는 영수와 싸웠어요.  
 Cholsu had a fight with Yongsu.  
 철수가 순희와 결혼할 것입니다.  
 Cholsu is going to marry ['with'] Sunhi.  
 이 물건은 내 것과 비슷합니다.  
 This piece of merchandise is similar to ['with'] mine.  
 김 선생은 이 선생하고 친합니다.  
 Mr. Kim is close with Mr. Lee.



나는 어제 친구랑 같이 구경을 했습니다.  
Yesterday I went sight-seeing with a friend.  
나도 그와 같은 생각을 했어요.

I was thinking a similar thought, too.  
그는 어린 아이와 같이 마음이 고와요.

His heart is beautiful like a child's.  
자연과 더불어 혼자만의 시간을 가졌어요.

I spent some time alone with nature.

난 동창들과 어울려 모교를 찾아 갔습니다.

I joined up with some of my classmates and went to visit my alma mater.

그 사람과의 약속을 꼭 지키고 싶었어요.

I really wanted to keep my appointment with him. *or* I really wanted to keep my promise to him.

-에(다가) *and, and all that, and whatnot, and the like, and stuff*

This particle is composed of -에 plus the transferentive -다가. It functions to link two nouns of similar nature, and is used to add to or elaborate on the preceding noun in a kind of selective enumeration. The 가 of -다가 can be omitted, leaving just -에다; indeed, the entire -다가 can be omitted, leaving just -에.

**Examples :**

밥에 떡에 아주 많이 먹었어요.

I ate a real lot — rice, and ricecakes, and stuff.

친척에 친구에 손님들이 많았어요.

We had a lot of guests — relatives, friends and the like.

청소에 빨래에 얼마나 힘들었다구요.

It was so hard — cleaning, laundry, the works.

하나에다가 둘을 더하면 셋이에요.

Two added to one makes three.

그 술은 독하니까 거기에다 얼음을 넣어서 드세요.

That booze is pretty strong, so add some ice to it.

수첩에다가 전화번호를 적어 놓았어요.

I wrote down the phone number in my memo-book.

과일에 채소까지 샀더니 너무 무거워.

I bought vegetables on top of the fruit, and now my bag is too heavy.

이 일에다 그 일까지는 할 수 없을 것 같아요.

I don't think I'll be able to do that job on top of this one.

-(이)며 *and, or; and/or*

The coordinative particle -(이)며 is used to enumerate two or more words of a similar nature. Nouns ending in a consonant take -이며, and nouns ending in a vowel take -며.

**Examples :**

학생이며 선생이며 할 것 없이 다 바빠다.

Everyone is busy, students and teachers alike.

정치가며 국민이며 모두가 힘을 합쳐야지요.

Everyone, politicians and citizens alike, has to join forces.

집이며 가구며 온통 다 불에 탔어요.

Everything — the house and furniture — was burned in the fire.

고기며 생선이며 가리지 않고 잘 먹어요.

He eats everything, whether it be meat or fish. *or* Meat, fish...you name it, he eats it.

밤이며 낮이며 편안할 날이 없어.

I never have a peaceful moment, night or day.

### 3. Auxiliary Particles (보조사)

Auxiliary particles, also referred to as delimiters, add special meanings to the words they attach to.

-까지 *until, by, up to; as far as, all the way to; (extent, emphasis) even*

□ The auxiliary particle 까지 denotes the outer limit of a certain spatial or temporal period or area. It can attach to nouns, other particles, adverbs and verb endings.

**Examples :**

언제까지 기다리시겠어요?

How long [until when] will you wait?

동대문까지 같이 갑시다.

Let's go as far as Tongdaemun together.

오늘은 150쪽까지 읽겠습니다.

Today I'll read as far as page 150.

어젯밤 늦게까지 책을 보았어요.

I was reading until late last night.

성공할 때까지 돌아오지 않겠어요.

I won't come back until I succeed.

㉔ The auxiliary particle **-까지** can also be used to express the idea that a situation or occurrence is unexpected.

**Examples :**

너까지 나를 믿지 못하면 어떻게 하지?

What am I to do if even you don't believe me?

대학까지 졸업하고 그걸 몰라?

You've even graduated from university and you don't know that?

졸업할 때는 최고상까지 탔다.

When she graduated, she even got the top prize.

사무실에서까지 잠을 자면 큰일이에요.

You're in big trouble if you fall asleep even at the office.

고향에 있는 가족에게까지 소문이 났습니다.

Even my folks back home caught wind of it.

**-깨나** fairly well/much, to a fair extent (or so)

The auxiliary particle **-깨나** is made up of the suffix **-깨** meaning to a certain extent and the approximative suffix **-나** meaning approximately [such-and-such an amount or number]. The particle is used to imply that a fact is more or less true to a certain degree, or that there is good reason for one assertion.

**Examples :**

그 아이는 고집깨나 세요.

That kid sure is stubborn.

얼굴이 심술깨나 부리게 생겼네요.

He looks like a pretty ornery character!

그 사람은 말깨나 하는 사람이야!

He sure does talk a good talk!

힘깨나 쓴다고 자랑하고 있어.

He's bragging that he's pulling lots of strings.

돈깨나 있다고 꽤 거만하군 그래.

He sure is conceited about having a little money.

**-는/은**

The auxiliary particle **-는/-은** is used to mark contrast or the sentence topic. Nouns ending in a consonant take **-은** and nouns ending in a vowel take **-는**.

㉑ When used on a noun which functions as a subject or object, the auxiliary particle **-는/-은** replaces **-이/-가** and **-을/-를**.

**Examples :**

저 분은 김 선생이에요.

That's Mr. Kim.

이 연필은 참 좋아요.

This pencil is really nice.

나는 아침에 일찍 일어납니다.

I get up early in the morning.

애기가 밥은 잘 먹습니다.

The baby eats well.

그 가게에서 사과는 파는데 포도는 없어요.

They sell apples in that store, but not grapes.

㉒ The auxiliary particle **-는/-은** can be used in combination with other particles, adverbs, connective endings and verb endings, in which case **-는** can abbreviate to **-ㄴ**.

**Examples :**

저는 아침엔 바빠요.  
 In the mornings I'm busy.  
 이 버스는 종로론 안 가요.  
 This bus doesn't go to Chongno.  
 이 문장은 조금은 이해합니다.  
 I understand this sentence a little.  
 기분이 좋진 않아요.  
 I'm not in a good mood.  
 돈이 있으면은 사겠어요.  
 If I have money I'll buy it.

-(이)나 or the like, or something, or so; around, approximately; as much/many as, to the (surprising) extent to; or, and, and/or; who...ever, all, . every

The auxiliary particle -(이)나 has the basic meaning of choice, but has a number of different usages. Nouns ending in a consonant take -이 나, and nouns ending in a vowel take -나.

□ Used to link two nouns, the auxiliary particle means *or*.

**Examples :**

커피나 홍차를 주십시오.  
 Please give me tea or coffee.  
 미국이나 불란서에 가고 싶어요.  
 I want to go to America or France.  
 다방이나 식당에서 만납시다.  
 Let's meet at a tea house or in a restaurant.  
 기차나 고속버스로 관광을 합니다.  
 We do our touring by train or bus.  
 그 사람은 닭고기나 돼지고기 중 하나는 못 먹을 거예요.  
 Of chicken or pork, he bound to be unable to eat at least one of them.

□ When the auxiliary particle -(이)나 follows a noun but is itself followed by a verb, it has the meaning of *or the like, or something*, implying that the choice one has made is of no particular interest. In this usage, -(이)나 can follow other particles.

**Examples :**

심심한데 장기나 둡시다.  
 I'm bored; let's play changgi or something.  
 주말에 등산이나 갈까요?  
 On the weekend shall we go hiking or something?  
 음악회에나 가 봅시다.  
 Let's go to a concert of something.  
 교외로나 나갈까요?  
 Shall we go out to the countryside or something?  
 놀지만 말고 책이나 좀 읽어요.  
 Stop fooling around all the time and read a book or something.

□ After a numerical expression, the particle -(이)나 lends a meaning of approximation. This usage is found mostly in interrogative sentences.

**Examples :**

손님이 몇 명이나 오세요?  
 Approximately how many guests are coming?  
 그 아이가 몇 살이나 되었어요?  
 [About] How old is that child now?  
 그 일은 며칠이나 걸려요?  
 About how many days will that take?  
 돈이 얼마나 있어요?  
 How much money do you have [approximately]?  
 과자를 만드는 데 계란이 몇 개나 필요해요?  
 About how many eggs do you need to make cookies?

□ In a related usage with numerical expressions, the particle -(이)나 implies that the amount is more than expected or more than one would normally anticipate.

**Examples :**

저는 어제 열 시간이나 잤어요.  
 Yesterday I slept for [as many as] 10 hours.  
 친구를 삼십 분이나 기다렸어요.

I waited for my friend for [as many as] 30 minutes.  
 그는 불고기를 오 인분이나 먹어요.  
 He eats [as much as] five portions of meat.  
 하루에 커피를 일곱 잔이나 마셔요?  
 You drink [as many as] seven cups of coffee a day?  
 전 지난번에 4Km나 걸었어요.  
 Last time I walked [as far as] four kilometers.

㉔ When used in combination with an interrogative pronoun, the particle -(이)나 creates a generalized expression : *wh ... ever, all, ... every, wh... it may be.*

**Examples :**

누구나 노력하면 성공할 수 있어요.  
 If you work hard, anybody can succeed.  
 그는 무엇이든 할 줄 알아요.  
 He can do just about anything.  
 저는 음식은 아무거나 잘 먹어요.  
 I eat just about anything.  
 그녀는 언제나 웃음을 띠어요.  
 She is always smiling.  
 몸이 어떻게나 무거운지 일어나지 못했어요.  
 My body felt so heavy that I couldn't get up.

-(이)나마 **although it is this; at least; anyway; even this (much)**

The auxiliary particle -(이)나마 implies that the noun in question is not of particular interest or to one's liking, but that one nonetheless grudgingly or reluctantly accepts it.

**Examples :**

작은 힘이나마, 도움이 되었으면 합니다.  
 My strength doesn't amount to much, but I hope it is of some assistance.  
 그 분 생일에는 작은 정의나마 보여 드리고 싶어요.  
 On her birthday I like to do something nice for her, however insignificant.

저는 돈이 없으니, 몸으로나마 도와야지요.  
 I don't have any money, so I should help you at least physically.  
 늦게나마 비행기가 무사히 도착해서 다행입니다.  
 Fortunately the plane landed safely, if a little late.  
 잠결에 어렴풋이나마 문 소리를 들었습니다.  
 In my sleep I heard, ever so faintly, the sound of a door [opening].

-도 **also/too (or even); both ... and/(n)either ... (n)or; even, yet, still, even though, indeed**

The auxiliary particle 도 is used to show that one thing is the same as, or is included or subsumed by another. It can attach to nouns, particle, adverbs and verb endings.

㉑ Cases of 도 used with nouns:

**Examples :**

저도 학생이에요.  
 I'm a student, too.  
 그는 정구도 잘 쳐요.  
 He's also good at tennis.  
 그녀는 공부도 잘 하고 일도 잘 합니다.  
 She both studies well and works well.  
 그 아이는 아버지도 어머니도 안 계십니다.  
 Both her mother and father are dead.  
 그 사람은 학생도 아니고 선생도 아니에요.  
 He is neither a student nor a teacher.

㉒ When attached to particles (other than -이/가, -을/를, -은/는), adverbs and verb endings, the auxiliary particle -도 adds the meaning of emphasis.

**Examples :**

일요일에도 회사에 나갑니다.  
 I go to work even on Sundays.  
 한국에도 친구가 많아요.  
 I have lots of friends in Korea, too. [or : ...even in Korea]  
 저 기차는 빨리도 달리는군요.

That train sure is going fast.  
 그 분은 아파서 회사에 **가지도** 못했습니다.  
 He was so sick he couldn't even go to work.  
 그 여자는 **예쁘지도 밋지도** 않습니다.  
 She is neither pretty nor ugly.

-(이)든지 **or, or the like, or something; (how)ever it (be)**

㉑ The auxiliary particle -(이)든지 is used when, instead of picking out something pre-selected, one concedes the right of selection to the listener. There are also cases when this particle can following an interrogative word to make an indefinite (any ... at all; wh ... ever). A pair of nouns or phrases marked with -(이)든지 presents a choice about which one is indifferent (whether it be ... or ... don't care). Note that -(이)든지 can be abbreviated to -(이)든.

**Examples :**

배든 사과든 마음대로 사세요.  
 Buy whatever you want — pears, apples, I don't care.  
**밥이든 빵이든** 좀 먹어야 힘을 내지.  
 If you want some energy you have to eat something — rice or bread or whatever.  
**누구든지** 와서 이것 좀 도와 주십시오.  
 Would someone — anyone — please come here and give me a hand?  
**언제든지** 자기 잘못을 뉘우칠 때가 있을 거야.  
 There will always be times when one regrets one's mistakes.  
**이거든 저거든** 하여튼 결단을 내려서 시작하세요.  
 I don't care if it's this one or that one, but anyway let's decide and get on with it.

㉒ The auxiliary particle can also attach to particles like -에, -에게, -(으)로, etc.

**Examples :**

**여름에든지 겨울에든지** 여행을 떠납시다.  
 I don't care if it's in summer or winter let's go on a trip.  
**법이란 누구에게든지** 골고루 적용되는 거지.

The law is something which applies equally to anyone and everyone.  
**무엇으로든지** 시간에만 맞춰 가면 되죠?  
 I can use what I want as long as I'm in synch, right?  
**무슨 병에든지** 쓰이는 약을 만병통치약이라 하지요.  
 A medicine which works on any and all diseases is called a panacea.  
 너무 부끄러워 **어느 구멍으로든지** 숨고 싶었어요.  
 I was so embarrassed I wanted to disappear into a hole [-any hole at all].

-(이)ㄴ들 **granted that it be/is ..., even though it be/is...**

The auxiliary particle -(이)ㄴ들 combines concessive and rhetorical meanings to render a pattern along the lines of *even though... how/wh...?*, etc. Nouns ending in a consonant take -인들, and nouns ending in a vowel take -ㄴ들.

**Examples :**

내가 이렇게 마음이 아픈데 **넌들** 왜 안 그렇겠니?  
 If I'm so upset like this, how could you not be?  
 네가 가자면 **어딘들** 못 가겠니?  
 If you just say the word, I will follow you to the ends of the earth [lit. : how could I not go wherever?]  
 마음만 먹으면 **뭣인들** 못하랴.  
 If you just put your mind to it, there is nothing you cannot do. [lit. : whatever could there be that you could not do? Answer : Nothing. ]  
 목석이 아닌 바에야 **정인들** 없겠어.  
 Only rocks and wood have no emotions. [lit. : as long as it's not woods or rock we're talking about, would he/she/they not have feelings? Answer : Of course!]  
 우리도 분한데 **당사자들** 오죽하겠습니까?  
 If even we are so angry, how do you suppose they ['the affected ones'] feel?

-(이)라도 **even if (it be); just, (or the) like, or even, any, some**

㉑ The auxiliary particle -(이)라도 is used to express the speaker's indifference to the noun in question. Sometimes it is used with interroga-

tive words to express an indefinite : any ... at all.

**Examples :**

감기라도 들면 어떻게 해요?

What if you catch a cold or something?

아무거라도 좋으니, 읽을 책 좀 주세요.

Anything at all will do, so please give a book to read.

어디라도 괜찮으니까 가자.

Any place at all is fine; let's just go.

내가 오지 못하면 동생이라도 보내.

If you can't come, send your brother or something.

내일이라도 만나서 의논해 봅시다.

Let's meet tomorrow or so and discuss it.

㉔ The auxiliary particle -(이)라도 can also appear after particle like -에, -에서, -(으)로, -부터, -까지, etc.

**Examples :**

저녁에라도 시간 좀 내 주세요.

Can you give me a little time, say, in the evening?

어디서라도 오라고 하면 일하러 갈 겁니다.

I'll go to work wherever I'm wanted (I don't care where).

젓가락으로 먹기가 어려우니까 손으로도 먹겠어요.

This is hard to eat with chopsticks so I think I'll just eat it with my hands.

이제부터라도 열심히 하면 성공할 수 있습니다.

If you work hard, it's still not too late to succeed. [lit. : if should it be from now on...]

이번 주말까지라도 번역을 끝내 주셨으면 합니다.

I really wish you could finish the translation by, say, this weekend.

㉕ The auxiliary particle -(이)라도 can also be used after the verb ending -어(아, 여)서 meaning reason, sequence or method/means. (See page 308).

**Examples :**

어떤 방법을 써서라도 목적을 달성해야겠습니다.

I have to achieve my goal, whatever [method] it takes.

틈을 내서라도 여행 좀 갔다 오렴.

Even if you have to make time for it specially, do please go away on a trip for a while.

은행 용자를 받아서라도 공사를 끝내야죠.

We have to finish the construction, even if it means taking out a loan from the bank.

모르는 건 배워서라도 알아야지.

You have to know what it is you don't know, even if it means more learning.

매려서라도 나쁜 버릇을 고쳐야 해요.

We have to cure you of your bad habits, even if it means beating them out of you.

-(이)라든지 (the question) whether it be said to be

The auxiliary particle -(이)라든지 shares most of its meaning and function with the auxiliary particle -(이)든지 seen above -indifference to a series of two or more choices. This auxiliary particle is interchangeable with -(이)라든가.

**Examples :**

의사가 운동을 하라지만, 공이라든지 줄넘기라든지 뭐 운동기구가 있어야 하지요.

My doctor says I should exercise, but I need a ball or a jumprope or some sort of exercise paraphernalia [and I don't really care what kind].

그 일은 김군이든지 이군이든지 누구든 시키면 잘 할 거야.

If you get Kim or Lee or whoever to do it they'll do a good job.

심심하면 정구라든지 골프라든지 좀 배워 보면 어떨까요?

If you're bored, how about learning to play tennis or golf of the like?

정월엔 연날리기라든지 널뛰기라든지 같은 민속놀이를 하죠.

In January we do traditional Korean games like kite-flying or teeter-totter.

그럼 그리는 제주라든가 노래 부르는 제주는 타고 나는 거예요.

Things like painting or singing are talents one is born with.

-(이)라서 it is ... and so; indeed, possibly, audaciously, by any audacity

① The auxiliary particle -(이)라서 attaches to nouns and means *because it is* ... When -(이)라서 is used in combination with the interrogative pronoun 누구, the resulting shape is *누라서* and means *who would dare*...?

**Examples :**

어른이라서 말씀드리기가 어려워요.

Because he is my elder and superior, it is difficult for me to say this.

우리는 오래 전부터 친구라서 서로를 잘 알고 있습니다.

What I'm saying is that, since we're friend since way back, we know each other well.

무능한 사람이라서 일을 잘 해 낼지 걱정이예요.

Because he is so incompetent I worried as to whether he can do the job.

너무 늦은 밤이라서 전화를 걸기가 좀 어렵습니다.

It's so late at night that it's a bit awkward to call.

누라서 그의 뜻을 꺾으랴.

Who would dare to discourage him?

② When used in conjunction with the confirmation-seeking *그런지*, the auxiliary particle -(이)라서 gives a pattern translatable as *perhaps it is because*... [implied : but I'm not sure and need confirmation].

**Examples :**

봄이라서 그런지 온몸이 나른해지는 것 같아요.

It's probably because it is spring, but my whole body seems to be getting all weary.

외제라서 그런지 값이 엄청나군요.

Maybe it's because it's foreign-made, but the price is exorbitant!

시험 기간이라서 그런지 도서관이 만원이예요.

I guess it's because it's exam period, but it's a full house in the reading room.

학위 논문이라서 그런지 수준이 높군요.

I guess it's because it's a graduation thesis, but the level is quite high!

남의 것이라서 그런지 애착이 안 가요.

It must be because it belongs to somebody else, but I feel no attachment for it.

-(이)랍시고 [IRONICAL] saying/thinking/feeling that it is...

The auxiliary particle -(이)랍시고 is a conjunctive form which attaches to nouns to refer to them ironically. Nouns ending in a consonant take -이랍시고, and nouns ending in a vowel take -랍시고.

**Examples :**

자기가 책임자랍시고 일은 하지 않고 소리만 친다.

He claims to be the 'person in charge', but all he does is shout and do nothing.

이 집의 가장이랍시고 집안일에는 손끝 하나 대지 않는다.

He claims to be the 'head of the house' but he never lifts a finger in housework.

반장이랍시고 우리들에게 심부름만 시켜요.

Just because he's 'Class Leader' all he does is boss us around.

나이 많은 사람이랍시고 아무에게나 반말하는 건 좋지 않아요.

Just because you're a 'senior' doesn't mean you can go around using 'low form' to just anyone.

그 분야의 권위자랍시고 다른 사람의 학설은 인정하려 들지 않는다.

Just because he's a so-called 'authority' in the field, he makes no attempt to acknowledge others' theories.

-(이)르랑 (colloquial equivalent for -은/-는 or -(이)면)

Like -는, the auxiliary particle -(이)르랑 is used to willfully pick out and give emphasis to a preceding noun. It typically appears on subjects or objects, in which case it replaces -이/-가 and -을/-를, but it can also appear after the particles -에 and -에서.

**Examples :**

남의 것일랑 놓아두고 네 것이나 챙겨.  
Mind your own stuff and leave other people's things alone.  
여기 걱정일랑 하지 말고 그 일에 전념하세요.  
Don't worry about [us] here and concentrate on what you're doing.  
널랑 참견하지 말고 저리 가 있거라.  
[You] Stop interfering and go away!  
노래방에는 가더라도 오락실엘랑 가지마.  
I don't mind if you go to karaoke rooms, but don't go to arcades.  
길에설랑 한눈 팔지 말고 집으로 곧장 오너라.  
Come straight home and don't get distracted along the way.

-마다 each (one), every, all

① The auxiliary particle attaches to nouns to mean *each and every one without exception*.

**Examples :**

날마다 일기를 씁니다.  
I write my diary every day.  
해마다 농사가 잘 돼요.  
Every year the farming goes well.  
집집마다 태극기를 달았어요.  
All the houses are flying the Korean flag.  
지방마다 특색이 있습니다.  
Every region has its own special character.  
가는 곳마다 환영을 받았습시다.  
We were welcomed every place we went.

② The auxiliary particle *마다* can also be used in conjunction with the prefix *매-*, in which case the meaning of *every/each* is enhanced.

**Examples :**

매일마다 여덟 시간씩 일해요.  
I work 8 hours every day.  
매주일마다 교회에 나가세요?  
Do you go to church every week?

매달 말일마다 월급을 받으니까?  
Do you get paid on the last day of every month?  
매시간마다 선생님이 바뀝니다.  
The teacher changes every hour.  
매 삼 개월마다 상여금을 줍니다.  
They give a bonus every three months.

-마저 *going to the extreme/limit of, (including) even, also (on top of everything/ everything else)*

**Examples :**

너마저 그런 말을 하니?  
Even you are saying things like that?  
남편을 잃은 지 얼마 안 돼서 아들마저 잃었어요.  
Not long after she lost her husband, she lost even her son.  
몸이 약해져서 좋아하던 술마저 못 먹게 되었습니다.  
His condition has weakened so much that he can't even drink the alcohol he used to like so much.  
빚 때문에 집마저 팔았답니다.  
I'm telling you — he went so far as to sell his house because of his debts.  
그 친구마저 내 곁을 떠나고 말았습니다.  
Even that friend has now left my side.

-만 *only, just; to the extent of, as much as; just (marking a passage of time), for a period*

The auxiliary particle combines meanings of restrictiveness (*only, just that much*) and emphasis, and can attach to nouns, particles, adverbs and verb endings.

① When attaching to nouns, the auxiliary particle *-만* usually attaches to subjects or objects, in which case it replaces the subject and object particles.

**Examples :**

그는 공부는 안 하고 잠만 자요.  
Instead of studying, all he does is sleep.



김치만 잡수시면 짜요.  
If you eat just Kimchi' it'll be too salty.  
그 분만 내 마음을 아실 겁니다.  
Only she will understand my frame of mind.  
이번만은 꼭 성공하세요.  
Just this once be sure to succeed.  
저는 싼 옷만 사 입어요.  
I only wear cheap clothes.

㉔ The auxiliary particle -만 can also attach to other particles, adverbs and verb endings.

**Examples :**

아침에만 공부하고, 오후에는 사무실에 가요.  
I only study in the mornings, and in the afternoons I go to the office.  
저는 꼭 서울에서만 살았어요.  
I've only ever lived in Seoul my whole life.  
그 편지를 저한테만 보여 주세요.  
Show the letter to me and me only.  
빨리만 읽지 마세요.  
Just don't read it [too] fast.  
철수는 말을 듣고만 있어요.  
Cholsu is just listening.

-밖에 outside of (a limit), (with the) exception (of)

㉕ The auxiliary particle 밖에 denotes a limit or boundary for the preceding content or situation, and is normally followed by a negative form. Use with the particle -는 reinforces the meaning of emphasis. The basic meaning is *besides*, or *outside of*.

**Examples :**

전 한국말을 조금밖에 못해요.  
I only speak a little Korean [lit. : Outside of a little I can't speak Korean.]  
술을 한 잔밖에 마시지 않았는데요.

All I drank was one glass. [lit.: Outside of one glass I didn't drink.]  
그 사람은 자기밖에 모릅니다.  
All she thinks about is herself.  
10분밖에는 여유가 없으니, 서두르십시오.  
I only have ten minutes to spare, so hurry up.  
한 번밖에 없는 기회를 놓치고 말았습니다.  
I ended up missing a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity.

㉖ The auxiliary particle -밖에 can also be used after -는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 것.

**Examples :**

그 아이는 눈만 뜨면 먹는 것밖에 몰라요.  
No sooner than that child wakes up, all he knows how to do is eat.  
돈은 오늘 쓸 것밖에 없는데...  
The only money I have is what I need [to use] today.  
그는 먹고 자는 것밖에는 하는 일이 없어요.  
The only thing he ever does is eat and sleep.  
선생님이 말씀하신 것밖에는 기억나지 않아요.  
The only things I remember are what the teacher said.  
줄 줄은 모르고 받는 것밖에 모르는가 봐요.  
It seems all she knows is how to receive, and not how to give.

-보고 (asks/tells/shows) to (a person)

The auxiliary particle -보고 has the same meaning as and can replace -에게 in colloquial speech. It is usually followed by a verb like 말하다 *say*, tell, 묻다 *ask*, 웃다 *smile*, 욕하다 *curse*, etc.

**Examples :**

나보고 뭐라고 그랬습니까?  
What did you say to me? or Did you say something to me?  
그 말이 바로 너보고 하는 소리야.  
What he said was aimed precisely at you.  
누구보고 바보라고 해?  
Who are you calling a fool?

어른보고 반말을 하면 못 써.

It's bad to use 'low form' to one's elders.

너보고 웃는 저 사람이 누구니?

Who's that person over there smiling at you?

**-보다 than**

The auxiliary particle is used to compare two or more things.

**Examples :**

철수가 영수보다 더 큼니다.

Cholsu is bigger than Yongsu.

비행기가 기차보다 빨라요.

Airplanes are faster than trains.

한라산이 설악산보다 높습니다.

Mount Halla is higher than Mount Sorak.

오늘은 어제보다 더운 것 같아요.

Today seems hotter than yesterday.

돈보다 중요한 것이 무엇이라고 생각하세요?

What do you think is more important than money?

**-부터 from (a time), since; beginning with, starting from**

The auxiliary particle -부터 designates a temporal or spatial point of departure or inception.

① Examples of -부터 used with nouns.

**Examples :**

오전 9시부터 수업을 시작합니다.

We began class from 9 AM.

내일부터 학교에 일찍 오세요.

Starting tomorrow please come to school early.

이 꽃은 2월부터 피요.

This flower blooms starting in February.

오늘은 제5과부터 공부하겠습니다.

Today we are going to study starting with Lesson Five.

기초부터 잘 배워야 해요.

You have to learn starting from the basics.

② Examples of -부터 used with other particles, adverbs and verb endings.

**Examples :**

학교에서부터 걸어 왔어요.

I walked from school.

부모님으로부터 물려 받은 것이 많군요.

I see you've inherited a lot of things from your parents!

아침 일찍부터 서둘러야 해요.

I have to rush around from early in the morning.

어려서부터 재주가 있었어요.

He has been talented ever since he was little.

태어나면서부터 병어리야

He has been a deaf-mute since birth.

③ The auxiliary particle -부터 can also attach to nouns with the meaning of *starting from/with; does it first*.

**Examples :**

무엇부터 시작할까요?

What shall we start with?

손부터 씻고 잡수세요.

Wash your hands first before you eat.

어떤 식당은 돈부터 내요.

In some restaurants you have to pay before you eat.

눈 뜨면 담배부터 피우는 사람이 있어요.

There are some people for whom the first thing they do when they wake up in the morning is smoke a cigarette.

반대부터 하지 말고 내 말 좀 들어주세요.

Instead of opposing me right off the bat why don't you listen to what I have to say first?

**-부터 — -까지 from ... until ...**

These two auxiliary particles denote spatial or temporal starting

points and end-points, respectively.

① Used with nouns:

**Examples :**

저는 오전 여덟시부터 오후 다섯시까지 근무해요.

I work from 8 AM until 5 PM.

제일과부터 제오과까지 시험 보겠어요.

We're going to have an exam on lessons 1 to 5.

일월부터 삼월까지 제일 바빠요.

We're busiest from January to March.

아침부터 저녁까지 놀기만 해요.

All he does is fool around from morning until evening.

지금부터 내일 아침까지 굶으세요.

Don't eat anything from now until tomorrow morning.

② These auxiliary particles can also be used after other particles or verb endings; in case when the particle -에서 is used, the -에 can be dropped leaving just -서.

**Examples :**

여기서부터 집까지 걸어 갑시다.

Let's walk from here to home.

지금으로부터 십 년 전까지의 역사를 알아 보세요.

Please find out about the history from now until ten years back.

집에 도착해서부터 지금까지 줄곧 쉬었습니다.

Ever since arriving home I've rested right up until now.

그 약을 먹고부터 이제까지 아주 건강했습니다.

Ever since taking that medicine I've been very healthy thus far.

그 사람을 만나고서부터 지금까지 행복하게 살아요.

I've been living happily ever since meeting her ['until now'].

-뿐 only, merely, just, alone; nothing but, only, constantly

The auxiliary particle -뿐 is used to express the idea of selection of one thing only, and exclusion of all others. It is usually followed by the copula -이다.

**Examples :**

내가 아는 사람은 이 사람뿐입니다.

The only person I know is him.

말뿐이지 실재는 다르다.

That's just what they say, but in reality it's different.

나뿐 아니라 모두들 기뻐했어요.

Not only me, but everybody was happy.

산에 돌뿐이고 나무가 많지 않아요.

On the mountain it was just rocks, and not many trees.

내 말을 듣고 있는 사람은 너뿐이구나.

So, I see you're the only one who listens to me!

-(이)야 only if it be, if it is just (no more than); when it comes to; taking ... for granted; even, indeed

① The auxiliary particle -(이)야 imparts to nouns meanings of contrast and exclusion, and implies *of course, it is only naturally so ~ it is a matter of course*. It can also be used after the particles -에 and -에서.

**Examples :**

한국생활이 재미야 있죠.

Fun? Sure life in Korea is fun.

말이야 쉽지만, 실천하긴 어렵죠.

Of course, it's easy enough to say, but putting it into practice is difficult.

철수가 힘이야 세지요. 공부는 못하지만...

Strong? Sure, Cholsu is strong, all right. But he's not much good at studying...

배가 고플 때야 라면도 맛이 있지.

It's at only the times when you're hungry that even ramen taste good.

집에서야 편한 옷을 입죠.

At home, of course, I wear comfortable clothes.

② The auxiliary particle -(이)야 can be used in conjunction with 말로 to produce a complex particle which limits a preceding noun and renders the expression even stronger: *indeed, precisely, none other than, just, exactly*.

**Examples :**

오늘이야말로 내게는 잊을 수 없는 날입니다.

Today is indeed an unforgettable day for me.

불국사의 석굴암이야말로 한국 예술품의 대표입니다.

Sokkuram at Pulguk Temple is truly epitome of Korean works of art.

결혼이야말로 일생에서 가장 중요한 일입니다.

Marriage is without question the most important event of our lives.

그 사람이야말로 우리 회사에 없어서는 안 될 사람이다.

She is truly an indispensable person for our company.

그 소문이야말로 믿을 수 없는 헛소문이다.

That is without question an unbelievable and groundless rumor.

- ㉓ The auxiliary particle -(이)야 can attach to the copular form -이라 to express an emphatic *only if it be, unless it be*:

**Examples :**

한국사람이라야 한국말을 가르칠 수 있어요?

Do you have to be a Korean to be able to teach Korean?

책임감이 강한 사람이라야 그 일을 할 거예요.

You have to be a person with a strong sense of responsibility to do that job.

부자라야 그런 집을 살 수 있을 거예요.

You probably have to be rich to buy a house like that.

연한 고기라야 노인이 잡수실 수 있습니다.

The meat has to be tender if elderly people are to be able to eat it.

싸고 좋은 물건이라야 잘 팔립니다.

It has to good quality, cheap merchandise to sell well.

- ㉔ The auxiliary particle can be used in conjunction with the pattern in -고 in two different ways. The combination -고야 means *only after ...ing* or *only under the circumstance that/under the unique circumstance that*. ... Added to the pattern in -고 말다 meaning *finish up doing it, get it done, finally do it*, the -(이)야 in the resulting pattern in -고야 말다 lends added emphasis to the finality inherent in the pattern.

**Examples :**

천 그분의 말을 듣고야 대답하겠습니다.

I'm going to wait until after I hear what he has to say before I answer.

그 분의 목소리를 듣고야 안심을 했습니다.

Only after I heard the sound of his voice did I feel relieved.

무엇을 시작하면 끝내고야 마는 성미입니다.

Her character is of the type that absolutely insists on finishing something once she starts it.

그 분한테서 꼭 돈을 받아내고야 말 겁니다.

I will get my money out of him!

그렇게 머리가 나쁘고야 무슨 일을 하겠습니까?

How can he hold down a job if he's so dumb?

- ㉕ The auxiliary particle -(이)야 also lends its sense of contingency to the pattern in -이/가 아니고야 unless (lit. : if and only if the preceding not be the case, the action in the following clause is impossible). In other words, it is an emphatic way to express -이기 때문에 because (such -and-such), the contents of the following clause will come about. This pattern can also be used as -이/가 아니고서야.

**Examples :**

천재가 아니고야 어찌 그걸 다 외울 수 있을까?

How can you memorize all that unless you're a genius?

바보가 아니고야 왜 그 말도 모르니?

How would you not know even that word unless you're an idiot?.

귀신이 아니고야 어떻게 앞일을 그렇게 잘 알겠어?

How could she know future events so well unless she's a ghost?

사랑하는 사람이 아니고야 자기 목숨까지 버릴 리가 있겠습니까?

What reason would there be for him to sacrifice his own life unless she was somebody he loved?

도둑놈이 아니고서야 남의 물건을 가져 가겠니?

Who else would make off with somebody else's possessions other than a thief?

**-조차** even, too; to boot, into the bargain, in addition

The auxiliary particle **-조차** is used to express the idea that, in comparison with other similar facts, a certain fact is unexpected or out of the ordinary. It can be paraphrased in Korean with **또한 아울러** moreover, what more, to boot. It is not normally used in imperative or propositive sentences.

**Examples :**

그 사람은 눈물조차 흘리지 않았습니다.  
He didn't even shed a tear.  
그것은 더 이야기할 가치조차 없습니다.  
That isn't even worth talking about any further.  
선생님이 오실 줄은 생각조차 못했어요.  
The thought never even occurred to me that you might come.  
너무 바빠서 밥 먹을 시간조차 없습니다.  
I've been so busy I haven't even had time to eat.  
가족들조차도 그분의 행방을 알 수 없었어요.  
Even his own family members had no idea of his whereabouts.

**-(이)ㄴ즉** to speak of, speaking of, as for; since/as it is...

The auxiliary particle **-(으)ㄴ즉** attaches to nouns and means when it comes to..., speaking of... Nouns ending in a consonant take **-인즉**, and nouns ending in a vowel take **-ㄴ즉**. This pattern can also take the shape **-(이)ㄴ즉슨**.

**Examples :**

그 사람의 얘긴즉 그 말이 사실이에요.  
According to that person, what he says is true.  
야! 이 글썽즉 명필이로다.  
Wow! This handwriting is artistry!  
이런 시험인즉 누워서 떡 먹기죠.  
Exams like this are a piece of cake.  
의사 말인즉슨 병명을 환자에게 알리는 게 도움이 된답니다.  
According to the doctor, it helps patients to inform them of their

diagnosis.

사실인즉슨 그 회사는 부도나기 일보 직전이랍니다.

As a matter of fact, they say that company is one step away from insolvency.

**-처럼** like, (the same) as, as if

The auxiliary particle **-처럼** is used in comparing one thing with another to express likeness or similarity.

**Examples :**

달이 대낮처럼 밝아요.  
The moon is as bright as broad daylight.  
순희는 사과처럼 얼굴이 빨개졌어요.  
Sunhee face turned red as an apple.  
나는 너처럼 거짓말은 못해.  
I'm incapable of lying like you.  
저 아이는 어른처럼 말합니다.  
That child speaks like an adult.  
이처럼 맛있는 과일은 처음 먹어 봅니다.  
This is the first time I've ever eaten such tasty fruit.

**-치고** when it comes to, as for (being), as, in the capacity of, for; every

□ The auxiliary particle **-치고** attaches to nouns to give the idea of the entire set of nouns of this type is/does without exception... and is often followed by a double negative or similar strong expression.

**Examples :**

키 큰 사람치고 싱겁지 않은 사람이 없어요.  
All tall people are boring.  
우리 회사 직원치고 그렇게 느장부리는 사람 없습니다.  
Not a one of our company employees are laggards.  
동물치고 이렇게 사람을 따르는 동물은 처음 보았다.  
Of all the animals in the animal kingdom I've never seen one follow a human like this.

사람치고 돈 싫어하는 사람이 있습니까?

Have you ever seen a person who dislikes money?

여자가 할 수 있는 일치고 이걸 너무 힘든 일입니다.

Of all the many jobs women can do, this one is too difficult.

㉔ The auxiliary particle -치고 can be emphasized by adding -는, in which case the meaning is compared to the entire set of nouns of this type ... (exceptionally).

**Examples :**

중고차치고는 새 차 같다.

Considering it's a used car, it looks like new.

얼굴이 예쁜 사람치고는 마음이 고운데.

For a person with such a pretty face she's also very nice at heart.

아이치고는 너무 어른스럽군.

She's so adult-like for a child!

음식 솜씨치고는 그녀를 따를 사람이 없는 것 같아.

When it comes to culinary skills, it seems nobody can match her.

이름치고는 참 멋진 이름입니다.

As names go, it's quite a classy one.

-커녕 far from (being), to say nothing of, let alone, on the contrary; not only; contrary to expectation; instead of (something desirable that one might expect)

㉕ The auxiliary particle -커녕 is used to explain that a condition even less favorable than that in the preceding clause pertains in the following clause. Thus, it has a meaning similar to the 고사하고 of the pattern in -은/는 고사하고 -조차 아니하다, i. e. it presents a negative or unpleasant set of circumstances, then goes on to present something even worse. This particle attaches to nouns as -은/는 커녕 and to verbs as -기는 커녕, and the noun or ending following -커녕 usually takes -도. (See page 167)

**Examples :**

편지는 커녕 전화 한통도 못 받았죠.

I haven't even had a phone call from her, let alone a letter.

목이 아파서 밥은 커녕 물도 마실 수 없어요.

My throat hurts so much I haven't even been able to drink, let alone eat.

애인은 커녕 변변한 친구 하나 없답니다.

Hey, I don't even have your garden variety friend, let alone a girlfriend.

예습은 커녕 복습도 해 오지 않아요.

He doesn't even review, let alone preparing before he comes.

자기는 커녕 누워 보지도 못하고 출근했어요.

I left for work without even having lain down, let alone slept.

㉖ In place of the particle -도, the noun or noun phrase in the second clause of the -커녕 pattern can take the auxiliary particle -조차, in which case the negative meaning is even more emphatic.

**Examples :**

밥은 커녕 죽 한 그릇조차 못 먹었어요.

I haven't even had one lousy bowl of gruel, let alone rice.

책은 커녕 잡지조차 읽지 않으니, 뭘 알겠어요?

You don't even read magazines, let alone books, so what would you know?

일은 커녕 심부름조차 해 주는 사람이 없으니, 답답하군요.

I don't even have anybody to run errands for me, let alone work for me, so it's driving me crazy.

피서는 커녕 수영 한 번조차 못 하고 여름을 지냈습니다.

I passed through the whole summer without even going swimming once, let alone getting away somewhere cool for a holiday.

금메달은 커녕 동메달조차도 못 땀어요.

She didn't even get the bronze medal, let alone the gold.

## Chapter Ten

# Tense

Tense in Korean can be divided into past, present and future depending upon the time of the speaker's utterance and the time of occurrence of the event, action or state in question. But because many Korean tense markers also express aspect, one must be careful not to interpret them strictly as time markers.

Korean employs the following methods to indicate tense: 1) Tense marking via final verb endings (see Figure 12). 2) Tense marking via adnominal endings. We also treat this subject under "Special Expressions using Verbal Inflectional Endings" in Chapter 13 ("Adnominal Endings, page 316). 3) Tense can also be indicated or made clearer by the use of certain time adverbs in a sentence.

### 1. Tense Marking via Final Verb Endings

#### 1) Present Tense (현재형)

〈Figure 12〉

Inflected Forms for Final Endings, Present Tense

Final Ending				
Dict. Form	-(ㄷ/는)다	-ㅂ/습니다	-어(아, 여)요	-지 않아요
가다	간다	갑니다	가요	가지 않아요

보다	본다	봅니다	봐요	보지 않아요
먹다	먹는다	먹습니다	먹어요	먹지 않아요
배우다	배운다	배웁니다	배워요	배우지 않아요
쓰다	쓴다	씁니다	써요	쓰지 않아요
치다	친다	칩니다	쳐요	치지 않아요
하다	한다	합니다	해요	하지 않아요
좋다	좋다	좋습니다	좋아요	좋지 않아요
비싸다	비싸다	비쌉니다	비싸요	비싸지 않아요
예쁘다	예쁘다	예쁩니다	예뻐요	예쁘지 않아요
이다	이다	입니다	이에요	이지 않아요*
있다	있다	있습니다	있어요	있지 않아요

\* In actual fact, -이/가 아니에요 is used more frequently than -이지 않아요.

**Examples :**

학생이 학교에 간다.  
The student is going to school.  
아이가 지금\* 밥을 먹는다.  
The child is eating now.  
학생들이 노래를 배웁니다.  
The students are learning songs.  
요즘 과일 값이 비쌉니다.  
Lately fruit prices are expensive.  
김 선생님은 마음이 좋습니다.  
Mr. Kim has a nice temperament.  
저 사람은 회사원입니다.  
She is a company employee.  
책상 위에 책이 있습니다.  
There is a book on the desk.  
오늘은\* 날씨가 참 좋아요.  
Today the weather is really nice.

\*NB: In these sentences, the time adverbs 지금 *now* and 오늘 *today* function to make the tense clearer.

The present tense is also used to express the current state or character-

istics of an object, repeated or habitual actions, and universal truths.

**Examples :**

지구는 돈다.  
The earth revolves.  
인간은 만물의 영장이다.  
Mankind is the lord of all creation.  
봄이 오면 꽃이 핀다.  
When spring comes the flowers bloom.  
사람은 누구나 한번은 죽는다.  
Everyone dies at some point.  
나이가 차면 결혼을 해야 합니다.  
When one reaches the appropriate age, one must get married.  
그 아이는 늘 모자를 쓴다.  
That child always wears a hat.

Even if an event occurs after the time of utterance, the present tense is used if the event is expected or anticipated.

**Examples :**

난 내일 아침 비행기로 떠난다.  
I'm leaving tomorrow morning by airplane.  
시험 결과는 내일 알려 드려요.  
I let you know the results of the test tomorrow.  
아들이 내년에 대학을 졸업해요.  
My son is graduating from college next year.  
30분 있으면 학교 수업이 끝나요.  
School classes finish in 30 minutes.  
비행기가 곧 출발합니다. 빨리 타세요.  
The plane is leaving any minute now. Hurry up and board.

**2) Past Tense (과거형)**

Past tense is expressed by attaching the past tense ending -었(았, 였) to an action or descriptive verb base (see page 98).



<Figure 13> Past Tense

Dict. Form	Past Tense			
	-었(았, 었)다*①	-었(았, 었)습니다	-었(았, 었)어요	-지 않았어요
가다	갔다*②	갔습니다	갔어요	가지 않았어요
보다	보았다/봤다*②	보았습니다	보았어요	보지 않았어요
먹다	먹었다	먹었습니다	먹었어요	먹지 않았어요
배우다	배웠다*②	배웠습니다	배웠어요	배우지 않았어요
쓰다	썼다*②	썼습니다	썼어요	쓰지 않았어요
치다	쳤다*②	쳤습니다	쳤어요	치지 않았어요
하다	하였다/했다*②	하였-/했습니다	했어요	하지 않았어요
좋다	좋았다	좋았습니다	좋았어요	좋지 않았어요
많다	많았다	많았습니다	많았어요	많지 않았어요
예쁘다	예뻤다	예뻤습니다	예뻤어요	예쁘지 않았어요
이다	이었다	이었습니다	이었어요	
있다	있었다	있었습니다	있었어요	있지 않았어요

\* ① If the verb base vowel is ㅏ or ㅑ, the ending is -았; if the vowel is ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅡ or ㅣ, the ending is -었, and if the verb is 하다, the ending is -었.

\* ② ㅏ+ㅏ → ㅑ, ㅑ+ㅏ → ㅑ, ㅓ+ㅓ → ㅕ, ㅡ+ㅓ → ㅓ, ㅣ+ㅓ → ㅓ, ㅓ+ㅓ → ㅓ

□ The past tense ending -었(았, 었) is used to show that an event or state occurred in the past.

**Examples :**

어제 비가 왔어요.

It rained yesterday.

어머님이 외출하셨습니다.

Mother went out.

그 아이는 어릴 때 무척 예뻤어요.

That child was really pretty when she was little.

그 사람은 제 한국말 선생이었습니다.

She was my Korean language teacher.

나는 어제 집에 있었어요.

I was at home yesterday.

② The past tense ending can also express the fact that an event or action was completed, and its effect(s) continue(s) up to the present.

**Examples :**

그 사람은 어제 부산에 갔어요.

He went to Pusan yesterday [and he is still there].

지금 숙제를 다 끝냈습니다.

Now I've finished all my homework.

김 선생을 만났어요.

I've met Mr. Kim.

그림을 그렸다가 찢어버렸어요.

I painted a picture and then ripped it up.

이제 담배를 끊었습니다.

I've quit smoking now.

③ When one wishes to express an event, action or state which occurred much earlier than the time of utterance, one can use the 'past-past' ending.

**Examples :**

김 선생이 어제 여기에 왔었어요.

Mr. Kim came here yesterday.

그 사람 주소를 알았었는데, 지금은 잊어 버렸어요.

I used to know his address but now I've forgotten it.

그 여자는 가끔 빨간 옷을 입었어요.

She sometimes used to wear red clothes.

나는 어제 부산에 갔었어요.

I went to Pusan yesterday [and now I'm back].

그 분은 미국에 유학갔었어요.

He went to the States to study [and now he's back].

④ Time adverbs or adverbial expressions associated with past tense like 작년 last year, 어렸을 때 when one was little, 학생이었을 때 when

one was a student, 젊었을 때 when one was young, etc., can be used to make the past tense clearer.

**Examples :**

나는 작년에 부산에 갔었어요.

I went to Pusan last year.

젊었을 때는 기억력이 좋았었다.

When I was young my memory was good.

나도 얼마 전에 여기서 먹었었습니다.

I ate here once not long ago, too.

오래전 그분도 여기 선생님이었었습니다.

A long time ago, she was a teacher here, too.

그 분은 예전에 미국에 유학갔었어요.

Way back when she studied in the States.

㉔ When one recalls a past event and returns to the time of the event to narrate it more vividly, one uses the retrospective ending -더 followed by the final endings -라, -군, etc.

**Examples :**

김 선생은 어제 고향 집에 가더라.

Mr. Kim was on his way to his hometown yesterday [I recall].

어제는 날씨가 꽤 춥더군요.

Yesterday the weather was quite cold [I recall].

그 사람을 만나 보니 제 친구더군요.

When I met him I realized he was a friend [I recall].

새마을호는 아주 빠르더라.

The Saemaul train was really fast [as I recall].

김치가 맛이 있더군요.

Their kimchi' was tasty [I recall].

**3) Future Tense (미래형)**

㉕ In Korean the future tense is expressed with -겠 or -(으)ㄹ 것/거'. The ending in -겠 is used to express the speaker's strong will or intention, while the pattern in -(으)ㄹ 거예요 is a simpler future, and

expresses less will or intention than -겠. See the figure below for more details.

〈Figure 14〉 Future Tense

Future Dict. Form	-겠다	-겠습니다	-겠어요	-지 않겠어요	-(으)ㄹ 거예요
가다	가겠다	가겠습니다	가겠어요	가지 않겠어요	갈 거예요
보다	보겠다	보겠습니다	보겠어요	보지 않겠어요	볼 거예요
읽다	읽겠다	읽겠습니다	읽겠어요	읽지 않겠어요	읽을 거예요
있다	있겠다	있겠습니다	있겠어요	있지 않겠어요	있을 거예요

**Examples :**

오늘 친구들이 집에 놀러 오겠군요.

I see your friends are coming over today ['to play']!

내일은 집에 있을 거예요.

Tomorrow I'll be at home.

이 음식을 맛있게 먹겠습니다.

I'm going to enjoy eating this food.

그 책들은 이제 읽지 않겠어요.

Now I don't want to read those books [anymore].

오늘 영화 구경을 갈 거예요.

We're going to go see a movie today.

㉖ In first-person statements, the ending -겠 expresses intention or will.

**Examples :**

다시는 그 사람을 만나지 않겠어요.

I do not intend to meet him again.

나는 지금 숙제를 하겠어요.

I'm going to do my homework now.

다방에 가서 커피를 마시겠습니다.

I'm going to go to a tea house and have coffee.  
 내일은 꼭 그 일을 끝내겠습니다.  
 Tomorrow I will definitely finish that job.  
 일이 있으면 집으로 연락하겠습니다.  
 If something comes up I contact you at home.

㉓ The ending -겠 can also express supposition.

**Examples :**

내일은 비가 오겠군요.  
 I bet it's going to rain tomorrow!  
 그 사람도 부인을 만나겠지요.  
 I'll bet he's going to meet his wife, too.  
 어린 아이도 그 일은 할 수 있겠어요.  
 I'll bet even a child could do that.  
 나도 그 문제를 풀겠어요.  
 I'll bet I can solve that problem, too.  
 김 선생은 지금쯤 제주도에 도착했겠어요.  
 I'll bet Mr. Kim has arrived in Cheju by now.

**4) Progressive Tense (진행형)**

The progressive tense uses the pattern in -고 있다. It is used only with action verbs, and tends to be used in conjunction with nouns indicating tense. In order to honorificate the subject, the pattern is changed to -고 계시다. This pattern can also be used for repeated or habitual actions.

**Examples :**

친구가 지금 기다리고 있습니다.  
 My friend is waiting now.  
 아버님은 손님과 이야기하고 계십니다.  
 Father is talking with a guest.  
 어제는 집에서 숙제하고 있었습니다.  
 Yesterday I was doing my homework at home.  
 그 사람은 요즈음 소설을 쓰고 있어요.

Lately she is writing a novel.  
 나는 날마다 한국말을 공부하고 있습니다.  
 I'm studying Korean every day.

## Honorifics and Humilifics

As mentioned earlier in the section on the "Characteristic Features of Korean", the feature of honorification in Korean is more highly developed than in any other language. (see page 83). The morphology of Korean honorific expressions can be divided in three main types.

### 1. Subject Honorification (주체 높임법)

Subject honorification is achieved by attaching the honorific suffix '-(으)시' to the verb stem and thereby honorificating the subject of the sentence. It is important to note here that the relationship between the sentence subject, the speaker and the listener impinges directly on honorification. Likewise, in determining whether or not use of the honorific suffix is called for, factors like age, degree of intimacy of the relationship, social position and the specific personal relationship between the speaker and the target of honorification must all be taken into consideration. Note also that the subject of the sentence can be either the listener or a third person.

*Examples :*

Verb	Vst + (으)시 *	Vst(으)시 + -습니다
가다	가시	가십니다

보다	보시	보십니다
읽다	읽으시	읽으십니다
좋다	좋으시	좋으십니다
예쁘다	예쁘시	예쁘십니다
이다	이시	이십니다
있다	있으시	있으십니다

\*NB : verb stems ending in vowels take **십니다** and verb stems ending in consonants take **으십니다**.

**Examples :**

선생님께서 학교에 **가십니다**.  
 The teacher is going to school.  
 저 분이 김 박사**이십니다**.  
 That's Dr. Kim.  
 아버지께서 신문을 **보십니다**.  
 Father is reading the newspaper.  
 한국말 책이 **있으십니까?**  
 Do you have any Korean language books?  
 그 분이 그렇게 **예쁘십니까?**  
 Is she that pretty?

The usage of the honorific suffix '-(으)시' is subject to a number of rather complex constraints; here we give just a few examples.

① In cases where the listener is of higher status than the subject of the sentence, even if the subject is of higher status than the speaker, the honorific suffix '-(으)시' is not used. In other words, in cases where the following situation pertains : listener → sentence subject → speaker where "→" means 'is of higher status than'.

**Examples :**

할아버지, 아버지가 지금 **왔습니다**.  
 Grandfather, father has just come back.  
 어머니, 형이 돌아**왔어요**.  
 Mother, elder brother is back.

박사님, 제 선배는 **교수예요**.  
 Dr. [So-and-so], my school senior is a professor.  
 선생님, 이 사람은 제 **형인대요**.  
 Teacher, this is my older brother.  
 교수님, 김 선배가 논문을 **발표했대요**.  
 Professor -I hear that my school senior Kim gave a paper.

② In genres like news reporting, or situations like textbooks where one is formally conveying knowledge, one does not use the honorific suffix '-(으)시' even if the subject is of high status.

**Examples :**

대통령이 미국을 **방문한다**.  
 The president visits the US.  
 김유신 장군은 삼국을 **통일했습니다**.  
 General Kim Yusin unified the three kingdoms.  
 졸업식에서 총장이 격려사를 **했다**.  
 The president of the university said some words of encouragement at the graduation ceremony.  
 군 책임자가 일선을 **시찰했다**지요.  
 They say the military authorities made an inspection of the front line.  
 그 사고의 책임을 학교장이 **졌다**.  
 The school principal took responsibility for that accident.

③ When referring to a body part or a personal possession of the target of honorification, one can add the honorific suffix '-(으)시' to achieve an indirect honorific effect.

**Examples :**

선생님께서서는 감기가 **드셨습니다**.  
 The teacher has caught a cold.  
 김 선생님께서는 연세가 **많으십니다**.  
 Mr. Kim is quite elderly.  
 이 선생님께서는 얼굴이 **예쁘십니다**.  
 Mrs. Lee has a pretty face.  
 박 사장님께서서는 돈이 **많으십니다**.

Company president Pak has lots of money.

차가 없으셔서 불편하시겠어요.

It must be inconvenient for you without a car.

④ In cases where the target of honorification is related to the listener, and that same target of honorification is higher in status than the listener, one can use the honorific suffix ‘-(으)시’ even if the speaker is higher in status than the subject of the sentence. In other words, in cases where the following situation pertains : speaker → sentence subject → listener where “→” means ‘is of higher status than’.

**Examples :**

영수야, 너의 아버지 회사에 나가셨니?

Hey Yongsu-has your father gone to work?

아가야, 어머님께 빨리 오시라고 해라.

Hey little boy — tell your mother to come quickly.

애야, 아버지 진지 잡수시라고 해.

Hey [you, my child]-tell your father dinner is ready.

부모님께 내일 9시에 떠나시라고 일러라.

Tell your parents to leave tomorrow at 9 o'clock.

삼촌께 시간 맞춰 약을 드시라고 해라.

Tell your uncle to take his medicine at the right time intervals.

**2. Speech Levels (상대 높임법)**

Korean speakers must choose their final verb endings on the basis of factors like the listener’s social position, age, family relationships and the degree of intimacy of the speaker’s relationship with the listener. This process of selection appropriate final endings is called ‘Speech Levels’ (상대 높임법). Korean speech levels can be divided into two broad types : the Formal Speech Level (격식체) and the Informal Speech Level (비격식체). Each of these two broad categories has further subdivisions; thus, the Formal Speech level is composed of the Formal-High (존대형), Neutral

(중립형) and Low (하대형 or 반말) Styles, and the Informal Speech level consists of the Informal-High (존대형) style and the Informal-Low (하대형) style. Table 15 below summarizes the final endings for the various Korean speech levels.

〈Figure 15〉 Korean Speech Levels (상대 높임법)

Final Ending 상대높임	서술형	의문형	명령형	청유형	감탄형
	Declarative	Interrogative	Imperative	Propositive	Exclamatory
존 대 형	동 ① -ㅂ/습니다	-ㅂ/습니까	-(으)십시오	-(으)십시오	-는구료
	상 -ㅂ/습니다	-ㅂ/습니까	②		-구료
	형 서 -(이)ㅂ니다	-(이)ㅂ니까			-(이)로구료
중 립 형	동 -네, -데, -(으)네세	-(으)니까, -는가, -던가	-게	-세	-는구먼
	상 -네, -데, -(으)이	-(으)니까, -(으)니까, -던가			-구먼
	형 서 -(이)네, -(이)데, -(이)네세	-(으)니까, -(이)니까, -(이)던가			-(이)구먼
하 대 형	동 -ㄴ/는다, -(더)라	-니, -느냐	-어(아, 여)라	-자	-는구나
	상 -ㄴ니라		-너라, -거라		
	-(으)리라, -(으)마		-(으)려므나 -(으)렴		
	형 서 -다, -(으)니라	-(으)니, -(으)냐		-구나	-(-이)구나
	-(더)라	-(이)니, -(이)냐			

존 대 형	동	-어(아, 여)요, -지요	-어(아, 여) 요, -지요	-어(아, 여)요 -지요	-어(아, 여) 요-는군요 -지요	
	상	-어(아, 여)요, -지요	-어(아, 여) 요, -지요		-군요	
	서	-(이)지요, -이어/여요 -(이)네요, -(이)테요	-어(아, 여)요 -(이)지요,		-(이)군요, -(이)로군요	
격 ③	동	-어(아, 여), -지	-어(아, 여), -지	-어(아, 여) -지	-어(아, 여) -지	-는군
	상	-어(아, 여), -지	-어(아, 여), -지			-군
	서	-(이)야, - 지	-(이)야, -(이)지		-(이)군, -(이)로군	

① Abbreviations : 동 stands for 동작동사, i. e. action verb; , 상 stands for 상태동사, i. e. descriptive verb, and 서 stands for 서술격, i. e. the copula -이다.

② Descriptive verbs and the copula -이다 are incompatible with imperatives or suggestions ("Let's...").

③ In the Informal Speech style(s), intonation is used to convey the difference between statement, question, command and suggestion.

1) Formal Speech Level (격식체)

The Formal Speech level is considered to be more ceremonial, and is characterized as 'direct' and 'objective'. Thus, it is ideally suited to usage in formal situations, or when the relationship between speaker and listener is either not particularly close, or is awkward or reserved.

The Formal-High form (존대형) expresses simultaneously respect by

the speaker for the listener and modesty and reserve on the part of the speaker vis a vis the listener. Thus, it is often used in solemn and serious conversation on formal occasions in order for the speaker to show respect and deference to the listener. This form can also be used, regardless of the relative social status or mutual relationship of speaker and listener, in situations where speaker and listener meet for the first time, or are not well acquainted.

Examples :

철수가 집에 갑니다.

Cholsu is going home.

동생이 밥을 먹습니다.

My younger sister is eating.

도서관엔 책이 많습니까?

Are there many books in the library?

이 꽃이 매우 예쁘구료!

My, this flower is really pretty!

저 분이 이 대학교 총장이십니까?

Is that person over there the president of this university?

천천히 말씀하십시오.

Please speak slowly.

The Formal-Neutral form is used by speakers who are either relatively senior in age or high in social position to listeners who are lower in age and/or status, but without any great sense of 'talking down' to them; rather, the Formal-Neutral form shows a certain amount of respect to the listener, despite the latter lower status. As a consequence, the listener in such situations tends also to be somebody relatively senior and/or high in social position. Thus, the Formal-Neutral form is used mostly elderly people of the same generation.

Examples :

여보게, 난 내일 미국으로 떠나네.

Say - I'm leaving for the US tomorrow.

그 분의 새 차가 멋이 있네.

His new car was quite sharp.

내일 누가 오는가?

Who's coming tomorrow?

지금 바로 사무실로 오게.

Please come straight to my office now.

그 아이가 학교를 잘 다니던가?

Was that child attending school all right?

늦었으니, 빨리 가세.

It's late, so let's hurry up and go.

덥더니, 비가 오는구먼.

It was hot for a while, but now it's raining!

The Formal-Low form is typically used by an older or socially higher speaker to a younger listener, but can also be used mutually between speakers of the same age if they have a sufficiently intimate relationship. In the latter case of two speakers of similar age, when the speakers are of middle age or higher, they use the Formal-Neutral form introduced above. The Formal-Low form is also used in contexts where the message is not aimed at a specific individual; e. g. newspapers and magazines. In such cases, this speech level has no implication of 'talking down' to the reader.

**Examples :**

영희는 지금 잔다.

Yonghi is sleeping now.

영철이는 지금 목욕을 하느니라.

Yongchol is sure to be taking a bath now.

그 신발 참 예쁘다.

Those shoes are really pretty.

밥 먹었니?

Have you eaten?

학교에 늦을라. 서둘러라.

You'll be late for school — hurry up!

이번 주말엔 백화점에 구경가자.

Let's go do some window-shopping at the department stores this weekend.

참 좋은 물건이 많구나!

They have lots of really good stuff!

When the speaker wishes to show particular deference or humility, the forms '-(으)옵', '-삼/시옵/사오' and '-잡/자옵/자오' can also be used to exalt the listener. But whereas these forms were used often in the past, at present they have all but disappeared from the spoken language.

**Examples :**

그동안 안녕하셨습니다습니까?

Have you been keeping well?

안녕히 계십시오.

Goodbye.

**2) Informal Speech Level (비격식체)**

The Informal Speech level is less ceremonial, and feels softer and more subjective. Thus, it is used in cases of intimate relationship, or to listeners for whom the speaker feels a particularly close bond. The Informal-High form is made by adding 요 to the Informal-Low forms. In other words, the final ending '-어(아, 여)' is attached to the verb stem.

**(1) Informal-High form (존대형)**

**Examples :**

제주도는 참 아름답지요?

Cheju Island is really pretty, isn't it?

예, 그래요.

Yes, that's right.

지금 12시예요.

It's 12 o'clock now.

시간이 없으니, 빨리 가세요.

There's no time, so please go quickly.

같이 먹어요.



- Let's eat together.  
시간이 참 빠르군요!  
My, how time flies!

(2) Informal-Low form (하대형)

**Examples :**

형은 지금 자.  
My older brother is sleeping now.  
이건 내 책이야.  
This is my book.  
오늘 저녁엔 뭐 먹어?  
What are we having for supper tonight?  
일어나, 어서 학교에 가.  
Get up! Hurry up and go to school!  
그럼, 내 차로 가지.  
In that case, let's go in my car.  
딸기가 참 맛이 있군!  
Say, the strawberries are really tasty!

In everyday Korean conversation, it is normal to mix forms from the Formal Speech level with form in '-어(아, 여)요' from the Informal Speech level. But it is always best policy to use the Formal-High Speech style exclusively in official matters and on public or formal occasions which require attention to protocol and etiquette.

**Examples :**

좀 서두르세요. 곧 차가 올 겁니다.  
Please hurry up. The car will be here any minute.  
빨리 먹읍시다. 배가 고파요.  
Let's eat soon. I'm hungry.  
좀 쉬시다. 그리고 커피 한 잔씩 마세요.  
Let's rest a bit. And then have a cup of coffee.  
어서 드세요. 음식은 또 있습니다.  
Help yourself. There's plenty more food.  
그만 말씀하십시오. 다 알아요.

That's enough — I know all about it.

The ending in '-어(아, 여)' observes the rules of vowel harmony (모음조화) when it attaches to verb stems. These rules are summarized in Figure 16 below.

<Figure 16> Vowel Harmony (모음조화)

Preceding Vowel (선행모음)	Following Vowel (후행모음)	Contraction and Deletion (축약과 탈락)	Example (보기)
아	아(요)	아(요)	가요
오		와(요)	봐요
어		어(요)	서요
우	어(요)	워(요)	배워요
으		어(요)	써요
이		여(요)	가르쳐요
하	여(요)	해(요)	일해요

As can be observed in the figure above, when the preceding vowel and following vowel are identical, one of the vowels is deleted (가아→가, 서어→서); if the vowels are different, a preceding '으' is deleted (쓰어→써). In the remaining cases, vowel contraction occurs.

In cases where a consonant intervenes between the preceding and following vowel, contraction and deletion are blocked.

동사	동사어간+어(아, 여)요
잡다	잡아요
좁다	좁아요
먹다	먹어요
죽다	죽어요
늡다	늡어요
싫다	싫어요

### 3. Honorification by Means of Lexical Expressions (어휘에 의한 높낮이의 표현)

The Korean language contains a number of forms called 'honorific forms' (존칭어) which are inherently honorific (or sometimes humble) in their meaning, and correspond to a non-honorific form of the same meaning. However, it is not the case that all forms have an honorific counterpart, and it is necessary to learn the various possible honorific ~non-honorific pairs in order to use the honorific forms correctly in sentences.

〈Figure 17〉 below summarizes the situation with 'honorific forms' in Korean according to Part of Speech. These 'honorific forms' are special lexical items which connote either exaltation~ honorification or, conversely, humilification~deference; some 'honorific forms' are morphologically unrelated to their corresponding noun or verb, while others are derived through the addition of suffixes or particles with honorific meaning.

〈Figure 17〉 Honorification by Means of Lexical Expressions

Part of Speech	Plain Form	Honorific Form	Deferential Form
Noun	말 나이 밥 병 집	말씀 연세 진지 병환 댁	말씀
Pronoun	그 사람 나 우리	그 분	저 저희
	주다 묻다/말하다	드리다 여쭙다/여쭙다	

Verb	보다 자다 먹다 있다 죽다 데리다	봬다 주무시다 잡수시다 계시다 돌아가시다 모시다	
Particle	-이/가 -에게	-께서 -께	
Suffix		-님	

**Examples :**

선생님이 그렇게 말씀하셨습니다.

The teacher said so.

제 말씀은 그것이 아닙니다.

That's not what I'm saying.

어머님 연세는 쉰 다섯이고 제 나이는 스물셋입니다.

My mother is 55 and I'm 23.

아침 진지 드세요. 할아버님.

Breakfast is served, grandfather.

목사님! 안녕히 주무셨어요?

Good morning, Reverend!

박사님, 내일 또 뵙겠습니다.

See you tomorrow, Dr. [So-and-so].

아버님께 드리려고 꽃을 샀어요.

I bought some flowers to give to my father.

어머님께서 할머니님을 모시고 오라고 하셨습니다.

Mother said to bring grandmother over.

저희 아버님은 10년 전에 돌아가셨습니다.

Our father passed away ten years ago.

지금 댁엔 누가 계십니까?

Who is at home now?

많이 잡수세요. 과일도 싱싱하죠?

Help yourself, the fruit is fresh, isn't it?

어른께 여쭙고, 친구 집에 놀러 가겠어요.

I'll just ask my folks if I can go over to my friend's place.

## Chapter Twelve

# Negation

Negation in Korean takes different forms depending on the type of sentence and the nature of the predicate. <Figure 18> below summarizes these different forms.

<Figure 18> Korean Negation Patterns

Verb Type 동사의 종류	Sentence Type 문장의 종류	Form 형태	
		Short Form 단형 부정	Long Form 장형 부정
동작동사 Action Verbs	Declarative Interrogative,	'안' '못'	'-지 않(아니하)-' '-지 못하-'
	Imperative, Suggestion		-지 말-
상태동사	Declarative, Interrogative	'안'	'-지 않(아니하)-'
Copula	Declarative, Interrogative		'-이/가 아니다'
'있다' <i>be, exist; have</i>	Declarative, Interrogative		'-이/가 없다'
'알다' <i>know</i>	Declarative, Interrogative		'모르다'

## 1. Negation in Declarative and Interrogative Sentences (서술문과 의문문의 부정)

Negation in declarative and interrogative sentences can be divided into two types: Short-form Negation and Long-form Negation. The former consists of placing '안' or '못' immediately before the verb, whereas the latter consists of the patterns in '-지 않(아니하)-' or '-지 못하-'.

Negated sentences containing '안' and '-지 않(아니하)-' imply that the negated verb or state is the will or intention of the agent, and occur with both action verbs and descriptive verbs. Negated sentences containing '못' and '-지 못하-' imply that the negated verb or state results from a lack of ability on the part of the agent or else from external forces beyond the control of the agent. This latter type of negation is compatible with action verbs, but is not commonly found with descriptive verbs.

### Examples :

철수는 학교에 갔습니다.

Cholsu went to school.

철수는 학교에 안 갔습니다.

Cholsu didn't go to school [he chose not to].

철수는 학교에 가지 않았습다. (아니하였습니다)

Cholsu didn't go to school [he chose not to].

철수는 학교에 못 갔습니다.

Cholsu didn't go to school [he was not able to].

철수는 학교에 가지 못했습니다. (못하였습니다)

Cholsu didn't go to school [he was not able to].

철수는 학교에 갔습니까?

Did Cholsu't go to school?

철수는 학교에 안 갔습니까?

Did Cholsu [choose] not go to school?

철수는 학교에 가지 않았습니까? (아니하였습니까?)

Did Cholsu [choose] not go to school?

철수는 학교에 못 갔습니까?

Was Cholsu not able to go to school?

철수는 학교에 가지 못했습니까? (못하였습니까?)

Was Cholsu not able to go to school?

그 꽃이 예쁩니다.

Those flowers are pretty.

그 꽃이 안 예쁩니다.

Those flowers are not pretty.

그 꽃이 예쁘지 않습니다. (아니합니다)

Those flowers are not pretty.

그 꽃이 예쁩니까?

Are those flowers pretty?

그 꽃이 안 예쁩니까?

Are those flowers not pretty?

그 꽃이 예쁘지 않습니까?

Aren't those flowers pretty?

Note that in the case of verbs formed by attaching the suffix '-하다' to nouns, '안' and '못' must intervene between the noun and '-하다'.

### Examples :

철수는 지금 숙제합니다.

Cholsu is doing his homework now.

철수는 지금 숙제 안 합니다.

Cholsu is not doing his homework now.

철수는 지금 숙제하지 않습니다.

Cholsu is not doing his homework now.

철수는 지금 한국말을 공부합니다.

Cholsu is studying Korean now.

철수는 지금 한국말을 공부 못합니다.

Cholsu is not able to study Korean now.

철수는 지금 한국말을 공부하지 못합니다.

Cholsu is not able to study Korean now.

## 2. Negation in Imperative and Propositive Sentences

(명령문과 청유문의 부정)

Negation in imperative and propositive sentences is expressed with the pattern in '-지 말-'.

### Examples :

집에 가라(가거라).

Go home!

집에 가지 말아라.

Don't go home!

집에 가자.

Let's go home!

집에 가지 말자.

Let's not go home.

## 3. Lexical Negation (단어에 의한 부정)

When the predicate is the copula '-이다', it is negated by changing '-이다' to '-이/가 아니다'. When the predicate is the existential verb '있다', it is negated by changing it to '없다'. Finally, the negative form for the verb '알다' *know* is '모르다'.

### Examples :

철수는 학생이다.

Cholsu is a student.

철수는 학생이 아니다.

Cholsu is not a student.

책상에 책이 있다.

There is a book on the desk.

책상에 책이 없다.

There is no book on the desk.

그 분은 한국말을 안다.

She knows Korean.

그 분은 한국말을 모른다.

She doesn't know Korean.

## 4. Negation in Confirmation Questions (확인 의문문에 쓰이는 부정)

Though negative in form, this pattern has no negative meaning and instead is used to seek confirmation of the content of the predicate. In such cases, only the Long Form negation can be used.

### Examples :

이 김치가 맵지 않아요?

Isn't this kimchi hot? [I assume so, please confirm]

철수는 집에 갔지 않니?

Didn't Cholsu go home? [I assume so, please confirm]

너는 밥을 먹지 않았니?

Haven't you eaten? [I assume so, please confirm]

이 문장은 벌써 배우지 않았습니까?

Haven't you learned this sentence already? [I assume so, please confirm]

제가 지난번에 알려 드리지 않았습니까?

Didn't I inform you [about this] last time? [I assume so, please confirm]

## Special Expressions using Conjugational Endings

As we explained in Chapter Eight, Korean verbal conjugational endings consist of three broad types; final endings which can finish sentences, connective endings which link one sentence or clause to another, and derivational endings which convert a sentence or phrase into a unit which can then be redeployed as a constituent part of a larger sentence (i. e. adnominalizers and nominalizers). In this chapter we examine these conjugational endings in more detail.

### 1. Final Endings (종결어미)

Final endings in Korean can be divided into five types.

*Examples :*

나는 집에 갑니다.

I'm going home.

나는 시장에서 사과를 사겠다.

I'm going to buy apples at the market.

학생이 도서관에 많습니까?

Are there many students in the library?

지금 무엇을 하나?

I wonder what he's doing now?

안녕히 계십시오.  
 Goodbye.  
 이 신문을 읽게.  
 Please read this newspaper.  
 자, 점심을 먹읍시다.  
 Well then, let's eat lunch.  
 같이 영화를 보자.  
 Let's see a movie together.

요즘은 날씨가 매일 흐리군요.  
 My, lately the weather is so cloudy!  
 그래 공기도 안 좋구려.  
 Yeah, and the air isn't so good either!

〈Figure 19〉 Final Endings

TYPE	Verb Stem + Final Ending	Example	Explanation
Declarative	Vst + -습니다 -습니다 -다, -네, -(으)오	갑니다 읽습니다	Verb stems ending in vowels take -습니다 -습니다
Interrogative	Vst + -습니까 -습니까 -느냐, -는가, -오(쇼)	갑니까 읽습니까?	-십시오 -버시다
Imperative	Vst + -십시오 -으십시오 -어라, -게, -(으)오	가십시오 읽으십시오	Verb stems ending in consonants take -습니다 -습니까 -으십시오 -읍시다
Proposative	Vst + -십시오 -읍시다 -자, -세	갑시다 읽읍시다	Descriptive verb stems take
Exclamatory	Vst + (는)군요 -구나, -구려	가는군요	-군요

1) Final Endings and Speech Levels (종결어미와 상대높임)

One characteristic feature of Korean is the way in which its speech levels differ according to the age, social position, family relations, etc. of the speaker and listener. The deference relationship between speaker and hearer is expressed in final endings. We treat this problem in more detail in Chapter Eleven. (see page 199).

2) Final Endings with Special Uses (특별한 쓰임의 종결어미)

Among Korean final endings, besides those forms which simply conclude sentences in a straightforward, factual way, there are also endings which include in their meaning the speaker's attitude or judgement about his/her utterance, or else which probe the listener for his/her intentions or reactions.

Vst-(으)르까(요)?  
 will it be/do? shall I/we...? Do you suppose it is/does?

Depending on whether the subject is first-person (*I, we*) or non-first person, this interrogative final ending can express either inference ~conjecture or will~intention. The '요' can be added to express politeness.

□ When the subject is first person singular (*I*), this ending asks the listener for his opinion about the proposed action.

Examples :

제가 먼저 제 이름을 소개할까요?  
 Shall I introduce myself first?

제가 한 번 그분 사무실에 전화해 볼까요?  
 Shall I try giving a call 'once' to his office?  
 내가 우선 약속 장소에 나가 볼까?  
 Shall I head out to the meeting place first?  
 내가 그 학생을 도와 줄까?  
 How about if I help that student?  
 제가 선생님께 한 가지 여쭙어 볼까요?  
 May I ask you something, teacher?

② When the subject is first person plural (we), this ending seeks permission from the listener for the speaker intentions.

**Examples :**

우리 같이 한 잔 할까?  
 How about a drink?  
 같이 한번 의논해 볼까?  
 Shall we discuss it together sometime?  
 우리 운전을 배워 볼까요?  
 How about if we learn to drive?  
 틈날 때, 헬스클럽이라도 다녀 볼까요?  
 If we have some spare time, shall we try joining a health club or something?  
 오랜만에 영화 구경이나 갈까요?  
 Shall we see a movie or something? — we haven't seen one for a long time.

③ When the subject is an objectivized first person or second person (I/we, you), this ending expresses a conjecture about the subject's action or state.

**Examples :**

내가 혼자 이 숙제를 할 수 있을까?  
 I wonder if I'll be able to finish this homework by myself.  
 내가 이 문제를 풀어 낼까?  
 I wonder if I can solve this problem.  
 네가 우리 형편을 알아줄 수 있을까?

Do you really think you can empathize with our situation?  
 너희들이 제 시간에 올 수 있을까?  
 Do you think you'll make it on time?  
 한 시간이면 그곳에 도착할 수 있을까요?  
 Do you think we'll make it there in an hour?

④ When the subject is third person (he, she, it, they), this ending expresses a conjecture about the action or state of the subject.

**Examples :**

내일쯤 그 분이 서울에 도착하실까?  
 Do you suppose she arrive in Seoul tomorrow or so?  
 철수가 그 점수로 대학에 합격할 수 있을까?  
 Do you think Cholsu will make it into university with that score?  
 김 선생이 약속을 잊지 않았을까요?  
 Do you think Mr. Kim mightn't have forgotten our appointment?  
 금년 겨울에도 날씨가 추울까요?  
 Do you suppose the weather'll be cold again this winter?  
 혼자 외국에 가면 외롭지 않을까요?  
 Don't you think it'll be lonely if you go abroad by yourself?

**Vst-(으)르까 말까**

(is) on the point of doing, is just about to do; is hesitating/deciding whether to do or not

This pattern is used when the subject is wavering or hesitating, unable to make a definite choice between two or more possible courses of action. Instead of the auxiliary verb '말다' at the end of the pattern, one can also substitute another verb stem+--(으)르까. This pattern is compatible primarily with action verbs.

**Examples :**

너한테 이 비밀을 얘기할까 말까.  
 Should I tell you this secret or not?  
 다음 학기에는 학교에 올까 말까 생각 중이에요.  
 I'm debating whether or not to come to school next semester.



외국 유학을 갈까 말까 망설이고 있습니다.

He's unable to decide whether he should go abroad to study or not.

편지를 쓸까 숙제를 할까 하다가 아무 것도 못했어요.

I debated whether to write letters or do my homework and ended up doing nothing.

진학을 할까 시집을 갈까 고민중이에요.

I'm agonizing over whether to continue my studies or get married.

#### Vst-(으)르까 하다

is thinking of doing; thinks it/one might

This pattern expresses a conjecture or a plan about an action to occur in the future, and appears in a wide variety of forms like '-(으)르까 해서', '-(으)르까 하고', '-(으)르까 해도', '-(으)르까 하니까', etc.

#### Examples :

이번 주말에는 집에서 쉬까 합니다.

I'm thinking of taking it easy at home this weekend.

책을 읽을까 하고 도서관에 갔습니다.

I went to the library thinking I might read a book.

비가 올까 해서 우산을 가져 왔어요.

I brought an umbrella, thinking it might rain.

여행을 갈까 하고 서울역에 나왔습니다.

I came out to Seoul Station thinking I might go on a trip.

그 친구와 의논할까 했지만 미덥지가 않아요.

I considered discussing it with him, but I don't trust him.

#### Vst-(으)ㄴ/는/(으)르걸

although (in spite of the fact that) it is or does/will do or be; indeed, despite anticipations or reservations to the contrary; but, anyway; so there! (it's) too bad that..., too bad but...

This pattern conveys the idea that the action or state expressed by the verb occurs or is the way it is despite and contrary to whatever expectations what might normally have. The version in '-(으)ㄴ걸' refers to an action or state which has already come about, the version in '-는걸' refers

to an action or state which is currently underway or which is habitual in nature, and the version in '-(으)르걸' expresses a conjecture about an action or state which is to come about in the future. This pattern can attach '요' to express politeness.

#### Examples :

방학이지만, 도서관은 계속해서 여는걸요.

It's vacation but [contrary to what you might expect] the libraries are still open.

그 사람은 남의 일이라면, 발 벗고 나서는걸요.

When it comes to other people's problems, she [contrary to what you might expect] rolls up her shirtsleeves and comes to the rescue.

그 학생은 작년에 대학원을 졸업한걸요.

Actually [contrary to what you might expect] that student graduated from graduate school last year.

신호등을 보지 않고 건너면 위험한걸요.

You know, [contrary to what you might think] it is dangerous to cross [the street] without looking at the signal.

가을에는 호텔마다 만원일걸요.

Actually, [contrary to what you might expect] in fall all the hotels are fully booked.

#### Vst-(으)르걸 (그랬다)

(I wish I had) but... (I didn't) — regretting missed or lost opportunities; one should have (but didn't)

This pattern is used to express regret about actions not taken. It is usually followed by '그랬다' at the end, but this can also be omitted.

#### Examples :

속이 안 좋은데, 점심을 굶을걸 그랬어요.

I feel sick to my stomach — I should have skipped lunch.

친구들이 오는 줄 알았으면, 외출하지 않았을걸.

If I had known my friends were coming, I wouldn't have gone out.

오늘부터 연휴인 줄 알았더라면, 여행이라도 갈걸.

If I had known it was a long weekend from today, I would have gone on

a trip or something.

미리 시험준비를 했더라면, 좋았을걸.

It would have been better if I had prepared for the exam ahead of time.

#### Vst-던걸

despite the fact that is has been doing (or being done); anyway, despite reservations, after all, indeed, so there!

Originally an abbreviation from ‘-던 것을’, this pattern expresses the idea that one has come to know new facts while recalling past events already experienced, or else expresses regret or wistfulness about an action or state experienced in the past. One can add ‘-요’ to the pattern to express politeness.

#### Examples :

그 애가 그림을 제법 잘 그리던걸.

Actually [contrary to what you might have been thinking] that child drew quite well [as I recall].

보기는 그래도 음식이 맛이 좋던걸요.

It didn't look like much, but [contrary to what might have been expected] the food tasted good [as I recall].

그 학생이 저녁에는 학원에 다니던걸요.

Actually, [contrary to what you might have been thinking] that student was attending private evening classes [as I recall].

예쁘게 꾸미니까 그 여자에도 괜찮던걸.

Actually, [contrary to what you might have been thinking] once she was nicely made up, she wasn't bad looking!

여기 저기 알아보니깐 그만한 직장도 없던걸요.

Actually, after looking around for a while, I realized that [contrary to what one might have expected] there weren't any other jobs half as good.

#### Vst-(으)르게(요)

(I promise) I'll do it right away

This pattern produces a declarative form in which the speaker both

avers and guarantees the same action, and is always used in the first person (I, we). The addition of ‘-요’ makes the pattern polite.

#### Examples :

오늘은 집에 일찍 들어 올게.

I'll come home early today.

내가 그 일을 할게.

I'll do it [I promise] ~Let me do it.

숙제부터 하고 저녁을 먹을게요.

First I'll do my homework then I'll eat supper.

내일 오전에 선생님께 전화드릴게요.

I'll call my teacher tomorrow in the morning.

시장에 가서 좋은 물건이 있으면 하나 살게요.

If there are any good ones at the market, I'll buy one.

#### Vst-였(았, 였)구나

#### Vst-(는)군/구나

#### Vst-겠구나

well I see..., well so it is..., so it is! so it seems! well I'll be (damned)! hey look! you see, don't you know, isn't it, indeed (showing a sudden or first realization, confirmation, interest, delight, surprise, astonishment or insistence)

This exclamatory pattern has several different forms depending on the tense. The form

‘-였(았, 였)구나’ is used for actions or states which occurred in the past or persist into the present from the past, the form ‘-(는)구나’ is used for actions or states occurring in the present, and the form ‘-겠구나’ is used to express a sudden realization about a possible or conjectured future action or state. When the polite ‘요’ attaches, it attaches to the shortened form of ‘구나’, i. e. ‘군(요)’. (See page 220).

#### Examples :

한국말을 공부하시는군요.

Oh, I see you're studying Korean!

저 아이들이 말을 아주 잘 하는구나.

Say, those kids speak really well!

넌 어려서부터 공부를 잘 했구나.

Oh, so you've been a good student since way back!

오늘 날씨가 꽤 춥군요.

Hey, it's really cold today!

비가 오는 걸 보니 내일은 춥겠구나.

Judging by the way it's raining, I guess it'll be cold tomorrow!

Vst-나(요) ?

is it the case that...? (I wonder)

This pattern creates a somewhat soft interrogative form, and can take the polite '요'. It can also be changed to '-(으)ㄴ/-는가(요)' with little difference in meaning.

**Examples :**

어떻게 하면 외국어를 빨리 배울 수 있나요 ?

What's the best way to learn a foreign language quickly?

윗사람이 바뀌면 아랫사람도 바뀌나요 ?

If someone at the top is replaced, do the people beneath him get replace, too?

제가 그 서류에 서명해야 하나요 ?

Do I have to sign that document?

지금 밖은 얼마나 추운가요 ?

How cold is it outside now?

이걸 신문에 내도 괜찮은가 ?

Is it all right if I publish this in the newspaper?

-나 보다

it seems that ..., I think that...

In the non-past tense this pattern tends to be used only with action verbs, but when the verb stem is in the past tense, there are no such restrictions on the type of verb. Note also that action verbs can optionally take '-는가 보다'.

**Examples :**

교실에 아무도 없나 봅니다.

It seems there is nobody in the classroom.

그 친구는 출장을 내일쯤 떠나나 봐요.

Apparently he is leaving on a business trip tomorrow or so.

벌써 꽃이 다 시들었나 봐요.

The flowers all seem to have withered already.

눈물을 흘리는 걸 보니까 좀 매웠나 봅니다.

Seeing how she is crying, it must have been a bit spicy.

오늘 손님이 많이 오는가 봐.

Looks like lots of guests are coming today.

-(으)ㄴ가 보다

it seems that ..., I think that ...

The pattern in '-(으)ㄴ가 보다' is used with descriptive verbs.

**Examples :**

피곤한가 봐요. 밤을 새웠다고 하던데요.

She seems to be tired. She said something about having stayed up all night.

한국말 배우기가 어려운가 봐요.

It would appear that learning Korean is difficult.

밖의 날씨가 꽤 추운가 봐요.

It seems the weather is quite cold outside.

기분이 안 좋은가 본데, 말 시키지 마세요.

She doesn't seem to be in a good mood. Don't talk to her.

사랑하던 사람과 결혼해서 행복한가 봐요.

It seems he is happy because he married someone he loved.

Vst-던가(요) ?

(did you notice) was it the case that...? (did you hear/find/observe) was it the case that...?

This interrogative form queries the speaker's own or the listener's recollections of a past action or state. When attached to the past tense in

‘-었’, this pattern implies that the action has been completed.

**Examples :**

내가 왜 친구에게 그런 거짓말을 했던가?

Why did I lie to my friend like that?

그가 떠날 때 우리가 왜 붙잡지 않았던가?

Why didn't we try to stop him from leaving?

어제 본 영화가 재미있던가요?

Was the movie you saw yesterday interesting?

그 여자 친구 마음씨가 곱던가요?

Did the girlfriend have a pleasant disposition?

길거리에 나가보니 상점 문이 많이 열렸던가요?

When you went out onto the street were many of the stores open?

**Vst-(ㄴ/는)담**

[usually to oneself] do you mean to say that...?! don't tell me that...! really?! (shows incredulity, irritation, complaint or reproach ... often of oneself)

In origin, this pattern is an abbreviation of an indirect speech construction like ‘-(ㄴ/는)단 말인가’ or ‘-(이)란 말인가’. When used with action verbs, it takes the shape ‘-ㄴ/는담’, when used with descriptive verbs it takes the shape ‘-담’, and when used with the copula it takes the shape ‘-(이)람’. The pattern is used for making light complaints or reproaches to oneself, and does not participate in speech levels; however, it can also be used to express the speaker's dissatisfaction about the hearer's actions.

**Examples :**

무슨 말을 그렇게 한담.

Why did he talk in such a way?

무슨 음식을 그렇게 소리 내어 먹는담.

What is he eating that he has to make so much noise doing it?

뭘 그렇게 꾸물거린담.

What with all the wriggling and fidgeting.

저런 사람이 무슨 양반이람.

Since when is a person like that a “yangban”!

이제 무슨 엉터리 선물이람.

What the heck kind of present do you call this?

**Vst-데(요)**

it has been observed that, it is known that, as we all (or as I) know, I fear (have been told) that, I've discovered (found out) that

This final reporting ending is used when recalling a past event in conversation, or when telling one's counterpart something on the basis of one's past experience of some event. This ending is easily confused in speech with the ending in ‘-대요’ abbreviated from the indirect speech pattern in ‘-(ㄴ/는)다고 해요’, but has a different structure. Rather, this ending is a retrospective form based on the retrospective morpheme -더-, and has its origins in the now moribund “Familiar” speech level (-계, -네, -세, -(으)르세, etc.).

**Examples :**

밖의 날씨가 꽤 춥대요.

It's quite cold outside [as I recall]

오랜만에 땀 흘려 운동을 하고 나니까 좋대.

It felt really good to work up a sweat exercising after such a long time.

산꼭대기에서는 남산이 잘 보이대.

I could see Namsan really well from the top of the mountain [I recall].

그 친구 벌써 머리가 벗어졌대.

He had already gone bald [as I recall].

새벽장에 나가보니까 말씀대로 사람이 무지 많대요.

I checked out the early morning market and, just as you said, there were tons of people.

**Vst-(으)리라**

lest, for fear that it will (often introduces a command after a warning)

This pattern is used primarily with action verbs, and is used to advise caution when one is worried or concerned that something might go

wrong.

**Examples :**

나무에서 떨어질라. (올라가지 마라)

(Don't climb up there you might fall out of the tree.)

좋은 사람 놓칠라. (꼭 잡아라)

(Grab her while you can—) you don't want to let a good one get away.

과속하다가 사고날라.

Don't go so fast — you might have an accident.

배 아플라. 그만 먹어라.

Stop eating — you might get a stomach ache.

말 막하다가 욕 먹을라.

Watch what you're saying — you might get chewed out.

**AVst-(으)르락 말락(하다)**

(is) on the point/verge of doing, almost does, (hesitates) whether to do (or not)

This pattern indicates that an action appears to be on the verge of happening but does not come to fruition. It also appears in combination with the negative auxiliary '말다' followed by a form of the verb '하다': '-(으)르락 말락 하다'. The verb of the preceding clause must be an action verb.

**Examples :**

그 남녀는 들릴락 말락한 작은 소리로 속삭였어요.

The couple was whispering in a voice so quiet that you could barely make out what they were saying.

아침부터 비가 오락 말락하는군요.

It's been trying to rain on and off since this morning.

그 남자는 무슨 말을 할락 말락 망설이다가 그만두었어요.

He hesitate, as if he were about to say something, but then fell silent.

애기가 잠이 들락 말락할 때 손님이 와서 깬어요.

Just as the baby was about to fall asleep, a guest came and woke it up.  
용돈이 떨어질락 말락할 때 고향에서 돈이 왔어요.

Just as my pocket money was about to dry up, some money arrived from

my folks.

**AVst-(으)르래(요)**

intends/plans/wants to do; is going to do, will do, is ready/prepared/willing to do, has it in mind to do, is out to do

This pattern is used with action verbs; when used with a first-person subject (I) it expresses the intention of the speaker, and when used with a second-person subject (you), it asks after the thoughts and intentions of the hearer. This pattern is not compatible with third-person (he, she, it, they) subjects. It can add the '요' for politeness.

**Examples :**

난 김치볶음을 먹을래.

I feel like eating kimch'i pokkum.

넌 졸업 후에 뭐 할래?

What do you want to do after graduation?

난 그 사람을 다시는 안 만날래요.

I have no desire to meet him again.

영수야, 너 적금을 들래, 안 들래?

Say Yongsu—do you want to take out a monthly-deposit savings account?

선생님, 언제쯤 만나 주실래요?

Teacher — When can you meet with me?

**Vst-(으)라?**

shall/should I? do you want me to?; will it do/be? (usually rhetorical)

This rhetorical interrogative ending is used by the speaker to ask his/her counterpart's opinion of a future action to be performed by the speaker. It can also be used to express the speaker's opposition or negative attitude, along the lines of "given the present state of affairs, surely that could not be the case."

**Examples :**

힘들면 내가 도와주랴?

If it's difficult for you, would you like me to help?

생일선물로 뭘 사주랴?

What would you like me to buy you for your birthday?

우리가 널 만나보러 가랴?

Do you want us to come see you or not?

이제 후회한들 무슨 소용이 있으랴?

What the use of regretting it now?

뛰어간다고 떠나버린 버스를 따라잡을 수 있으랴?

Do you think running after it will help you catch a bus that has already gone?

NB: We treat the reduplicated pattern in ‘-(으)랴 -(-으)랴’ in the section on connective endings. (See page 294).

Vst-(으)려무나/(으)렴

do please, come now (an endearing command)

This final ending is used to inferiors to express a tender imperative or granting of permission to act in accord with the speaker's wishes. The form in ‘-(으)렴’ is an abbreviation from ‘-(으)려무나’.

**Examples :**

먹고 싶으면 먹어보려무나.

Go ahead and eat it if you like.

피곤하거든 눈 좀 붙이렴.

If you're tired, go ahead and take a little nap.

심사숙고해서 결정하려무나.

Give it serious consideration and then make your decision.

너무 늦었으니 이제 그만 가렴.

It's late now, so why don't [you kids] go on home now, OK?

슬슬 뒤따라 가보렴, 어디로 가나.

Why don't you tag along with her, and see where she goes?

Vst-(으)리라

(it is that) it will do/be; is to do/be; is [probably]

This future ending expresses the speaker's conjecture or opinion about the future.

**Examples :**

객지에서 살다보면 외로우리라.

If you live abroad for a while it is bound to be lonely.

그가 바라는 것은 돈만이 아니리라.

It's probably not just the money that he is interested in.

시간이 주어지면 세계여행을 떠나리라.

If the time presents itself, I'll probably go on a trip around the world.

오후에 비가 오리라고 생각했지요.

Of course, I was thinking it would probably rain in the afternoon.

철이 들면 깨달으리라고 봅니다.

I reckon she'll figure it out once she's a little more mature.

Vst(으)셔라

(exclamation referring to an exalted person)

This pattern is a combination of the subject honorific ‘-(으)시’ and the exclamatory ‘-어라’, and is usually only compatible with descriptive verbs or the copula ‘-이다’. The ending expresses a combination of the subject honorification and speaker emotion; because of the latter element, you will often find it used in conjunction with exclamations like 아유, 아이고, 어머니, 아따, etc.

**Examples :**

아유, 부지런도 하셔라.

My, she sure is diligent!

어머니, 예쁘기도 하셔라.

My goodness, that sure is pretty!

아이고, 인정도 많으셔라.

Boy, she sure is considerate!

아따, 성미도 급하셔라.

Boy has he got a quick temper!

어머니, 기억력도 좋으셔라. 제 이름을 기억하시다니……

Wow, you remember my name? What a good memory you have!

Vst지(요)

(often invites confirmation or agreement, but sometimes also used for insistence or reassurance) suppose, I suppose/guess/think/believe;

if I am not mistaken; I venture to say, I daresay, I bet, I say, it seems to me; you know, you see, don't you know, wouldn't you say

This ending expresses either a) the speaker's opinion of strong conviction about a certain fact or state of affairs, or b) that the fact or state of affairs referred to is something already known to both speaker and hearer. The '-요' can be added for politeness. Note also that '-지요' can be abbreviated to '-죠'.

**Examples :**

네가 김 영수라는 학생이지?

You're the student Kim Yongsu, aren't you?

한국에 처음 오신 게 아니지요?

This isn't your first time in Korea, is it?

저 좀 도와 주실 수 있으시죠?

You can give me hand, right?

늦었는데 빨리 가지지요.

It's late — shouldn't you be going?

예, 그러죠. 내일 다시 오겠어요.

Yes, I'd better. I'll come again tomorrow.

## 2. Conjunctive Endings (연결어미)

When two or more sentences or words are joined together, conjunctive endings attach to the verb of the preceding sentence or clause so as to join the two clauses together as one.

**Examples :**

여름은 덥다 + 겨울은 춥다.

The summers are hot. The winters are cold.

-고

→ 여름은 덥고 겨울은 춥다.

The summers are hot and the winters are cold.

철수가 학교에 간다 + 철수가 공부를 한다.

Cholsu goes to school. Cholsu studies.

-어(아, 여)서

→ 철수가 학교에 가서 공부를 한다.

Cholsu goes to school and studies.

Because conjunctive endings connect together two sentences in such a way as to express a special meaning, each one has its own special function and meaning. Below we exemplify, one by one, each of the most important conjunctive endings in Korean along with an examination of their functions and usages.

**Vst-거나**

**whether... or... (shows indifference to a choice between two conflicting actions or states); what (when, where, how...) ever**

① When this ending is used to list two or more actions or states, it can also appear followed by '하다'.

**Examples :**

주말엔 등산을 가거나 수영을 해요.

On the weekends we either go hiking or go swimming.

병원에 가 보거나 약이라도 좀 사다 드세요.

Why don't you go to the hospital or at least buy some medicine or something?

슬프거나 외로울 땐 부모님께 전화를 하죠.

When I'm sad or lonely I call my parents, of course.

출타중에 누가 찾아오거나 전화가 오거나 하면 적어 놓으세요.

If anybody calls or drops by while I'm out, please make a note of it.

말이 많거나 행동이 가볍거나 한 사람은 믿을 수 없어요.

People who talk too much or who are frivolous in their actions can't be trusted.

② This pattern can also be used when a set of more than one state or action is conceptualized (i. e. generalized) as one, without regard to details. In such cases, the pattern is used with either a) a question word,

or b) a pair of verbs of opposite meaning, and can be followed by '-간에' for emphasis. In cases like these, the '-거나' can be shortened to '-건'.

**Examples :**

혼자 있을 때에는 누구이거나 간에 문을 열어주지 마라.

When you're alone, don't open the door for anyone ['no matter who it might be.']

옆 사람이 무슨 짓을 하건 간에 참견하지 않는게 좋아요.

Whatever the person next to might do, it is best not to interfere.

예쁘거나 밋거나 간에 마음씨가 고우면 돼요.

It doesn't matter whether she is pretty or not ['or homely'], as long as she is tender in heart.

어른이 무슨 말을 하건 간에 끝까지 들어야 해.

Whenever adults are speaking [to you] ['no matter what they say'] you should listen until they are finished.

다른 식구들은 먹거나 굶거나 간에 아버지는 술만 마셔요.

The father does nothing but drink [alcohol], [not caring] whether the other members of the family eat or starve.

㉓ When two predicates of different or opposite meaning are combined, the pattern can be used as '-거나 ... -거나' or '-거나 말거나'. The implication is that the choice between these two or more predicates is irrelevant or of no consequence, and that, rather, the contents of the following clause are what is truly important.

**Examples :**

음식이 맛이 있거나 없거나 배고프면 먹어야죠.

When you're hungry you have to eat, whether the food tastes good or not.

내가 가거나 네가 오거나 하여튼 만나면 되지 않겠니?

Anyhow, whether I go there, or you come here [doesn't matter], don't you think getting together will take care of it?

남이야 잠을 자거나 일을 하거나 당신이 상관할 바 아니에요.

It's none of your business whether somebody else [i. e. me] sleeps or works [or does whatever].

그 선생은 학생들이 듣거나 말거나 혼자만 얘기합니다.

That teacher just carries on talking to himself, whether the students are listening or not.

울건 말건 내버려두세요.

Just let her cry or whatever.

**Vst-거늘**

although, while (equivalent to -지만); as, since, when, upon (equivalent to -(으)때)

This pattern is used when the the preceding clause contains a natural or obvious fact or a general truth, and the speaker inserts his/her (often reproachful or combative) opinion in the following clause. In other words, this pattern is used to spotlight the speaker's argumentative or chastising attitude in light of an obvious or general truth in the preceding clause.

**Examples :**

김치는 늘 먹는 음식이거늘 한 끼 걸른들 어찌리.

We eat kimchi all the time; so what if we skip it one meal?

사람은 나이를 먹으면 누구나 늙는 것이거늘 뭘 그리 속상해 하나?

Everybody gets older with the passing years; what the point of getting so broken up about it?

자기 무덤을 자기가 팠거늘 이제 와서 후회한들 뭘해요.

You dug your own grave — what is the point of regrets at this juncture?

그 사람은 늘 늦는 사람이거늘 새삼 말할 필요도 없죠.

He always late — there's hardly any need to make a point of discussing it.

사람은 빈손으로 왔다가 빈손으로 가는 것이거늘 뭘 그리 욕심내세요?

We enter this world empty-handed and leave it empty-handed — what is the point of being so greedy?

**Vst-거늘 하물며**

since or given that ... is the case, surely/how much (still) more/less

In this pattern, the final clause is usually a rhetorical question; the



implication is a strong assertion that, given the fact expressed in the preceding clause, the content of the second clause should likewise (and as a matter of course) be the case. In such cases, the second (rhetorical) clause is often introduced by an adverb like ‘하물며, 어찌...’ etc.

**Examples :**

남의 자식도 은공을 알거늘, 하물며 친자식으로서 그런 짓을 해?  
Other people's children acknowledge their merits, so why do their own children behave like this?

초등학교 학생도 저렇게 열심히 하거늘, 어찌 대학생이 놀 수가 있겠니?

Even elementary school kids study hard — how can a college student be such a lazy bum?

짚신도 짝이 있거늘, 하물며 저에게 신랑감이 없겠어요?

Even straw sandals have their mate — how can't I find a husband?

외국인도 한국말을 잘 하거늘, 하물며 한국인이 한국말을 모른대 서야 되겠어요?

There are even foreigners who speak Korean well, so how can a Korean say he doesn't know his own language?

애들도 교통법규를 지키려고 하거늘, 하물며 어른이 안 지켜서야 말이 됩니까?

Even young people make an effort to observe the traffic laws, so do you think it is reasonable for an adult to fail to observe them?

**Vst-거니 하다**

with the thought that probably/surely, with confidence/assurance that

□ In this pattern, the -거니 pairs up with 하다 to indicate a [usually untrue, unreasonably optimistic or contrary-to-fact] thought, assumption or reckoning of the speaker or the subject of the preceding clause.

**Examples :**

누구에게나, 자신이 제일이겠거니 하는 생각이 무의식 중에 있어요.  
Practically everybody thinks subconsciously that they are the best

(number one).

그 친구한테서 편지가 오겠거니 했지만, 그건 잘못된 생각이었어요.

I thought for sure a letter would come from her, but I was wrong.

누가 내 일을 도와 주겠거니 하다가 일만 밀리고 말았어요.

I kept thinking somebody would help me in my work, but [all that happened was] the work ended up getting delayed.

비록 남의 집이지만, 내 집이거니 하고 잘 가꾸어야지요.

Even though it's somebody else's house, you have to tell ['reckon to'] yourself that it's your own and take good care of it.

모든 걸 부모님이 해결해 주시겠거니 하는 의타심은 버렸으면 해요.

I wish she would get rid of this psychology of depending on others and assuming that her parents will take care of everything for her.

□ In this pattern, -거니 appears with a pair of verbs of opposite meaning to indicate that the actions are continued, or repeated continuously. This pattern sometimes occurs in conjunction with the indirect quotation pattern.

**Examples :**

아이들이 서로 주거니 받거니 이야기가 많았어요.

The children had lots to say, talking back and forth to each other.

우리는 앞서거니 뒤서거니 하면서 달리기 연습을 했습니다.

We practised our running, taking turns running in the lead.

두 남매는 빌린 돈을 갚았다거니 안 받았다거니 하고 다투고 있어요.

The brother and sister are arguing, one claiming to have paid back the money, and the other claiming not to have received it.

부부는 큰 집으로 이사하자거니 새로 집을 짓자거니 의견이 분분했어요.

The couple expressed a wide range of opinions, one proposing to move to a bigger house, and the other suggesting building a new house.

주인과 손님은 물건값이 비싸다거니 싸다거니 하면서 말씨름을 했습니다.

The customer and the store owner wrangled over the price of the merchandise, one claiming it was too expensive, the other claiming it was cheap.

**Vst-거니와**

"together with the likely fact that" = as well as, besides; admitting that; but (even so); not only... but also; moreover, and what more, plus; and even more (so)

This connective ending is used to acknowledge or concede a pre-existing state of affairs or fact before going one step further and mentioning a state of affairs or fact which is one increment greater ~ lesser ~ more remarkable, etc.

**Examples :**

여름에는 날씨도 덥거니와 습기도 많아요.

Not only is it hot in the summer, it is also very humid.

돈도 없거니와 시간도 없어서 여행을 못가.

Besides having no money, I also have no time, so I can't go on a trip.

공부도 안 했거니와 배우려는 의욕도 없었지.

Not only did he not study — he didn't even have any desire to learn.

거듭 말하거니와 다시는 이런 비극이 없었으면 좋겠어요.

I'm repeating myself, but I hope we will never have a tragedy like this again.

어찌 보면 가엽기도 하거니와 한편으로 밋기도 해.

One the one hand, I guess he is rather pitiable, but on the other hand, I also despise him.

**Vst-거든**

provided that, if, when (usually followed by a command, a suggestion, or a promise); if, given that (followed by a rhetorical question)

This conjunctive ending expresses a subjective condition or supposition based in fact in the preceding clause, and sounds most natural when the following clause contains a command or suggestion.

**Examples :**

바쁘지 않거든 놀러 오세요.

If you're not busy, come on over and visit.

그 분 한테서 전화가 오거든 연락해라.

If a call comes in from her, please get in touch with me.

할 말이 있거든 해 보시지요.

If you have something to say, please go ahead.

돈이 필요하시거든 언제든지 말씀해 주세요.

If you should need any money, just say so at any time.

아버지 오시거든 먹겠어요.

I'll eat when father comes.

**AVst-(으)려거든**

provided that, if, when one intends to... (usually followed by a command, a suggestion, or a promise); if, given that one intends to... (followed by a rhetorical question)

This pattern combines the intention pattern in '-(으)려' with the provisional ending '-거든', and expresses a supposition or conjecture about an intention to perform an action. Thus, it is always used in conjunction with action verbs, and usually requires that the subject be the same in both clauses.

**Examples :**

그 분을 만나려거든 미리 약속을 해두세요.

If you want to meet her, make an appointment ahead of time.

실력을 쌓으려거든 책을 많이 읽어요.

If you want to build up your abilities, read lots of books.

남에게 지지 않으려거든 그만큼 애써야지.

If you don't want to lose to others, then you should exert yourself appropriately.

등산을 가려거든, 등산 장비를 준비하십시오.

If you want to go hiking, you should get together your hiking gear.

종합 진단을 받으려거든 아침을 굶고 나오세요.

If you want to get a comprehensive diagnosis, you should come without eating any breakfast.

## Vst-거들랑

not only... but (also); moreover; furthermore; as well as; besides, in addition, on top of that

The ending '-(으)르랑' can attach to '-거든' to form the new ending '-거들랑'. Like '-거든', it expresses a subjective condition or supposition in the preceding clause. Thus, this ending functions more or less like '-거든', with the difference that it is not normally used when the listener is one's elder or superior.

**Examples :**

꽃이 피거들랑 소풍갑시다.

If the flowers bloom, let's go for a picnic.

소식이 없거들랑 희소식인 줄 알아요.

If there's no news, you assume it is good news.

본국에 돌아가거들랑 편지해요.

When you get back to your native country, write me a letter.

문제가 생기거들랑 저한테 전화를 걸어 주세요.

If a problem comes up, please call me.

소화가 안 되거들랑 이 약을 한 알만 잡주세요.

If you have indigestion, take one capsule of this medicine.

## Vst-거든(요)

(exclamatory) indeed, quite, sure(ly); (explanatory) you see

This is a final ending, and gives a reason for the speaker's action or state.

**Examples :**

왜 아직 퇴근 안 하셨어요?

밀린 일이 아직 많거든요.

Why haven't you gone home yet?

I still have lots of work I'm behind on [you see].

왜 혼자 식사를 하세요?

모두들 외출을 했거든.

Why are you eating alone?

Everybody has gone out [you see].

왜 기분이 좋지 않아요?

집안에 걱정거리가 생겼거든.

Why aren't you in a good mood?

A problem has come up at home [you see].

왜 낮잠을 주무셨어요?

어제 밤에 잠을 못 잤거든요.

Why did you take a nap?

I couldn't sleep last night [you see].

왜 동대문 시장까지 가셨어요?

거긴 물건 값이 싸거든요.

Why did you go all the way out to Tongdaemun Market?

Things are cheap there [you see].

## Vst-건대

(literary conditional) when, if; such, so that (followed by a question doubting the adequacy of the reason)

This ending is used when the speaker wishes to first make clear his/her situation or attitude with respect to the action or result expressed in the following clause. In other words, the following clause can be interpreted as the object of the verb in the preceding clause with '-건대'.

**Examples :**

바라건대, 꼭 성공하고 돌아오길 바라네.

What I am hoping is that you will come back having ultimately succeeded.

내가 미리 말하건대, 이번 결정 사항은 승락할 수 없습니다.

Let me tell you right up front — I cannot agree to this particular item.

우리 모두 기원하건대, 그들이 무사하길.....

What all of us are hoping for is that they are safe and sound...

내가 들건대, 그곳은 앞으로 큰 지진이 일어날거라고 하던데요.

From what I hear, that place is going to suffer a huge earthquake in the future.

내가 장담하건대, 이번 일은 꼭 성공할 걸세.

If I may be so bold as to say, this time I will most certainly succeed.

Vst-건마는

(semi-literary concessive) but, even though, although, while

This ending is used to acknowledge a set of prior conditions, while expressing that certain things that should have happened under the conditions of the preceding clause were not done, and remain outstanding. The shortened form in '-건만' is also possible.

**Examples :**

시간이 꽤 **흘렀건만** 수재민들의 상처는 아직 남았군요.

Quite a lot of time has gone by, and yet, the wounds of flood disaster victims remain.

나이는 먹을 대로 **먹었건마는** 철은 안 들었어요.

He's old enough in years, but [still] immature.

아들이 용서를 **빌었건마는** 아버지는 아직도 노여움을 풀지 않으셨 습니다.

The son has begged for forgiveness, but his father still hasn't gotten over his anger.

세월은 **빠르건만** 해 놓은 일은 없으니 한심해요.

Time goes by so fast, and yet I'm frustrated that I have accomplished nothing [in life].

할 일은 **많건마는** 일이 손에 잡히지 않아 큰일입니다.

So many things to do, but I'm in big trouble — just can't get down to work.

Vst-게끔

so that indeed(-게 + intensive -끔)

This ending combines '-게' in its adverbializing function with the intensifier '-끔', to generate a meaning akin to that of the patterns in '-도록' and '-정도로' (so as (to be/do), (in a way) so that, so that it is/does; so that one can; in a manner such that). Sometimes it is also used as '-게 시리'.

**Examples :**

알아들을 수 **있게끔** 천천히 말씀해 주세요.

Please speak slowly so I can understand you.

6시에 저녁을 **먹게끔** 준비했어요.

I've made preparations for us to eat supper at 6.

돈이 모자라지 **않게끔** 넉넉히 가져왔니?

Have you brought plenty of money so as not to run short?

서로가 서로를 **이해하게끔** 노력해 봐.

Please try to understand one another.

남들의 눈에 **띄지 않게** 시리 눈치껏 하세요.

Please be discreet so as not to attract the attention of others.

Vst-고

(is or does) and also, too; (is) and yet, at the same time [often with opposites]; does or else (does); A is does and (B is/does); (does) and then doing and then

① This ending is used to simply enumerate two or more facts.

**Examples :**

새가 **울고**, 꽃이 **핀다**.

The birds are singing, and the flowers are blooming.

김 선생은 서울에서 **살고**, 이 선생은 부산에서 **삽니다**.

Mr. Kim lives in Seoul and Mr. Lee lives in Pusan.

하늘은 **높고**, 바다는 **깊어요**.

The sky is high, and the ocean is deep.

저 배는 **깊고** 푸른 바다를 향해하고 있습니다.

That ship is navigating the deep blue sea.

산에는 **크고** 작은 나무들이 많이 있어요.

There are lots of big and small trees in the mountains.

② This ending is used when two different events happen at the same time.

**Examples :**

나는 피아노를 **치고**, 동생은 노래를 불렀습니다.

I played the piano and my little sister sang a song.  
 영수는 극장에 **가고**, 철수는 학교에 갑니다.  
 Yongsu is going to the theatre, and Cholsu is going to school.  
 어제는 비가 **오고**, 바람도 불었어요.  
 Yesterday it rained, and the wind was blowing too.  
 우리는 다방에서 **기다리고**, 그분은 식당에서 기다렸습니다.  
 We waited at the tea house, and he waited at the restaurant.  
 그 아이는 **잠자고**, 우리는 이야기하고 있었습니다.  
 The child slept and we were talking.

㉓ This ending is used to show that the first of two or more events or facts came about prior to the events or facts in the following clauses.

**Examples :**

아침 밥을 일찍 **먹고** 학교에 갔습니다.  
 We ate an early breakfast and [then] went to school.  
 책을 읽고 독후감을 씁니다.  
 We read a book and [then] write an essay on our impressions.  
 나는 어제 일을 **끝마치고** 친구와 다방에 갔어요.  
 Yesterday I finished my work and [then] went to a tea house with a friend.  
 그 사람이 사람을 **죽이고** 도망쳤습니다.  
 He killed a man and [then] fled.  
 손을 **씻고** 저녁 식사를 합니다.  
 We wash our hands and [then] have our meal.

㉔ With certain verbs, this ending is used to show that the activity in the preceding clause has been completed, and that this completed state of affairs continues into and throughout the following clause.

**Examples :**

형이 새 옷을 **입고** 외출했습니다.  
 My older brother put on his new clothes and went out.  
 김 선생은 내 손을 **잡고** 기뻐했습니다.  
 Mr. Kim took me by the hand and was very pleased.  
 어제 기차를 **타고** 부산에 갔습니다.

Yesterday I took the train to Pusan.  
 배낭을 **메고** 산에 올라 갑니다.  
 I put on my backpack and go up the mountain.  
 가방을 **들고** 밖으로 나갔습니다.  
 He picked up his briefcase and went outside.

㉕ This ending can be used to show that the contents of the preceding clause are a basis or reason for the contents of the following clause.

**Examples :**

그 친구를 **믿고** 돈을 빌려주었네.  
 Trusting my friend, I lent him some money.  
 복어를 **잘못 먹고** 죽은 이도 있어요.  
 There are even people who have died after eating pufferfish.  
 어제 밤에 **과음을 하고** 늦잠을 잤군, 그래.  
 Wouldn't you know it, he drank too much last night and got up late.  
 뇌물을 **받고** 구속이 되었답니다.  
 They say he was arrested for taking a bribe.  
 도둑을 **맞고** 기절까지 했지, 뭐예요.  
 She even fainted on account of being robbed!

**AVst-고는**

when..., ...then, upon doing (emphasizes the consequence)

This ending attaches to action verbs and emphasizes the fact that the action in the second clause took place after the preceding action was completed.

**Examples :**

그 분하고 **약속을 하고는** 한번도 어겨본 적이 없습니다.  
 I have never once broken a word after making a promise to her.  
 한번 **싸우고는** 다시는 나타나지 않았어요.  
 After getting in a fight one time, she never showed up again.  
 매일 샤워를 **하지 않고는** 통 잠을 이루지 못해요.  
 Unless I take a shower every day, I can't get to sleep at all.  
 술을 **한잔하고는** 노래를 부르기 시작했어.  
 After one drink we started to sing.

좋은 말로 타이르고는 야단은 치지 않았거든요.

After admonishing him in a nice way, I didn't actually yell at him [you see].

#### Vst-고도

both... and; and yet, but, while/though; sometimes... sometimes...

This ending combines the form in '-고' with particle '-도' in its meanings of *moreover*, *what more*, [*and*] *also*/[*and*] *yet*. The combined effect of '-고' and '-도' used together in this way is to describe a situation where, after the event or state of affairs in the first clause has been completed, yet another (but unexpected) event or state of affairs comes about.

#### Examples :

대학까지 졸업을 하고도 집에서 빈둥빈둥 놀고 있다네.

He has even graduated from university, and yet apparently he is just goofing off at home doing nothing.

저녁을 실컷 먹고도 또 간식을 먹으니, 원!

You've eaten a huge supper and now you're snacking again?

좋은 일을 보고도 웃지 않으니, 참!

You see something nice and you can't even smile? Unbelievable.

한번 실수하고도 정신을 못차리니 어떻게 하죠?

If you can't pull yourself together [even] after one screwup, what are we supposed to do?

연락을 받고도 오지 않았단 말이에요?

Are you saying she didn't come even after she had been contacted?

#### Vst-고 보다

does and then realizes (or considers the matter)

This pattern is used primarily with action verbs, and designates a short of wait-and-see attitude toward the results of the action completed in the first clause. It can combine with the conditional ending in '-(으)면' to render the related pattern in '-고 보면', and also combines with the '-(으)니' (in its meanings of cause or reason) to give a related pattern in '-고 보니'. When used with descriptive verbs, this pattern indicates that the

speaker, if only momentarily, considers the contents expressed by the verb as extremely important.

#### Examples :

외상 술이니 우선 마시고 보자.

Since we're buying these drinks on credit, let's try the stuff first.

사귀고 보면 나쁜 사람이 별로 없어요.

Once you get to know people, you realize there aren't really any bad ones.

사연을 듣고 보니 딱하군요.

Now that I've heard the background circumstances, I realize it is actually a pitiful case.

여자는 예쁘고 봐야 해.

It is absolutely essential for women to be pretty.

키는 크고 볼 일이에요.

One really ought to be tall.

#### AVst-고서

(does) and then; and then (next); doing and then

The addition of '서' to '-고' in this pattern has the effect of tightening the relationship between the preceding and following clause, and implying that the contents of the second clause are a natural and closely linked follow-on to those of the first. In other words, whereas '-고' alone is appropriate when a long interval intervenes between the two clauses, '-고서' is appropriate when the connection is more immediate. But one also finds examples where the contents of the second clause oppose, contradict or gainsay those of the preceding clause. This is only possible when the verb in the preceding clause is an action verb. Note that the pattern in '-고서' can also take the auxiliary particles '-는' or '-도' for heightened effect.

#### Examples :

일을 다 하고서 돈을 받아야지요.

Of course, once one has done all the work, one should be paid

농사를 짓고서 수확할 날만 기다리고 있지요.

Now that they've done all the farming work, they are just waiting for harvest day.

거짓말을 **하고서도** 눈하나 깜짝하지 않는군요.

Amazing! He can tell a lie without even batting an eyelash.

교통법규를 지키지 **않고서는** 사고를 막을 수가 없다구요.

I'm telling you if you ignore the traffic laws it is impossible to avoid an accident.

책을 **읽고서는** 반드시 독후감을 써 보도록 하렴.

Make sure to write up a book report once you've read the book.

#### Vst-고서라도

even if it be after having done; even if it means having to ... first

This pattern adds the particle '-라도' to the pattern in '-고서' above, and indicates that while the speaker admits it is not the most ideal solution or course of action, nevertheless (s)he will forego other alternatives and go ahead and carry out the action in the second clause, even if it entails completing the action in the first clause.

#### Examples :

잠이 안오니 수면제를 **먹고서라도** 잠을 청해야겠어.

I can get to sleep, so I'll have to get some sleep even if it means taking some sleeping pills.

귀를 솜으로 **막고서라도** 일을 하겠어요.

I will finish this job, even if I have to stuff my ears with cotton.

열쇠로 문을 **잠그고서라도** 일을 보고 와라.

Take care of it even if it means locking the house and leaving it unattended.

택시를 **타고서라도** 빨리 다녀오겠습니다.

I'll be as quick as I can, even if it means taking a taxi.

웃돈을 **주고서라도** 마음에 드는 그 물건으로 바꿔주세요.

Take it back and exchange it for the one you like, even if you have to pay a premium.

#### Vst-고서야

only after having done; only in case one has first done...

This pattern adds the emphatic particle '-야' to the pattern in '-고서' above.

#### Examples :

상처한 후 10년을 **지내고서야** 결혼을 했대요.

They say he didn't marry [again] until ten years after the death of his wife.

그 사람의 신분을 **확인하고서야** 보증을 설 수 있지요.

Of course, we can't stand as guarantors for him until [after] we do a background check [lit. : ascertain his status].

거짓말을 **하고서야** 어찌 떳떳할 수 있겠어요?

How could they have a clean conscience [even] after telling a lie?

좋은 일이 있지 **않고서야** 저렇게 기분 좋아할 수 있을까?

Do you think she would be in such high spirits if something really good hadn't happened to her? Or: How could she be in such a good mood unless something good had happened to her?

비행기 착륙 소식을 **듣고서야** 마음을 놓았을 거예요.

She probably felt relieved only once she had heard word that the plane had landed.

#### Vst-고자

with the intention or inclination to...; so that, in order to

This pattern is normally used only with action verbs, and expresses the speaker's internal will, intention or aspiration about an action. It can combine with following '하다' to form the pattern in '-고자 하다' *be inclined to do; intend to do; have a mind or inclination to do.* (see page 97).

#### Examples :

휴가를 얻어 고향에 내려가서 **좀 쉬고자** 합니다.

I'm thinking of taking a leave of absence and going down to my hometown to take a rest.

학생들은 누구나 원하는 대학에 **입학하고자** 최선을 다하죠.

Of course, students all do their best to get into the college of their choice.

그 분은 **출세하고자** 하는 의욕이 아주 강해요.

Her ambition to succeed is very strong.

선진국 대열에 서고자, 국민이 모두 매일 애쓰고 있어요.

All our country's citizens are exerting themselves every day so that we might join the ranks of the industrialized nations.

아프고자 해서 아픈 사람이 어디 있겠어요?

Since when would somebody get sick because they wanted to get sick?

Vst-고 해서

for the reason that ... [and also for yet other reasons which shall remain unmentioned]; saying that ... ; on the grounds that ... ; with the excuse that ... ; because [one reckoned that] ...

This pattern combines the '-고' ending in its meaning of concatenation (and) with the form '-해서' meaning *since, because*. This combination is used to express the notion that, whereas at least two or more reasons or grounds for the resulting state of affairs in the second clause could be enumerated, the speaker chooses to give but one or two. A colloquial English translation would be *because... (and stuff)*.

**Examples :**

(값도 비싸고) 질이 안 좋고 해서 그 물건을 사지 않았어요.

Because it was of poor quality (and was expensive and stuff), we didn't buy it.

(졸리기도 하고) 영화 내용이 재미없고 해서 중간에 나왔어요.

The movie was boring (and I was also sleepy and stuff), so I left in the middle.

몸도 아프고 해서 집에서 쉬었습니다.

I wasn't feeling well and stuff so I stayed home and rested.

그 친구는 믿음만 하고 해서 일을 시키기로 했죠.

Because she's reliable [and so on] we decided to have her do the work. 말을 조리있게 잘 하고 해서 대표로 내세웠대요.

Apparently, she is so articulate and so on that they selected her as their representative.

Vst-(으)ㄴ/는가 하면

whereas on the one hand... ;

This pattern combines a quoted~indirect speech question in '-(으)ㄴ/는가 하다' with the conditional ending in '-(으)면' to produce a pattern that juxtaposes the preceding and following clauses. This juxtaposition can be one similarity or of contrast. Literally, this pattern has the structure: If one asks 'Is such-and-such the case?' [...then (either similarly or by contrast) some other case also pertains]. Note that whereas the pattern in -(으)ㄴ/는가 하면 juxtaposes two clauses, one can juxtapose two separate sentences by conjoining them with '그런가 하면'.

**Examples :**

그 상점은 문이 열려 있는가 하면 닫혀 있는 경우도 많아요.

That store is open, but there are also cases when it is closed.

기분이 좋은가 하면 금방 화를 내더군요.

Just when you thought she was in a good mood, suddenly she would get angry.

쉬운 말이 있는가 하면 어려운 말도 있기 마련이죠.

Whereas it has some easy expressions, one can also expect there to be difficult ones, too.

인종차별 문제가 있는가 하면 남녀차별 문제도 있어요.

Not only is there a problem with racial discrimination — there is also a problem with sexual discrimination.

출퇴근 시간엔 길이 많이 막혀요. 그런가 하면 뜻밖에 차가 잘 빠질 때도 있어요.

During rush hour the roads get quite congested. On the other hand, there are also times when you can get through surprisingly fast.

Vst-(으)ㄴ/는가 하다

one wonders if or whether...; one imagines that...

This pattern expresses the speaker's thoughts, imaginings or suppositions about an action or state of affairs. The pattern in '-나 하다' is used in the same way. Action verbs typically take '-는가 하다, -나 하다', and descriptive verbs usually take '-(으)ㄴ가 하다'. And of course the verb '하다' in these patterns can interact with a wide variety of other endings and patterns.



**Examples :**

까치가 울기에 어디서 좋은 소식이 오나 했어요.

A magpie cried somewhere, so I wondered if some good news might be coming.

사무실이 조용해서 아무도 안 계시나 했어요.

The office was so quiet that I wondered if anybody was here.

주무시나 해서 전화를 바꿔 드리지 않았습시다.

I didn't call you to the phone because I thought maybe you were sleeping.

비가 오는가 하면 개이고, 개이는가 하면 옵니다.

Just when you think it's raining it clears up, and just when you think it's clearing up, it rains.

대학에 입학했나 했더니, 어느새 졸업이군요.

I was thinking she had just entered university, and the next thing I know she's graduating!

**Vst-(으)나**

(adversative) does/is but; though it is/does; admittedly... but

① This adversative ending is used to link two sentences when the second clause opposes or does not conform to the contents of the first clause. Its basic meaning is *but*.

**Examples :**

비가 오나 바람은 불지 않는군요.

It's raining, but I see the wind isn't blowing.

약은 먹었으나 아직도 감기가 낫지 않았어요.

I took some medicine, but my cold hasn't gotten better yet.

그 의견에 따르긴 하겠으나 책임은 지지 못하겠습니다.

I'll follow his opinion, but I refuse to take any of the responsibility.

값은 좀 비싸나 그래도 질은 괜찮지요.

It's a bit expensive, but of course the quality is just fine.

그 사람은 전엔 부자였으나 이제 거지가 되고 말았어요.

She was rich until quite recently, but now she has become a beggar.

② Two clauses of more or less opposite meaning can each be followed by this ending to express the idea of (whether...) or; or the like; or

whatnot. In the whether meaning, these two opposing clauses can be rounded off optionally with *간에*. The implication of the pattern is that the contents of the final clause come about without regard to the choices presented in the *-(으)나 ... -(으)나 (간에)* pattern.

**Examples :**

자나 깨나 술타령 뿐이라네.

Apparently all he talks about day and night ('whether awake or asleep') is booze.

괴로우나 즐거우나 나라(를) 사랑하세.

Whether we like it or not ('find it troublesome or pleasurable'), let us love our country.

앉으나 서나 그대 생각을 해요.

I am always thinking of you ('whether I sit or stand.')

같이 있으나 떨어져 있으나 마음은 늘 같이 있어요.

Regardless of whether we are together or apart, our hearts are always together.

눈으로 보나 안 보나 뻔한 일입니다.

I don't have to look — it's obvious.

**Vst-(으)로 보나**

however one may look it; however one regards it

This pattern implies that the contents of the second clause come about even without the need to make any special choices. In this case, noun phrases in the second clause pair up with the copula (*이다*) to name the evaluation or standard.

**Examples :**

그 학생은 어느 모로 보나 모범생이군요.

No matter how I look at her, that student is a model student.

무엇으로 보나 그 분은 지성인입니다.

However you look at it, he is an intellectual.

경제면으로 보나 정치면으로 보나 그 나라는 장래가 없어요.

Whether economically or politically, no matter how you look at it that country has no future.

말하는 것으로 보나 행동으로 보나 참 보잘 것 없는 사람이에요.  
Whether you look at the way he speaks or what he does, he is a truly insignificant person.  
집의 위치로 보나 전망으로 보나 집 값이 비싼 건 아니지요.  
Regardless of whether one considers the house location or view, it's not an expensive one, is it?

DVst-(으)나 DVst-(으)ㄴ

that is very/quite X, that is really (ever so) X (said of impressive qualities)

Note that the DVst here must be the same stem. This repetition pattern is used in conjunction with descriptive verbs to emphasize or stress a certain quality. The same pattern with '-디' instead of '-(으)나' has the same meaning.

**Examples :**

머나 먼 고향 산천을 그리워 했다오.  
He missed the hills and streams of his faraway native land.  
크나 큰 사랑을 받고 살았어요.  
I lived surrounded by immense quantities of love.  
기나 긴 여름을 어찌 지내지요?  
How will we ever make it through this unending summer?  
높으나 높은 산을 등반하고 돌아왔어요.  
We ascended the towering mountain and returned.  
싸디 싼 물건이 산더미처럼 쌓였어요.  
There were piles and piles of incredibly cheap wares.

Vst-(으)나 마나

makes no difference whether one does or not; it is all the same whether one does or not; there is no need to; one might as well not; it is useless or unnecessary to

This pattern, built on the ending in (-)나 plus the (-)나 form of the negative auxiliary verb '말다', indicates that the preceding action or state is useless, pointless or futile.

**Examples :**

그런 책임감 없는 분은 만나나 마합니다.  
There is no point in meeting a person so devoid of any sense of responsibility.  
너무 늦어서 지금은 가나 마나예요.  
It's so late now that there's no point in going.  
그것쯤 먹으나 마나.  
There's no point in eating that ['it's too insignificant — let's have a proper meal!].  
남의 공책을 베끼는 숙제는 하나 마나예요.  
There is no point in copying one's assignments from another's notebook.  
그 사람에게서는 부탁하나 마나 들어주지 않을 겁니다.  
Don't bother asking him to do it for you — he won't do it.

Vst-(으)나마

(extended adversative) (is/does) but anyway; however; despite (the value-detracting fact that); ... as it may be, ... though it may be

This ending attaches to verbs to give the meaning *unsatisfactory though it may be, nonetheless* ... Thus, it has a concessive ~ adversative meaning not unlike the endings '-더라도' and '-지만'.

**Examples :**

많지는 않으나마, 성의로 받아 주십시오.  
I know it isn't much, but please accept it as an expression of my sincerity.  
맛은 좋지 않으나마, 좀 들어 보세요.  
I'm sure it doesn't taste like much, but do please try some.  
이것은 적으나마, 제 성의로 받아 주세요.  
This is just a little gift, but please accept it as an expression of my sincerity.  
직접 오지는 못하나마, 전화라도 못하나?  
So you can't come in person; can't you at least call?  
비록 도움은 못 주나마 약은 올리지 맙시다.  
If we can't be of any help, let's at least not make them angry.

AVst-느니

## rather than; compared to

㉑ This pattern expresses that the contents of the second clause are better than or preferable to those of the first clause. The second clause can also be accompanied by adverbs like '차라리' *preferably; rather (than)*. The verb in the first clause must be an action verb. One can also add the comparative particle '-보다' to this pattern with no change in meaning.

**Examples :**

그 아이를 기다리느니 내가 가지.

Why don't I go instead of waiting for her?

이렇게 사느니보다 죽는 게 낫겠어요.

I would rather die than live like this.

추운 하숙집에 가느니 교실에 있는 게 편해.

It's more comfortable to stay in the classroom than go to my cold boarding room.

그에게 일을 시키느니 네가 해.

Instead of getting him to do it, you do it yourself.

개 죽음을 당하느니 차라리 싸우다 죽는 게 낫겠어요.

I would rather die fighting than die pitifully like some dog.

㉒ Another pattern with this ending juxtaposes two contradictory clauses, each ending in '-느니 -느니', so as to relate the various deliberations and discourses of third parties. These two (or more) clauses in '-느니' are rounded off with a final clause which summarizes or distills the gist of the dispute or issue. One can also use this pattern in conjunction with reported~indirect speech.

**Examples :**

두 사람이 가느니 안 가느니 야단입니다.

The two of them are having a big discussion about whether or not to go.

아침부터 백화점으로 가느니 시장으로 가느니 의견이 분분하더군요.

Ever since this morning there have been conflicting opinions about whether to go to a department store or to an open-air market.

관광지로는 경주가 좋다느니 설악산이 좋다느니 말이 많아요.

There is a big debate over which is better as a tourist destination Kyongju or Soraksan.

부산엘 기차로 가자느니 고속버스로 가자느니 비행기로 가자느니 의견이 많았어요.

There were lots of good opinions on how to get to Pusan — by train, by highspeed bus, and by plane.

주말에 오라느니 주중에 오라느니 말만 하다가 헤어졌죠.

We parted ways after an inconclusive debate over coming during the week as opposed to over the weekend. [lit. : as to whether 'you come at the weekend' or 'you come during the week']

**AVst-느라고/-느라니까/-느라면**

what with doing, as a result of doing, because of (doing); with the idea to do, with the intention of doing, trying to do/now that~when one tries to do... (one realizes)/(while) in the process of doing, while doing

㉑ The ending in '-느라고' designates that the preceding clause is the cause or reason for the contents of the second clause, and requires that both clauses have the same subject. Moreover, the contents of the following clause are usually contrary to the expectations or wishes of the speaker. Another constraint on this pattern requires the verb in the first clause to be an action verb; it is the continuation of this first activity which leads to the undesirable result in the following clause.

**Examples :**

자느라고 도둑이 들어온 걸 몰랐어요.

I didn't know a burglar had broken in because I was asleep. [In somewhat 'hick' English this would be 'what with being asleep and all, I didn't notice that...']

이사하느라고들 혼났어요.

They were going crazy because of the move.

공부하느라고 주름살이 많이 생겼어요.

I got a lot of wrinkles in the course of my studies.

집을 지키느라고 아무데도 못 갔어요.

I couldn't go anywhere because I was keeping an eye on the house.

내 생각만 하느라고 남의 생각을 못했어요.

I was so busy thinking about myself that I didn't consider others.

㉔ The three closely related patterns in '-느라니까, -노라니, -노라니까' add the sense of 'discovery' inherent in -(으)니(까) to the meanings in (1) above. Here, too, the verb in the first clause must be an action verb, but the subjects in the two clauses need not be the same.

**Examples :**

누워서 책을 읽노라니까 잠이 오더군요.

Because I was reading lying down I kept getting sleepy. [Lit. : What with reading lying down, I discovered that I was falling asleep!]

참노라니까 화가 나서 못 견디겠어.

I've been trying to be patient, but [I now discover] that I'm angry and I can't stand it any longer.

그 아이의 말을 듣고 있느라니까 저절로 웃음이 나더군요.

Just listening to the child's story, I couldn't help laughing.

같은 문장을 여러 번 되풀이해 읽노라니까 외우게 되었어요.

As a result of reading the same sentence over and over again several times, I [discovered that I had] committed it to memory.

고향의 부모님을 생각하고 있노라니까 저절로 눈물이 나더군요.

Sitting there thinking of my parents back in my native land, I couldn't help crying.

㉕ The variant of this pattern in '-느라면, -노라면' designates that, if one assumes that the action of the first clause continues, one will arrive at the results in the second clause. As with patterns (1) and (2) above, the verb in the first clause must be an action verb.

**Examples :**

바쁘게 일을 하느라면, 배고픈 것도 잊어 버리죠.

If you go about your business busily, you forget that you are even hungry.

어머니 사진을 보느라면, 어머니가 보고 싶어져요.

If you get too involved in looking at pictures of your mother, you end up missing her.

그 노래를 부르노라면 옛일이 되살아나요.

Whenever I sing that song, I think back on the old days.

여기서 오래 사노라면 이 나라 사람을 이해하게 될 겁니다.

If you live here in this country for a long period of time, you will come to understand the people.

한평생을 지내노라면 어려움이 따르게 마련입니다.

In the process of living one's life, it is natural for difficulties to arise.

**Vst-ㄴ/는대서야**

if ... or given a circumstance where ... or since one claims that ...  
[then why ...? or how ... or some other rhetorical question]

This pattern is an abbreviation from '-ㄴ/는다고 하여서야', which is made up of the reported speech pattern in '-ㄴ/는다고 하다' and the ending in '-어(아, 여)서' which provides a reason or cause, rounded off by the emphatic particle '-야'. This composite pattern is used to express the idea that the results present in the second clause are in no way attributable to the contents of the first clause. The second clause is often a rhetorical question prefaced with '어찌' or '어떻게', both meaning how? Action verbs ending in a consonant take '-는대서야' and action verbs ending in a vowel take '-ㄴ대서야'. Descriptive verbs take '-대서야'.

**Examples :**

비싸게 산 물건인데 질이 나쁘대서야 말이 됩니까?

I paid a lot of money for this — you better not tell me it's of low quality!

자기 일도 못한다대서야 어른이라고 할 수 없죠.

If you can't even mind your own affairs you can hardly be called an adult.

친구를 악용한다대서야 양심 없는 사람이죠.

Anybody who maltreats his friends is unconscionable.

남의 입장을 생각하지 않는대서야 사회생활을 어찌 할 수 있겠어요?

If you never think of others' positions, how will you ever be able to

succeed in society?

경찰이 도둑을 잡을 생각을 안 한대서야 시민이 어떻게 마음 놓고 살겠어요?

If the police don't even bother to catch burglars, how are the citizens supposed to live in peace?

Vst-(으)ㄴ/는데

(given) the circumstance that it does; does ... and/but/so

① This connective ending is used with verbs in a preceding clause which, whether directly or indirectly, leads into or provides a transition for the following clause. In many cases it is useful to think of this ending as a sort of verbal semi-colon or m-dash, providing a loose linkage between two clauses.

**Examples :**

비가 오는데, 우산이 있습니까?

It's raining — do you have an umbrella?

제가 책을 읽는데, 좀 조용히 해 주세요.

I'm reading a book — could you please be quiet?

그 사람은 얼굴이 예쁜데, 왜 싫어합니까?

But she has a pretty face — why don't you like her?

오늘이 토요일인데, 사무실에 가십니까?

Today is Saturday; and you're going to the office?

내일이 시험 보는 날인데, 웬지 공부하기가 싫군요.

Tomorrow is exam day, but for some reason I don't feel like studying.

② In many cases, depending on the nature of the connection between preceding and following clause, this ending can express a variety of concrete meanings such as opposition (*and yet*), time (*when*), reason, condition, etc.

**Examples :**

계속 치료를 하는데, 감기가 낫지 않아요.

I keep applying the treatment, and yet my cold doesn't get better.

형은 공부하는데, 동생이 밤에 들어 왔어요.

The younger brother came home at night when his older brother was studying.

비가 오는데, 밖에 나가지 마세요.

It's raining, so don't go outside.

날씨가 좋은데, 야외로 나갑시다.

The weather is nice, so let's go on a picnic.

동대문까지 가는데, 몇 분쯤 걸려요?

About how many minutes does it take to get to Tongdaemun?

Vst-(으)ㄴ/는데도

even though it is, in spite of the fact that it is, despite that ...

This ending is typically followed by the expression '불구하고', but this '불구하고' is optional. This pattern indicates that the contents of the second clause come about in spite of the contents of the first clause. Another variant of this pattern attaches '에도 불구하고' to the nominalized form of a verb in '-(으)ㄴ', in effect creating a new pattern in '-(으)ㄴ에도 불구하고'.

**Examples :**

알고 있는데도 모르는 체 하더라고요.

He pretended not to know in spite of the fact that he knew [I recall].

돈이 많은데도 생활은 형편없이 해요.

In spite of having lots of money, their lifestyle is a disaster.

새 집인데도 비가 오기만 하면 새요.

In spite of the fact that it is a new house, as soon as it rains the house leaks.

몇 번씩이나 주의를 주었는데도 까먹으니 참!

I must have cautioned you a million times, and yet you still forget!

미리 예고를 했음에도 불구하고 안 듣고 사고를 내더군요.

In spite of the fact that we notified them well in advance, they didn't listen and caused an accident.

Vst-(으)니까

since~as it does~is; so ...; and so ...;

when (in the past), then...; as ...; and~but then...

① In its first meaning, this ending is used to indicate that the action or state in the preceding clause is the reason for that of the second clause. Whereas the ending in ‘-어(아, 여)서’ expresses general reasons without any time of personal subjectivity, the ending in ‘-(으)니까’ expresses the speaker’s subjective feeling or attitude toward his/her utterance. The verb in the following clause often consists of an imperative or propositive form.

**Examples :**

오늘은 날씨가 추우니까 옷을 많이 입으세요.

It's cold today, so put on lots of clothes.

그분은 한국에서 오래 살았으니까 한국말을 잘 할 거예요.

She has lived in Korea for a long time, so she probably speaks Korean well.

제가 잘못했으니까 제가 사과하겠습니다.

It's my mistake, so I will apologize.

버스는 복잡하니까 택시를 타시다.

The bus is a hassle, so let's take a taxi.

내일은 일요일이니까 집에서 쉬십시오.

Tomorrow is Sunday, so why don't you rest at home.

② In the other main usage of this ending, it serves as a temporal marker (*when*) which also carries a sense of discovery or affirmation ~confirmation of what follows in the next clause. In this usage, the subject of the clause with ‘-(으)니까’ is always first-person (I, we).

**Examples :**

집에 가니까 친구의 편지가 있었습니다.

When I got home there was a letter from my friend.

이 약을 먹으니까 감기가 낫더군요.

When I took this medicine, my cold got better [I realized or confirmed].

한국말을 공부해 보니까 재미있어요?

Now that you've studied some Korean, do you find it interesting?

김 선생님 말을 들으니까 저도 잘 할 수 있겠다는 생각이 들어요.

Listening to what Mr. Kim has to say, I realize now that I can probably

also do a good job of it.

김 선생을 만나 보니까 아주 좋은 분이더군요.

I met Mr. Kim and found him to be a really nice person!

**Vst-(으)니**

since~as it does~is; so ...; and so ...; (=Vst-(으)니까)

when (in the past), then...; as ...; and~but then... (=Vst-(으)니까)

but, and; but~and now; but~and here; but as it turns out (to one's surprise, contrary to expectations)...

Broadly speaking, this ending implies that the contents of the preceding clause ultimately result in the contents of the following clause. But the concrete interpretation of this ending in specific cases depends on the contents of each of the two clauses.

① In its first usage, this ending signifies that the preceding clause is the reason, cause or grounds for the following clause. Thus, it is equivalent to ‘-(으)니까’ above. As with ‘-(으)니까’, the following clause often contains an imperative form or propositive form.

**Examples :**

시간이 없으니, 좀 서둘러 공항으로 가세요.

There isn't any time, so please hurry out to the airport.

부지런히 일하는 걸 보니, 성공할 것 같습니다.

Judging by the way she works so hard, she will probably succeed.

몸이 좀 불편하니, 오늘 하루는 집에서 쉬시다.

I'm not feeling very well today, so let's take it easy at home today.

12시가 되니 시장기가 생기는군요.

Now that it's noon I'm feeling a bit hungry!

해가 지니 석양에 저녁 노을이 저서 예쁘군요.

The evening glow surrounding the sun as it sets is so pretty!

② Another function of this ending is to simply denote a connection between a fact presented in the preceding clause and the contents of the following clause. In such cases, it is rare to find an imperative or suppositive verb form in the second clause.

**Examples :**

해가 뜬지 오래데 아직도 안 일어나니 웬일일까?

It's already a long time since the sun came up and yet he still hasn't gotten up; what do you suppose is the matter?

매일 같이 지각을 하니 한심하군요.

She's late every day and [so] I'm getting annoyed.

돈이 다 떨어졌으니 뭘 먹고 살까.

I'm all out of money, so how will I live on?

집안이 쥐 죽은 듯 조용하니 아무도 안 계신가 봅니다.

It's quiet as a dead mouse [lit. : quiet as if a mouse had died] inside the house so it would appear that nobody is at home.

이렇게 날이 가무니 어찌 농산들 짓겠어요.

How are we supposed to farm under draught conditions like these?

**Vst-(으)니 만큼**

insofar as, inasmuch as; given that; seeing as

This pattern combines the 'reason' or 'grounds' connective ending in '-(으)니' with the noun '만큼' *extent*, and expresses the idea that the results present in the second clause come about due to the contents of the first clause.

**Examples :**

부모가 잘 생겼으니 만큼, 그 집의 딸들도 예쁘게 생겼을거야.

Given how goodlooking their parents are, the daughters in that family are bound to be pretty, too.

귀한 손님들이니 만큼 각별히 조심하거라.

Seeing as what important guests they are, be extra careful.

시간이 촉박하니 만큼 일찍부터 서둘러야 해요.

Given our tight time constraints, we have to get a move on right from the start.

복을 많이 받았으니 만큼 남을 위해 베풀고도 싶어요.

Given how fortunate I have been, I would like to spread some of my good fortune around to others, too.

요즘은 장마철이니 만큼 제때제때 빨래를 말려야 할 거예요.

Seeing as it is the rainy season just now, you'll have to dry the laundry right away each time.

**Vst-다(가)**

(transferentive) does~did (is~was) and then; does~did (is~was)

but; when

The basic function of this ending is to express the idea that an action or state that was underway or in effect in the past gets interrupted, and changes or shifts over to some other, different action or state. Note that the final '-가' is optional.

**Examples :**

학교에 가다가 친구를 만났어요.

On my way to school I met a friend.

소설을 읽다가 친구하고 같이 외출했습니다.

I read [fiction] for a while and then went out with a friend.

도서관에서 공부하다가 늦게 집에 돌아 왔습니다.

I studied in the library for a while and ended up getting home late.

어젯밤에 텔레비전을 보다가 숙제를 했습니다.

Last night I watched TV for a while and then did my homework.

편지를 쓰다가 문득 생각이 나서 전화를 걸었습니다.

As she was writing a letter she suddenly remembered something and made a phone call.

**Vst-었(았, 였)다가**

(transferentive) did (was) and then; did (was) but; when

When the transferentive ending in '-다(가)' attaches to the tense marker in '-었(았, 였)' which signifies past or completed action, the implication is that the interrupted or shifted action had come full circle or been completed before the interruption. This pattern is especially appropriate for cases where the contents of the first and second clause contradict each other.

**Examples :**

약속을 했다가도 취소할 수 있습니까?

You can cancel out even after you've [already] promised?

배웠다가도 안 쓰면 잊어 버립니다.

If you don't use something once you've learned it, you forget it.

물건을 샀다가 마음에 안 들면 바꿀 수 있어요?

If we don't like it, can we return merchandise after we've bought it?

그는 화가 나면 방안을 왔다 갔다 합니다.

When he's angry he paces up and down the room.

눈을 떴다 감았다 해 보세요.

Try opening and closing your eyes.

#### Vst다가는

if one keeps on doing (then unfortunately)

This connective ending combines the transferentive '-다가' with the auxiliary particle '-는' and expresses a sort of warning about the action or state of the preceding clause; if it continues, it will lead to the unpleasant or undesirable consequence in the following clause.

#### Examples :

그렇게 놀기만 하다가는 낙제한다.

If you keep on just goofing around like that you'll fail.

잘난 척하다가는 언젠가 큰 코 다칠 줄 알아라.

Take warning — if you keep on showing off, sooner or later you'll get burned!

부모님 말씀을 거역하다가는 나중에 후회할지도 몰라요.

You may regret it later if you disobey your parents.

돈을 몰쓰듯 하다가는 늙어서 고생해요.

If you carry on spending money so indiscriminately, you'll suffer in your old age.

아이를 너무 애지중지하다가는 버릇 없는 아이가 되고 말아요.

If you overindulge and coddle your kids too much, they end up turning into spoiled brats.

#### Vst다가도

even though one does~did (is~was), still ~ nonetheless; does~did (is~was) but still; when..., still ~ nonetheless

This connective ending combines the transferentive '-다가' with the auxiliary particle '-도'.

#### Examples :

보통 때 잘 하다가도 하라고 하면 못합니다.

Even though I'm usually good at it, if somebody tells me to do it, I can't.

그는 잠을 자다가도 가끔 깜짝깜짝 놀라요.

Sometimes he gets all startled, even in his sleep.

참 알다가도 모를 게 사람의 마음입니다.

People's hearts are so enigmatic — just when you think you know them, you don't.

평소에는 잘 참다가도, 어떤 땐 심하게 화를 냅니다.

Most the time he's quite patient, but sometimes he gets terribly angry.

빨간 색이 좋다가도 싫증날 때가 있어요.

Even though I [normally] like the color red, there are times when I get sick of it.

#### Vst-다(가) 보면

if ~ when one does it over a period of time, then [one discovers]...

This pattern is a combination of the transferentive pattern in '-다가' plus the conditional form of the verb '보-' see. One can interpret the pattern more or less literally as: If one does something over a period of time, then interrupts [that action] and takes a look back at the process until that point in time [one discovers some result or emotion].

#### Examples :

한술밥을 먹다가 보면 미운정 고운정이 다 듭니다.

If you eat at the same table as somebody else for a period of time, you come to feel affection from both positive and negative emotions for the person.

같이 생각하다 보면 좋은 안이 떠오를 때가 있죠.

Good ideas [often] come to mind when you brainstorm with another person for a while.

살다 보면 별별 일이 다 생길 겁니다.



Once you live long enough, all kinds of crazy things can happen.  
 틀에 박힌 생활을 하다가 보면 짜증이 날 때가 많습니다.

If you live life in too regimented a fashion, there are lots of times when  
 you get cranky.

혼자 고생하며 살다 보면 독립심과 자신감이 생기죠.

If you live in suffering by yourself for a while, you develop a sense of  
 independence and confidence.

#### Vst-다(가) 보니

as a result of doing it over a period of time, one discovers...

This pattern is a combination of the transference pattern in '-다가' plus the '-(으)니(까)' form of the verb '보-' see. One can interpret the pattern more or less literally as: AS a result of doing something over a period of time, and then interrupting [that action] and taking a look back at the process until that point in time [one discovers some result or emotion]. Thus, the pattern is virtually identical in function to Vst-다(가) 보면 above.

#### Examples :

그 일에 열중하다가 보니, 시간 가는 줄 몰랐습니다.

Once I got wrapped up in it, I lost all track of time.

한참 먹다가 보니, 앞에 앉았던 분이 없어졌더군요.

We had been sitting there eating for while, when the next thing I know  
 the person who had been seated in front of me had disappeared!

열심히 살다 보니, 어느새 얼굴엔 주름살이 생겼군요.

I was busy going about my life and the next thing I know I have wrinkles  
 on my face!

친구들과 한잔하다 보니, 귀가 시간이 늦어졌어요.

I was having a drink with my friends and the next thing I knew it was  
 way past the time to go home.

생각없이 돈을 쓰다 보니, 한달 봉급이 다 날라가 버렸군요.

I was spending money left and right, and the next thing I know an entire  
 month salary had gone out the window!

#### AVst-(으)려다가

was intending to ... but then...

This pattern combines the purposive ending in '-(으)려' with the transference ending in '-다가', and in origin is a contraction from '-(으)려고 하다가' via deletion of '-고 하-'. The pattern expresses the idea that the idea, plan or intention in the first clause was never realized, and that the results in the following clause came about instead. The verb of the preceding clause must be an action verb.

#### Examples :

재혼하려다가 아이들 때문에 못 했습니다.

She was going to remarry again, but couldn't because of the children.

전화를 걸려다가 너무 늦어서 못 걸었습니다.

I was going to call, but it was too late so I couldn't.

회사측에 건의하려다가 보류하기로 했어요.

I was going to make a formal proposal to the company, but decided to  
 defer it until a later time.

원료 수입을 하려다가 자체 생산기로 결정했습니다.

We were going to import the raw materials, but then decided to produce  
 them ourselves.

아이들을 혼내주려다가 한번 더 눈 감아주기로 했습니다.

I was going to give the children a good scolding but then decided to let  
 it go one more time.

#### Vst-(으)려다(가) 말고

was intending to ... but then changed course and [instead]...

This pattern combines the pattern in '-(으)려다가' above with the '-고' form of the verb '말다' designating negation (*stop, desist*).

#### Examples :

자려다 말고 일어나서 뭘 하세요?

What are you doing up? I thought you were going to bed.

택시를 타려다 말고 버스 쪽으로 뛰어갔습니다.

I was going to take a taxi but then changed my mind and ran over  
 toward the bus.

뭔가 한마디 하려다 말고 나가 버리더군요.

He was going to say something but then changed his mind and left.

뭔가 말을 하려다 말고 울음을 터뜨렸습니다.

He was going to say something but instead burst into tears.

용돈을 주려다 말고 돈 지갑을 그냥 주머니에 넣었어요.

I was going to give her some pocket money but instead I just stick the wallet in my pocket.

#### Vst-다 못해

unable to succeed in one attempt at ... ing, ...; overcome by the attempt to ...; at the extreme, in the extreme case (of doing), (even) driven by necessity (to do), (even) at the worst

This pattern expresses the idea the action or state in the preceding clause cannot be continued, or else is of an extreme or excessive degree. In particular, in cases where it expresses an extreme degree, the noun which expresses the action or state of the following clause can take ‘-까지’.

#### Examples :

그녀는 참다 못해 울음을 터뜨리고 말았어요.

Unable to control herself any longer, she burst into tears.

그 음식을 먹다 못해 개에게 주었어요.

Unable to finish all the food, I gave it to the dog.

야단치다 못해 때리기까지 했어요.

Sick and tired of scolding, she even struck them.

그 글을 보고 놀라다 못해 까무러치기까지 했습니다.

Overcome by the shock of reading the document, she even fell into a swoon.

거짓말을 하다 못해 이젠 속이기까지 하니?

What — white lies not good enough, and you have to outright cheat now?

#### AVst-어(아, 여)다(가)

[does] with a shift of location, purpose, direction, benefit, etc.

This pattern is used with action verbs, and signifies that the results of

the action in the first clause are connected with and/or continued in the following clause. This pattern emphasizes a change in locale. In other words, an action carried out in one place is shifted over to or transferred to another place, where it is connected with or linked to another, related action.

#### Examples :

그 상에 있는 화병 좀 가져다 주시겠습니까?

Would you please bring me the vase on that table?

음식을 만들어다가 친구한테 주었더니 좋아하더라고요.

I made some food to take over to my friend, and she was really pleased.

양복감을 사다가 양복점에 맡겼어요.

I bought some material for a suit and dropped it off at the tailor.

가끔 저녁을 중국집에서 시켜다가 먹어요.

Sometimes we order out Chinese food in the evenings.

원자재를 수입해다가 만들어서 수출을 합니다.

We import the raw materials, assemble the products, and export them.

#### Vst-다손 치더라도

even though we suppose that ..., even supposing that ...; one admits that such-and-such is the case, but ...; however much one might acknowledge that such-and-such is the case, nevertheless...

This rather emphatic pattern signifies that the speaker cannot readily accept the contents of the first clause, and that even if (s)he hypothetically supposes the contents of the preceding clause to be the case, (s)he nonetheless cannot accept the situation of the following clause. In other words, even if the contents of the first clause are to be accepted or acknowledged, the following clause cannot be accommodated.

#### Examples :

아무리 욕심이 많다손 치더라도 그만하면 만족하겠지.

No matter how greedy he might be, that should be enough to satisfy him.

갈 때는 비행기로 간다손 치더라도 올 때에는 비행기로 올 수 없어요.

Even supposing you go by airplane on the way there, there is no way for you to come back by plane.

아무리 버릇이 **없다**손 **치더라도** 어른 앞에서 담배를 피울 수 있  
요?

Ill-mannered as he may be, how could he smoke in front of adults?

아무리 세상이 **믿을 수 없다**손 **치더라도** 자식이 부모를 못 믿다  
니!

I know there is little on this earth that we can trust, but for a child to distrust its own parents?!

아무리 시간이 **없다**손 **치더라도** 밥 먹을 시간쯤이야.

I know we're short of time, but surely we can find time to eat?

#### Vst-다시피

in a way that tends to do, in a way inclined toward doing, in a way such that it is possible ~ likely; in a way that is virtually in accordance with, practically, virtually, as much as to do, almost, as if to., "like-to"

□ In the first of its uses, this pattern tends to occur with verbs of perception like '알다' *know*, '보다' *see*, and '듣다' *hear* in a number of set phrases or idiomatic expressions meaning in accordance with what the subject has experienced. Thus, the following clause reconfirms the contents of that experience.

#### Examples :

**보시다시피**, 눈코 뜰새 없이 바쁩니다.

As you can see, I'm so busy I barely have time to breathe.

**방송을 들으셨다시피**, 작년에 비해 물가가 많이 내렸어요.

As you may have heard through the media, prices have gone a lot compared to last year.

**여러분도 아시다시피**, 세계 정세가 말이 아닙니다.

As you all know, the world situation is a mess.

**보시다시피**, 우리는 지금 어려운 처지에 놓여 있습니다.

As you can see, we are now facing a difficult situation.

**선생님도 아시다시피**, 나는 한국에 처음 왔어요.

As you know, I am in Korea for the first time.

□ Followed by a form of the verb '하다', this ending creates a new pattern in '-다시피 하다', which indicates (somewhat exaggeratedly) that something happens almost or virtually in the same way as the verb in the preceding clause.

#### Examples :

그는 우리 집을 제 집 **드나들다시피** 합니다.

He frequents our house almost as much as he does his own.

작은 아버지가 그의 학비를 거의 **대다시피** 했어요.

His uncle practically paid his tuition.

약을 먹고 하루 종일 **자다시피** 했다네.

Apparently, after taking the medicine he slept practically the whole day.

어젯밤은 뜬 눈으로 **새우다시피** 했습니다.

Last night I couldn't sleep for practically the whole night.

너무 바빠서 **뛰어다니다시피** 하거든요.

I see he is so busy that he is practically running around the place.

#### Vst-더니

· as now it has been observed that ...; when (now~then) ..., since (now~then) ...; ... and now~then; ... but now~then

This pattern incorporates the retrospective marker '-더'(see page 194) and the ending '-(으)니' in its explanatory meaning (since, as, because; see page 267). The preceding clause presents some past experience as a grounds or pretext for presenting some related result in the following clause. The concrete meaning of this connective ending in any one case depends on the exact nature of the contents of the preceding and following clauses.

□ In one of its meanings, this pattern allows the speaker to affirm that some fact which (s)he directly experienced or witnessed in the past about a third-person subject is the reason or source for the state of affairs in the following clause. In this usage, the ending attaches directly to the verb stem. The subject is usually second or third person.

#### Examples :

연습을 열심히 하더니 이제 퍽 잘 하는군요.

She practiced so hard and now she's really good at it!

애기가 울더니 잠이 들었어요.

The baby was crying and now it is asleep. Or: The baby cried itself to sleep.

그녀가 편지를 읽더니 울기 시작했습니다.

She read the letter and then started to cry.

그 애가 과식을 하더니 배탈이 난 모양이죠.

It would appear she has an upset stomach from eating too much.

빛깔이 좋더니 맛도 좋군요.

It has a nice color to it and I see it tastes good, too!

㉔ In another usage, this pattern recollects the contents of the preceding clause as something directly experienced, and relates these to the contents of the following clause, which are the result of changes over the course of time.

**Examples :**

어렸을 땐 늘 울더니 아주 어른스러워졌어요.

When he was a child he cried all the time but [now] he has grown much more mature.

이곳이 주택지더니, 지금은 유흥업소로 꽉 찼군요.

This used to be a residential area, but now it is filled with entertainment enterprises.

어제는 춥더니 오늘은 따뜻하네요.

Yesterday it was cold, but today is warm!

어제는 그 분의 기분이 좋더니, 오늘은 저조해 보이는군요.

Yesterday he was in a good mood, but today he looks down.

바람이 불더니 이제 비까지 오는군.

First it was windy, and now it is even raining.

㉕ When attached to the past tense marker in '-었(았, 였)', this ending signifies that the completed, and directly experienced results of the event in the first clause continue into, and serve as the grounds and basis for the second clause. The subject of the '-더니' form in this case is

usually the speaker, and the subject of the following clause is usually different.

**Examples :**

내가 학교에 일찍 갔더니, 그가 벌써 와 있었습니다.

I went to school early, only to find that he was already there.

그 분을 만났더니, 무척 반가워하시더군요.

She was so happy to see me when I met her.

어제 옷을 한두 벌 샀더니, 월급이 다 달아났습니다.

I bought some clothes yesterday, and [lo and behold!] a whole month salary went out the window.

웃었더니 배가 다 아픕니다.

I laughed, and [discover now that] my stomach hurts.

그 아이를 좀 타일렸더니 울더군요.

I gave the child a bit of a admonishing, and [to my surprise or consternation] he cried.

㉖ This ending can also combine with the delimiter '-만' *just, only; that extent*, to form the combination '-더니만', in which case it has the effect of an intensified or emphatic '-더니'. The subject of the verb is usually second or third person.

**Examples :**

한번 가더니만, 다시는 오지 않았습니니다.

She went once, and never came again.

애기가 주사를 한번 맞더니만, 그만 울어 버립니다.

The child gets just one shot, and then burst into tears.

어머니가 과로를 하시더니만, 그만 몸살이 나셨어요.

Mother was so physically exhausted from work that she suffered somewhat of a breakdown.

오랫동안 앓더니만, 몸이 많이 야위었군요.

He was ill for such a long time that he has become quite emaciated.

동생이 술을 한잔하더니만, 기분이 매우 좋아졌어요.

All my little brother had was a glass of wine, but his mood improved a lot.

## Vst-더라도

even though (it has been observed that...); I don't care if~how; no matter how (much)...

This pattern concedes or acknowledges the contents of the preceding clause, but states that the contents of the following clause must nevertheless be the case. Sometimes the preceding concessive clause is prefaced by adverbs like '아무리' *however (much), no matter (how)*, which has the effect of emphasizing the following clause all the more.

**Examples :**

아무리 일이 어렵더라도 도중에 포기해서는 안 돼요.

I don't care how difficult the job may be, you can't quit in the middle of it.

아무리 비바람이 치더라도 길을 떠나겠소.

I don't care how tempestuous the weather might be, I insist on starting my journey.

아무리 고생이 되더라도 참고 견디며 살아 보겠습니다.

I don't care how much pain and suffering it entails — I will live on patiently and stoically.

아무리 자신이 있더라도 충고를 듣는 게 좋을 겁니다.

I don't care how confident you are, it'll do you good to listen to some advice.

아무리 자기 돈이더라도 낭비하면 안 돼요.

I don't care if it's your money — you shouldn't waste it.

## Vst-였(았, 였)더라면

If one had done~been, [then]...

This pattern is used to make counterfactual conditionals with respect to past events: if such-and-such had (or had not) been the case [but it was (or was not)], then... Thus, the second clause usually contains a supposition or expression of regret.

**Examples :**

집에서 좀 일찍 떠났더라면 기차를 안 놓쳤을걸.

If I had left home a bit earlier, I would not have missed the train.

주말에 좀 쉬었더라면 몸살은 안 났을텐데.

If I had rested a bit over the weekend, I wouldn't have gotten sick.

조심을 했더라면 망신은 당하지 않았을 겁니다.

If he had been careful, he would not have been so badly embarrassed.

평소에 성실했더라면 좌천은 당하지 않았겠죠.

If you had been more conscientious most of the time you would not have been demoted.

용돈을 좀 절약해 썼더라면, 남에게 손을 벌리지 않아도 되었을 겁니다.

If you had been a bit more economical in spending your pocket money, you wouldn't have to be begging from others.

## Vst-던데

(given) the circumstance of its having been observed that ...; under the circumstance that it has been ...; has been ... and~but~so...

This pattern combines the retrospective marker '-더' with the circumstantial ending in '-(으)ㄴ데', and is used to set up or preface the following clause with an appropriately relevant past event or fact directly experienced by the speaker.

**Examples :**

조금 전에 점심을 먹던데 벌써 배가 고프세요?

You were eating lunch just a little while ago [I recall] and you're already hungry again?

전 사원이 임금 문제로 말이 많던데, 괜찮으세요?

All the employees were making a lot of noise about the wages problem. Is everything OK?

그 색이 잘 어울리시던데, 바꿔 입으셨군요.

That color always did look good on you. I see you've changed [clothes]!

사장님이 굉장히 화가 나셨던데 무슨 일이 있었어요?

The [company] boss was incredibly angry. What happened?

그 그림 값이 꽤 비싸던데, 두 점이나 사셨어요?

That painting was quite expensive [as I recall] and you bought two of

them?

Vst-(으)ㄴ들

granted that, even though it is~does [often followed by a rhetorical question]

This pattern signifies that the contents of the preceding clause cannot be constrained by the following clause. In other words, this ending is a concessive, which concedes or acknowledges the contents of the preceding clause; the conclusion reached in the following clause comes about regardless of the preceding clause. In many cases, the following clause is a rhetorical question, in which case the entire pattern is similar to the construction in ‘-라고 할지라도 어찌...’.

**Examples :**

값이 비싼들 얼마나 비싸겠니?

OK, so it's expensive — but just how expensive can it be?

기름이 없으니 난로가 있는들 무슨 소용이 있어요?

We're out of oil, so even though we have a stove, what use is it?

그 분 고집이 세니 얘기한들 뭘 해요?

He's so stubborn, so what the point of talking to him?

누가 뭐라고 한들 자기 일만 잘하면 되지, 뭐

People can say what they want — all that matters is that you do a good job.

실패하고 나서 후회한들 무슨 소용이 있겠니?

Suppose you wallow in regret after screwing up — what's the use of that?

In combination with the copula ‘-이다’, this ending has the shape ‘-(이)ㄴ들’ (where the 이 is the copular stem, which drops optionally after a preceding vowel). In combination with the copula, this pattern gives the impression of a subject-less verb, but this is because the copula takes noun complements. Traditional Korean grammar treats the copula in ‘-이다’ as a special kind of particle, so this same traditional approach would analyze the examples below as cases of ‘Noun+Particle’ (‘명사+조사’).

**Examples :**

돈이 없으니 난들 어찌겠니?

I don't have any money, so what am I supposed to do? (Lit.: ‘Even though it be me, what shall I do?’)

그 사람들 무슨 힘이 있겠어요?

What sort of influence would he have? (Lit.: ‘Even though it be he, what power would he have?’)

실력이 있으면 그런 일인들 못하겠어요?

If the sort of thing where all you need is a little talent, and you can't even do that?

그렇게 좋은 환경에서 누군들 성공 못하겠습니까?

Who wouldn't succeed in a good environment like that?

부모님의 상을 당했으니 그 분 마음인들 얼마나 슬프겠어요?

He has suffered the loss of his parents — how sad his heart must be!

Vst-였(았, 였)던들

granted that, even if ... (it had been known to happen that); if it had happened that...

This pattern signifies that if one looks back on some previously experienced event and imagines it to have been the opposite from what happened in reality, the actual results in the present would be different yet again. In other words, it creates a counterfactual conditional (or concessive) not unlike the pattern in ‘Vst-였(았, 였)더라면’ above.

**Examples :**

그때 내가 있었던들 그런 일이 생기지 않았을 거야.

If I had been there at the time, such a thing would never have happened.

자네가 없었던들 내 인생이 얼마나 괴로웠을까?

If it were not for you, how painful my life would have been!

그날 그곳에 가지 않았던들 사고는 없었겠지.

If I hadn't gone there that day, there wouldn't have been no accident.

내 나이가 조금만 더 젊었던들 도봉산쯤이야 올라갔겠지.

If I had been just a bit younger, I could have climbed the likes of Mr. Tobong no problem.

서로 한 발자욱씩만 양보했던들 싸우지는 않았을 거예요.

If they had each yielded just one step, they wouldn't have had a fight.

#### Vst-던지

1) lit. the uncertain fact that it has been observed that i. e. whether it was (observed to be~happen)

2) any at all, regardless of which, ... (so) ever

This pattern combines the retrospective marker '-더' with the indirect question pattern in '-(으)는지' and has two major usages depending on the nature of the following clause.

☐ In one of its meanings this ending signifies that, in thinking back on a past experience, one has only a vague recollection and regards this recollection with some suspicion or insecurity.

#### Examples :

내가 왜 울었던지 모르겠어요.

I don't know why it was I cried.

그때 그가 어디에 있었던지 생각이 나요?

Do you remember where he was at the time?

작년 이맘 때 어디서 뭘 했던지 통 모르겠어요.

I have absolutely no idea where I was or what I was doing there at this time last year.

고향에서 편지가 오기를 얼마나 기다렸던지 할 일을 다 잊어버렸어요.

I was so eagerly awaiting a letter from back home that I forgot about everything I was doing.

☐ In its other major usage, this pattern combines with an interrogative -indefinite word like '어찌, 어떻게나, 얼마나' to render the meaning *any at all, regardless of which, ... (so) ever*. The implication is that the event in the first clause which one recalls is or was the reason for the contents of the following clause, and that the event(s) or contents of the preceding clause were quite impressive.

#### Examples :

어찌 춥던지 얼어 죽는 줄 알았어.

It was so cold that I thought I would freeze to death.

어떻게나 좋았던지 경충경충 뛰었어요.

It was so great I jumped up and down for joy.

술을 얼마나 마셨던지 정신이 하나도 없어요.

I've had so much to drink that I completely out of it.

어제는 얼마나 피곤했던지 그냥 쓰러져 잤어요.

I was so tired yesterday that I simply collapsed into my bed.

얼마나 웃었던지 배가 다 아팠어요.

I laughed so hard my stomach hurt.

#### Vst-도록

(projective) to the point where, until (a result); (arranges~tries to do it) so that

This pattern is incompatible with '-었(았, 였)' or '-겠'.

☐ In one of its meanings, this ending expresses the extent or limit of an action.

#### Examples :

어제 밤이 새도록 공부했습니다.

We stayed up all night last night studying. ['until the night dawned']

배가 터지도록 많이 먹었어요.

I ate so much I felt like I was going to burst. ['ate to the point where my stomach would burst']

김 선생은 죽도록 그 여자를 사랑했어요.

Mr. Kim loved her to death.

목이 터지도록 노래를 불렀습니다.

They sang their hearts out. ['to the point where their throats were going to burst']

6월이 되도록 꽃이 피지 않았습니다.

The flowers did not bloom until (as late as) June. ['until it got to be June']

㉔ In another of its meanings, this ending expresses the goal or direction in which one consciously promotes an action.

**Examples :**

김 감독은 이번 경기에서 **이기도록** 선수들을 격려했습니다.

Coach Kim encouraged the athletes so that they might win this time in the competition.

나무가 잘 **자라도록** 정성껏 돌봐 줍니다.

She takes good care of the tree so that it will grow quickly.

교통사고가 **나지 않도록** 조심하십시오.

Please be careful so as not to have a traffic accident.

학생들이 **이해할 수 있도록** 쉽게 설명해 주십시오.

Please explain it in an easy way so that the students can understand.

아이들의 손이 **닿지 않도록** 이 약을 높은 곳에 두세요.

Put this medicine someplace high up so the kids can't reach it.

**Vst-도록 하다**

sees to it that ...; has (somebody) do it; makes sure (somebody does it); gets (somebody to do)

This pattern indicates an action performed in order to reach or attain some state or set of circumstances.

**Examples :**

배가 고프면 **식사하도록** 해요.

If you're hungry, see to it that you get something to eat.

내일 아침에 **일찍 일어나도록** 하세요.

Please be sure to get up early tomorrow morning.

김 선생을 만나려면 **사무실로 가 보도록** 하세요.

If you want to meet Mr. Kim, make sure you get over to the office.

**이 그릇이 깨지지 않게 조심하도록** 하겠습니다.

I'll be careful to make sure this dish doesn't get broken.

**이제부터 열심히 공부하도록** 하겠습니다.

From now on I will do my best to study diligently.

**Vst-되**

(concessive) although (even though) it does ~ is; does ~ is and indeed (does ~ is); (literary) and

This ending is incompatible with '-었' and '-겠', and has two major usages.

㉑ In its first usage, this ending is used to introduce some fact by way of serving as a lead-in or introduction to a related, but more detailed exposition in the following clause.

**Examples :**

바람은 **불되** 그리 세게 불진 않아요.

The wind is blowing, but not all that strongly.

술은 **좋아하되** 자주 마시진 않아요.

I do like to drink, but I don't drink often.

잠은 **자되** 깊은 잠을 못 잔답니다.

Apparently he sleeps, but not very deeply.

생활비는 많이 **들되** 월급으로 모자라진 않아요.

The cost of living is quite high, but it's nothing I can't handle with my salary.

돈은 **많되** 돈이 많은 체를 별로 안하는군요.

Even though she has a lot of money, she doesn't really pretend to be rich.

㉒ In its other major usage, this ending concedes or allows the contents of the preceding clause, while the second clause places some restriction on those contents. The following clause often contains an imperative form or the pattern in '-어(아, 여)야 해요' 'must do, has to do', etc.

**Examples :**

일은 **하되**, 과로하진 마세요.

It's OK to work — just don't overdo it.

술은 **마시되**, 적당히 마시세요.

It's OK to drink — just do so in moderation.

외출은 **하되**, 오후 2시까지 돌아오세요.

It's OK to go out — just come back by 2 PM.



건물을 확장하되, 공사는 봄부터 시작하세요.

It's OK to extend the building — just start the construction work from the spring.

회의를 소집하되, 전원이 참석해야 합니다.

It's OK to convene a meeting, but all the members have to attend.

N-(이)로되

(concessive) although (even though) it is; is and indeed (does~is); (literary) and

① This pattern attaches exclusively to nouns and noun phrases, and is used to acknowledge the fact(s) in the preceding clause, before attaching a condition in the following clause. In other words, this ending is the special form for use with the copula '-이다' (the expected '-이되' is rarely used). The form in 'N-(이)로되' sounds more emphatic than just '-이되' or 'Vst-되' to most Koreans.

**Examples :**

이것은 한국에서 만든 것이로되 한국에서는 안 팔아요.

This was made in Korea — this isn't saleable in Korea.

네가 잘못된 일은 아니로되 사과를 하도록 하렴.

It's not your mistake, but why don't you make a point of apologizing.

사고를 낸 것은 사실이로되 부득이한 사고였다고 설명하세요.

Explain that it's was an accident, but that it was an unavoidable one.

당신 물건은 아니로되 좀 들어줘요.

I know it's not yours, but could you please lift it up for me?

② In its other usage, this ending is used to indicate that the fact(s) in the following clause are not restricted by the contents of the preceding clause.

**Examples :**

봄은 봄이로되 꽃도 피지 않았군요.

It's spring all right, but the flowers haven't even bloomed.

학생은 학생이로되 어쩐지 학생티가 안나는구먼.

She's a student all right, but somehow she doesn't seem very student-

like.

귀한 것은 귀한 것이로되 좁은 공간에 들여놓을 틈이 없다오.

[Window Shopping] It certainly is a nice piece, all right, but our place is so small there's no place to put it.

상표는 외제상표로되 외제는 아닌 것 같구려.

The label says it is a foreign brand, but it doesn't look like an import.

꽃은 꽃이로되 호박꽃이로군요.

It's a flower all right, but it's a pumpkin blossom.

Vst-든지

no matter (what, who, when,...); (regardless) whether ... or...

This pattern is used to express the idea of indifference to a choice, or else to enumerate a series of choices. It also occurs with the shape '-든가'. It is usually used in conjunction with an interrogative~indefinite word, or else in paired phrases of contrastive meaning of the type '-든지 -든지'. In the latter case, the second member of the paired phrase can be the negated form of the first verb using '-든지 말든지' indicating a choice between the affirmative and negative form of one and the same verb.

**Examples :**

네가 무엇을 하든지 난 상관하지 않겠어.

I won't care, whatever you do.

누구를 만나든지 친절히 대해야지요.

No matter who you meet, you should treat them kindly.

책을 읽든지 말든지 마음대로 해.

Read the book or not — do whatever you want.

술을 마시든지 담배를 피우든지 지나치게 하지 마세요.

Whether you smoke or drink, just don't overdo it.

가든가 안 가든가 빨리 결정하세요.

Hurry up and make up your mind as to whether you're going or not.

Note: The '-지' of '-든지' can be optionally omitted.

**Examples :**

아내가 무슨 부탁을 하든 난 들어줄 생각이야.

I intend to do whatever my wife asks me to do.

대학을 다녔든 안 다녔든 사람 됨됨이를 보라구요.

What I'm saying is that whether a person has gone to college or not, you should evaluate them as a person.

#### Vst-ㄴ/는다든지

... or the like (naming but one of an unspecified, but implied set of choices); ... or whatever

This pattern is an abbreviation from the indirect speech structure in '-ㄴ/는다고 하든지' via loss of the string '-고 하-'.

#### Examples :

건강이 좋지 않으니까 휴학을 **한다든지** 해야 할 것 같아요.

Since my health is not good, it looks like I'll have to take a leave of absence from school or the like.

의견을 물으면, **좋다든지 나쁘다든지** 대답을 해야지요.

If somebody asks your opinion, you have to reply that you think it is good or bad, one or the other.

아버지께서 **가라든지** 하셔야 제가 마음놓고 떠날 수 있습니다.

I can leave with a clear conscience unless father tells me to go or something.

**약을 먹으라든지 주사를 맞으라든지** 의사가 말을 해 주겠지요.

The doctor will tell you what to do — whether it be to take some medicine, get a shot, or whatever.

친구가 오랜만에 **한잔하자든지** 하는 경우엔 어떻게 하시겠어요?

In the case that your friend suggests having a drink together for old time's sake or the like what will you do?

#### Vst-듯

appearing (to be), looking (like); seeming as if; as if~though; giving the appearance of

This ending can be paraphrased in Korean as '거의 같이' *virtually the same as* or '그것처럼' *like it, in the same way as*. Sometimes the ending

also appears as '-듯이' with no change in meaning. (\*Its meaning is similar to the noun '듯', but its usage is different. See page 38).

#### Examples :

물 **쓰듯이** 돈을 쓰면 되겠니?

Do you think it's OK to spend money like water?

비 **오듯이** 흐르는 눈물을 어떻게 막을 길이 없었어요.

There was no way for me to stop the deluge of tears.

그는 **뛰어가듯** 빠른 걸음으로 가 버렸습니다.

He took off at a fast clip, almost as if running.

그는 밥 **먹듯이** 거짓말을 하는 사람입니다.

He's a person for whom lying comes as easily as eating.

강물이 바다에서 다시 **만나듯이** 우리도 언젠가는 다시 만날 겁니다.

We, too, are bound to meet again some time, just as rivers meet in the ocean.

#### AVst-(으)리라치면

("if you consider what with doing" =) whenever, if

This connective ending attaches exclusively to action verbs, and signifies that whenever one contemplates or supposes undertaking some action, the contents of the following clause come about. It is usually used in cases when one contemplates things which one has experienced numerous times.

#### Examples :

잘 놀다가도 엄마가 밖에 **나갈라치면** 애기가 울더군요.

Even at times when the baby was playing just fine, whenever its mother went to go outside, it would cry.

요즘 바깥 청소를 **할라치면** 꼭 비가 오더라고요.

Lately whenever I get ready to clean up outside, it rains.

그 남자는 내가 좀 관심을 **표할라치면** 꼭 미운짓을 해요.

Whenever I get around to showing my interest in that guy, he does something stupid.

비가 **올라치면** 반드시 검은 구름이 끼어요.

Whenever it is about to rain, black clouds form.

저축 좀 할라치면 예외없이 돈 쓸 일이 생기더라고요.  
Whenever I would try to save up some money, some exceptional expense would crop up.

Vst-(으)ㄹ뿐더러

not only ... but (also); moreover; furthermore; as well as; besides, in addition, on top of that

This pattern is composed of '-(으)ㄹ+뿐+더러' and expresses the idea that some fact or statement is not an exhaustive account, and that there is yet more, additional content. It is equivalent in function to the pattern in '-(으)ㄹ뿐만 아니라'. (see page 47).

**Examples :**

그는 공부도 잘 할뿐더러 집안 일도 잘 돌봐.  
Not only is he a good student, he also helps a lot around the house.  
그는 학자일뿐더러 정치가이기도 합니다.  
Not only is he a scholar, he is also a politician.  
요즘은 날씨가 더울뿐더러 습기도 많지요.  
Not only is it hot lately, but it is also very humid.  
돈을 벌기도 어려울뿐더러 쓰기도 힘들어요.  
Money is not just hard to earn; it's hard to spend, too.  
그 책은 내용도 충실할뿐더러 문장도 아름답습니다.  
Besides having reliable contents, that book's style is also beautiful.

Vst-(으)ㄹ수록

increasingly with (being~doing); the more (better, bigger, etc.) ... the more

☐ This pattern expresses an ongoing increase in the nature of an action or state.

**Examples :**

한국말은 공부할수록 재미있습니다.  
The more I study Korean the more interesting it is.  
바쁠수록 운전을 조심해야 합니다.  
The busier you are the more careful you have to be driving.

그 분은 만날수록 좋은 사람인 것 같아요.  
The more I see of her the more she seems to be a good person.  
훌륭한 사람일수록 많은 사람에게서 존경을 받습니다.  
The greater a person is, the more respect he or she receives from others.

☐ This ending also occurs, with the same (albeit somewhat intensified or emphatic) meaning, in a pattern which repeats the same verb, and attaches the conditional ending in '-(으)면' to the first occurrence.

**Examples :**

여행을 하면 할수록 견문이 넓어집니다.  
The more one travels, the broader one's experience becomes.  
그 노래를 들으면 들을수록 새로운 느낌이 듭니다.  
The more I hear that song the newer it feels to me.  
날씨가 추우면 추울수록 사람들의 활동이 적어집니다.  
The colder the weather, the less active people become.  
세월이 가면 갈수록 어린 시절이 그립습니다.  
The more time marches on, the more we miss our childhood.  
정이가 들면 들수록 헤어지기는 더욱 힘든 법입니다.  
The closer you get to people, the harder it is to part with them.

Vst-(으)ㄹ지라도

even though, although, notwithstanding that ..., regardless of

This ending is used in a pattern which signifies that even if one concedes hypothetically the action or state in the preceding clause, one is nevertheless constrained to carry out the action in the following clause.

**Examples :**

난 날씨가 좋지 않을지라도 떠나겠소.  
I intend to leave even if the weather should be bad.  
친척 사이라 할지라도 공과 사는 구별할 줄 알아야 해요.  
Relatives though they may be, they must distinguish between public and private.  
야단을 맞을지라도, 할 말은 해야지요.  
You should say what is on your mind, even if it means catching a scolding.

아무리 어린아이일지라도, 무시해서는 안 되지요.

Child though she may be, you should not ignore her.

아무리 급할지라도 과속해선 안 돼요.

I don't care how much of a hurry you are in, you shouldn't speed.

Vst-(으) 리지언정  
even if

This ending usually connects two clauses of contradictory content, and indicates that if one had to make a choice between the two, one would, quite emphatically, prefer the first to the second.

**Examples :**

늦을지언정 과속은 하지 않겠어요.

I don't care if it means being late — I will not speed.

차라리 권익을 다룰지언정 권세를 다투지 않겠습니다.

I would rather fight over rights and interests, than over power.

동냥할지언정 그 사람 밑에서 일하지는 않겠어요.

I would rather beg than work under him.

굶을 땐 굶을지언정 오늘은 잘 먹어야겠군요.

Even if it means starvation at some later date, I'm going to make a feast of it today.

죽을 땐 죽을지언정 수술은 받겠어요.

Even if it means possible death, I'll opt for the operation.

Vst-(으) 리진대

if, when (somewhat bookish, if not obsolete)

This ending acknowledges the facts in the preceding clause as something natural and to be expected, but also indicates that those facts are basis or condition for the contents of the following clause.

**Examples :**

나라를 사랑하고 아낀진대 어찌 군복무를 마다하겠어요?

Assuming one loves and cherishes one's country, how could one refuse military service?

세계 평화를 염려할진대 핵무기 생산을 왜 안 막으리오.

If one is concerned about world peace, what reason is there not to stop the production of nuclear weapons?

지구의 앞날을 걱정할진대 환경 오염을 어찌 방관하겠어요?

If we are worried about the future of the earth, how can we remain indifferent to environmental pollution?

굶주림의 무서움을 알진대 왜 아프리카 난민을 모른다 하겠습니까?

You know the horrors of starvation, so how can you plead ignorance about the African refugees?

Vst(으) 라, Vst(으) 라

This pattern is used with action verbs to indicate that one does both this and that and the other simultaneously.

**Examples :**

노래하라, 춤추라 숨이 꽤 차겠네.

You must be quite out of breath with the singing and dancing.

악수하라, 인사하라 제 정신이 아니었습니다.

I was going nuts with all the handshaking and greetings.

이달에는 재산세 내라, 자동차세 내라 돈이 엄청 들겠어요.

This month is going to cost us a fortune what with paying the property tax and the automobile tax.

아들 눈치 보라, 며느리 눈치 보라 신경이 많이 쓰이시겠네요.

It must be quite nerve-wracking for you to have to be so careful about what you do and say around your son and your daughter-in-law.

예습하라, 복습하라 아르바이트 할 시간이 어디 있겠어요.

How are you supposed to have time to work part-time with all the preparation and review?

AVst-(으) 려고

(intention) with the thought in mind to do, with the intention of doing, with the desire to do; ready~prepared~willing to do; about to do

This pattern expresses an intention to perform some action in the future; thus, it is compatible only with action verbs.

**Examples :**

한국말을 배우려고 한국어학당에 다닙니다.

I'm attending the Korean Language Institute so as to learn Korean.

부모님께 드리려고 선물을 샀습니다.

I bought a present [intending] to give [it] to my parents.

부산에 가려고 기차를 탔습니다.

I got on the train with the intention of going to Pusan.

시원한 공기를 마시려고 창문을 열었습니다.

I opened the window so as to take in some fresh air.

설악산에 여행가려고 한 달 전부터 계획을 세웠습니다.

I've been planning to go on a trip to Soraksan since over a month now.

**Vst-(으)려고 하다**

intends~plans~wants to do, is going to do, will do, is ready  
~prepared~willing to do, has it in mind to do, is out to do; tries to do,  
sets out~about to do

In this pattern, the intentive ending in '-(으)려고' combines with the verb '하다' to express an intention, plan, or future agenda. Note that the '-고' can be optionally omitted, yielding the shape '-(으)려 하다'.

**Examples :**

생활의 여유가 생기면 도자기를 모으려고 합니다.

Once life gets a bit more comfortable, I intend to collect ceramics.

퇴근한 후에는 맥주집에 들러서 한잔하려고 해요.

After we get off work, we intend to stop in at a bar for a beer.

말 많고 입이 가벼운 사람하고는 사귀지 않으려고 합니다.

I do not intend to associate with people who talk too much and shoot off at the mouth.

돈이 생기면 친구들한테 한턱을 내려고 합니다.

As soon as I get some money, I intend to take my friends out.

휴가를 얻으면 설악산으로 등산을 가 보려 합니다.

As soon as I get a leave, I intend to go hiking on Soraksan.

This pattern in '-(으)려고 하다' can also combine with other com-

mon connective endings like conditional '-(으)면', circumstantial, '-는데', sequential '-(으)니까', transferentive '-다가', the retrospective modifier '-던', etc.

**Examples :**

여권 신청을 하려고, 외무부에 갑니다.

I'm on my way to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs to apply for a passport.

진급을 하려면, 열심히 공부해야 합니다.

If you want to advance to the next grade, you have to study hard.

피곤해서 잠을 자려는데, 전화가 걸려왔습니다.

I was tired, and just as I was about to go to sleep, the phone rang.

좋은 취직 자리를 구하려니까, 힘이 듭니다.

Now that I go about trying to find a good job, I find it is difficult.

오후 5시에 출발하려던 비행기가 엔진 고장으로 연착되었어요.

The plane that was supposed to depart at 5 PM was arrived late because of engine trouble.

화를 내려다가 그만 꼭 참기로 했지요.

I was about to get angry, but decided to bottle up my temper.

**Vst-(으)려거든**

if~provided that one intends to do

This pattern is an abbreviation from '-(으)려고 하거든', and signifies that if the contents of the preceding clause are one intention, it stands to reason that one should perform the contents of the second clause. The second clause is usually an imperative or propositive form.

**Examples :**

잠을 자려거든 불을 끄고 자거라.

If you want to go to sleep, turn off the light first.

성공을 하려거든 끈기 있게 노력해야 한다.

If you want to succeed, you have to work hard with a dogged persistence.

출근 시간에 맞추려거든 아침 일찍 일어나세요.

If you want to get to work on time, get up early in the morning.

도둑을 잡으려거든 도둑보다 빨리 뛰어야 해요.

If you want to catch a thief, you have to move quicker than the thief.

집을 지으려거든 기초부터 튼튼히 하십시오.  
If you want to build a house, be sure to make the foundation solid.

## Vst-(으)려니

(thinking or presuming or supposing that) such would likely be the case

This pattern expresses a supposition of the speaker, and is usually uttered as a kind of soliloquy or monologue, i. e. by the speaker to the speaker him- or herself, as if saying to oneself '그러하겠거니' *that must surely be the case, such will probably be the case*. However, this speaker-internal thought or supposition can also be quoted as a kind of indirect speech with the help of the verb '-하다' to create a pattern which expresses the speaker's supposition about the action or state of a second- or third person subject.

**Examples :**

나는 그가 나를 사랑해 주려니 하고 믿었어요.  
I trusted him, thinking to myself 'surely he loves me,'  
어제는 그가 오려니 하고 기다렸습니다.  
I waited for him yesterday, thinking he would surely come.  
나는 그가 정치가려니 생각했어요.  
I thought to myself that he must surely be a politician.  
나는 그가 그 일을 못 하려니 생각했는데, 잘 해 냈습니다.  
I figured he wouldn't be able to do it, but he did a good job.  
나는 네가 먼저 사과하려니 생각하고 기다렸어.  
I waited, assuming you would apologize first.

But note that when the subject is the speaker him-or herself, or when the sentence subject is also the agent of the action in the clause, this pattern has another interpretation — as an abbreviation of the pattern in '-(으)려고 하니' via loss of '-고 하-'. In this case, the pattern expresses an intention, and means now that I am going to (do), now that I want to (am ready ~ set ~ about to), or (just) when I was about to (do). In other words, one intended to do the action in the first clause, but this intention

was somehow thwarted, and instead one is left with the result in the second clause. Of course, the verb in the preceding clause must be an action verb.

**Examples :**

남을 주려니 아깝고, 내가 먹으려니 맛이 없군요.  
It was too nice to give away, but now that I try it myself, it tastes terrible.  
여행을 하려니 돈이 없고, 집에 있으려니 심심했습니다.  
I thought I might go on a trip, but have no money; and now that I've decided to stay at home, I'm bored.  
혼자 하려니 힘에 겹고, 도움을 받으려니 자존심 상해.  
I thought I would do it by myself, but it is too much for me; and yet now that I want to get some help, my pride is wounded.  
밤을 새워가면서 이 일을 끝내려니 저절로 한숨이 나오네요.  
I was going to stay up all night finishing this, but I just keep sighing!  
이 무거운 짐을 혼자 다 옮기려니 허리가 끊어질 듯 아프군요.  
I was going to move these heavy bags myself, but now I have a splitting pain in my lower back.

## Vst-(으)려니와

but; and anyway (what's more), moreover; not only ... but also; besides ... also...

This pattern adds the contents of the preceding clause to those of the following clause, and regard some future or hypothetical event as '그러함은 물론이고', i. e. it is a matter of course, it is entirely to be expected. If the subject is first person (I, we), and the verb is an action verb, this pattern also expresses the will or intention of the subject.

**Examples :**

앞으로는 그 분을 만나지도 않으려니와 만날 필요도 없습니다.  
In future, I have no intention of meeting him [again], and what's more, I have no need to do so.  
유럽에 가면 독일에도 들르려니와 영국에도 가겠어요.  
If we go to Europe, we will be sure to stop off in Germany, and of course

we'll also go to England.

그 여자는 마음씨도 **고우려니와** 부지런하기도 합니다.

Not only does she have a lovely disposition, she is also hardworking.

오늘은 기분도 **좋으려니와** 날씨도 아주 좋군요.

Not only am I in a fine mood today, but the weather is also very good.

동대문 시장은 물건도 **많으려니와** 값도 싸입니다.

Tongdaemun Market has many wares and cheap prices

#### Vst-기도 하려니와

not only [is A the case] ... but also [B]; besides [A being the case] ... also [B] ...

This pattern is used to express two or more actions or states about one and the same object.

#### Examples :

그는 똑똑하기도 **하려니와** 노력도 대단합니다.

Besides being smart, she is also an incredibly hard worker.

갈비는 맛이 있기도 **하려니와** 영양가도 높아요.

Besides being good to eat, kalbi are also high in nutritional value.

필요할 땐 도와 주기도 **하려니와** 충고도 할거야.

In times of need, she will both help you and give you advice.

성격이 좋기도 **하려니와** 이해심이 많습니다.

Besides having a nice personality, he is also full of understanding.

체격이 크기도 **하려니와** 건강하기도 해.

He has a large physique and is also healthy.

#### N도 N-(이)려니와

yes, it is true that N is important, but [also] ...; N is one thing, but let us not forget...

This pattern is used to acknowledge that the preceding noun is also an important element in what one wishes to say, and belongs right at the heart of one future plans or of what one is about to say, but that one must also include or incorporate the contents of the following clause into the overall picture.

#### Examples :

돈도 **돈이려니와** 시간이 문제예요.

Money is also a big, but the big problem is time.

식사도 **식사려니와** 목욕부터 하고 싶은데요.

Eating would be nice, too, but I like to bathe first.

그 분의 **말도 말이려니와** 행동에도 문제가 있습니다.

What he says is a problem, too, but it's his behaviour that's the problem.

그 분도 **문제려니와** 주위 환경도 문제입니다.

She's also a problem, but the big problem is the surrounding environment.

시간도 **시간이려니와** 성의가 없습니다.

Time is a problem, too, but what she is really lacking is sincerity.

#### Vst-(으)련마는

I had hoped that ... but; it should have ... but; I wish that ... but; I would presume that ... but [contrary to my presumption] ...; the expectation is~was that ..., but [contrary to that expectation...]

This pattern combines the tentative~suppositional ending in '-(으)려' with the ending in '-(으)련마는' which indicates a contrary or opposite result. Thus, when the subject is first person, this pattern expresses an intention, and when the subject is third person, it indicates a supposition. Whereas the preceding clause indicates a hypothetical expression about some future event, the following clause expresses the actual state of affairs, one which falls short of the expectations expressed in the preceding clause. Note that '-(으)련마는' can be shortened to '-(으)련만'.

#### Examples :

멍어리는 **아니련마는** 왜 말을 못할까?

I would presume he is not a deaf-mute, so why doesn't he say anything? 분명력이 **있으련마는** 일을 그르치고 말았어.

I would have expected him to have some judgement, but he screwed everything up.

여유만 **있으면**, 수재민을 **도울 수 있으련만**.....

If only we had some extra resources, we would be able to help the flood

victims, [but we don't, so we can't].

다시 태어나면 후회 없이 살 수 있으면만, 그게 어디 될 법한가요?

If I could be born again I would live without regrets, but life just doesn't work that way, does it?

쉬운 일은 할 수 있으면만, 아무 일도 안 하려고 하는군요.

She ought to be able to do [at least] simple tasks, but she obviously has no intention of doing anything!

#### Vst-(으)면

if, provided; when, whenever

① This conditional ending sets forth the prerequisite conditions for the coming about of the action or state in the following clause. It can attach to all verbs, but in the case of the copula '-이다' and its negative counterpart, '아니다', it usually attaches as '-(이)라면'.

#### Examples :

가을이 되면 단풍이 듭니다.

In the autumn, the colors change. [Lit. : When it gets to be autumn...]

돈이 있으면 빌려 주십시오.

If you have any money, could you please lend me some?

비가 올 것 같으면 우산을 들고 나갑니다.

Whenever it looks like rain, I take an umbrella when I go out.

감기에 걸리면 집에서 쉬어야 해요.

When you catch a cold, you should rest at home.

수입품이라면 값이 무척 비쌀 거예요.

If it's an import, it'll be really expensive.

② Followed by the verbs '좋다' or '하다', this ending creates a pattern expressing the wish, hope or desire of the sentence subject. Addition of the past tense marker in '-었(았, 였)' makes the wish more emphatic.

#### Examples :

내일은 나가지 말고 집에 있으면 좋겠어요.

Tomorrow I like to stay home instead of going out.

심심할 때는 친구들과 놀 수 있으면 얼마나 좋을까요?

Wouldn't it be great to be able to hang out with your friends when you're bored?

통일이 되었으면 하는 사람들이 많아요.

There are many people who wish Korea would be unified.

국민은 정부가 올바른 정치를 하였으면 하고 바랍니다.

The citizens of the country wish that the government would practice good politics.

앞으로 무슨 일을 했으면 좋겠어요?

What would you like to do in future?

#### Vst-(으)면야

if only one ...; if one would just ...; only if one (does ~ is)

This pattern adds the emphatic particle '-야' to the conditional ending '-(으)면', and expresses the idea that when the fact(s) of the preceding clause are given as a hypothetical situation or condition, one naturally derives the result(s) in the following clause.

#### Examples :

안개가 낀 날이면야 비행기가 떠나기 힘들죠.

It is especially difficult for airplanes to take off on foggy days.

식사를 했으면야 배가 고플리가 없죠.

Of course she won't be hungry if she's already eaten.

연락을 하면야 오겠죠.

Sure she'll come, if you just get in touch with her.

그 분이 사과를 한다면야 나도 굳이 기분 나빠할 필요가 없죠.

Of course, if he says he'll apologize, there is no need for me to be offended.

#### Vst-(으)면서

while ... at the same time;

while ... yet; although ... also; at the very same time that

This pattern indicates that two actions or states occur at the same time. The subject of both clauses must be the same.



**Examples :**

밥을 먹으면서 재미있는 이야기를 했습니다.  
We had an interesting conversation while eating.

그 아이는 큰 소리를 지르면서 울었어요.  
The child cried while bawling in a loud voice.

우리는 모두 노래를 부르면서 산에 올라 갔습니다.  
We all sang as we went up the mountain.

김 선생 부인은 웃으면서 우리를 맞아 주셨습니다.  
Mrs. Kim greeted us with a smile.

하루 종일 덩굴면서 지냈단다.  
I spent the whole day lazing around the house.

**Vst-(으)면서(도)**

while ... yet; although ... also; at the very same time that; whilst

This pattern is used to emphasize that the contents of the preceding and following clause are contradictory or conflicting. This same pertains even if one drops '-도'.

**Examples :**

서로 좋아하면서도 그런 표시를 하지 않아요.  
Even though they like one another, they never show it.

싫으면서도 채면상 먹고 체했대요.  
Even though he didn't want to eat it, he had some just to save face, and later felt sick to his stomach.

아는 사람끼리 만났으면서도 얼굴을 돌렸대나봐요.  
Apparently he refused to look at her, even though they were among friends.

이야기를 들으면서도 무슨 말인지를 몰랐나봐요.  
Apparently she had no idea what he was saying, inspite of the fact that she was listening.

이 옷은 가벼우면서도 따뜻합니다.  
These clothes are light, yet warm.

**Vst-(으)며****does~is, and; while**

① When the verb is an action verb and the subject in both clauses is the same, this ending indicates that two or more actions occur at the same time.

**Examples :**

여자 가수가 춤을 추며 노래를 부르고 있어요.  
There is a woman singer singing and dancing.

반은 졸며 공부했어요.  
I was studying, half-dozing.

일평생 약을 먹으며 살아왔어요.  
I have lived my whole life taking medicine.

일하며 공부하기가 쉬운 일은 아니지요.  
It not easy to study and work at the same time.

그 분은 남을 위해 봉사하며 한평생을 지내셨습니다.  
She has lived her entire life serving others.

② In another usage, this ending is used simply to concatenate two actions or states without any implication as to temporal sequence or cause and effect.

**Examples :**

이 다방은 조용하며, 커피 맛도 좋아요.  
This tea house is quiet, and the coffee is good.

결혼을 한다고 하니가 좋기도 하며, 한편 섭섭하기도 합니다.  
Now that you tell me you're getting married, on the one hand I'm glad for you, and on the other hand I feel sad.

오늘은 한때 흐리며 비도 오겠습니다.  
Today will be cloudy for a spell and it will rain, too.

장미는 예쁘며 향기도 좋아요.  
Roses are pretty and have a nice fragrance.

값도 싸고 좋으며 색깔도 예뻐요.  
The price is good and cheap, and it has a pretty color, too.

Note: when used after a noun, we treat this (i. e. '-(으)며') as a

particle. (See page 161).

**Vst-(으)므로**

with~as~by the doing or being; since (because of) the doing or being

This pattern expresses a reason or cause, and is usually followed by a verb with a declarative final ending.

**Examples :**

이 물건은 수입품이므로 세금이 붙습니다.

This item attracts tax because it is an import.

오늘은 토요일이므로 오전에만 근무해요.

Because today is Saturday, we only work in the morning.

그 아이는 워낙 혼자 있기를 좋아하므로 친구가 많지 않습니다.

Because she likes to be alone so much, she doesn't have many friends.

내가 관여할 일이 아니므로 물어보지도 않았지요.

Because it's none of my business, I didn't ask.

이 돈은 내것이 아니므로 주인을 찾아 돌려줘야 합니다.

Since this isn't my money, I have to find the owner and give it back.

**Vst-(으)므로**

with~as~by the doing or being; since (because of) the doing or being

This pattern is based on the nominalizer form in '-(으)로' plus the instrumental particle '-(으)로', and indicates that the preceding clause is the reason for or cause of the following clause. That is, it indicates that the contents of the following clause are due to or have their origin in the contents of the first clause. Note that this pattern can be followed optionally by '-씨' with no change in meaning.

**Examples :**

책을 많이 읽음으로써 지식을 넓힙니다.

One increases one's knowledge through reading books.

과학적인 실험을 함으로써 사실을 증명할 수 있어요.

We can prove facts by conducting scientific experiments.

늘 조심에 조심을 함으로써 사전에 사고를 예방하죠.

One prevents accidents before they even happen through constantly exercising caution upon caution.

참고 건담으로 결국엔 승리할 수 있대요.

They say you can be victorious in the end through patience and perseverance.

달리기를 함으로 평소에 건강을 유지하고 있습니다.

I maintain my health most of the time through jogging.

**Vst-어(아, 여)도**

though (although, even though) does~is; notwithstanding (the fact that); but, however; all it takes is ... (for it to happen)

This connective ending signifies either supposition or concession.

① In one of its usages, this ending is followed by '좋다', '괜찮다', or '되다' to create a pattern which seeks permission for the contents of the preceding clause or else ask the interlocutor's intentions.

**Examples :**

지금 집에 가도 좋습니다.

You can go home now.

이 음식은 먹어도 괜찮아요.

It's OK to eat this food.

서울역에 가려면, 이 버스를 타도 됩니다.

If you want to go to Seoul Station, you can take this bus.

음식이 매워도 괜찮아요?

Is it OK if the food is spicy?

옷이 좀 커도 됩니까?

Is it OK if the clothes are a bit big?

② In another usage, this ending concedes the contents of the preceding clause, but indicates that these have no relation to the following clause. In this case, the preceding verb can be prefaced by the adverb '아무리' however (much); no matter (how) to make the concessive meaning clearer.

**Examples :**

내일 비가 **와도** 소풍을 가겠습니다.

We're going on a picnic tomorrow even if it rains.

그 사람은 키가 **작아도** 운동을 잘 합니다.

Even though she's short, she is good at sports.

아무리 **크게** 불러도 그 아이는 대답하지 않았어요.

Shout as loud as I might, the child still wouldn't respond.

아무리 돈이 **많아도** 그 부자는 행복하지 않았습니다.

However rich he might have been, that wealthy person was not happy.

배가 **고파도** 혼자 다 먹을 수는 없지요.

Even though I'm hungry I can't eat it all by myself.

㉓ When used in an interrogative pattern, the ending in '-어(아, 여)도' seeks the interlocutor's permission; in this case, a negative response is given with '-(으)면'.

**Examples :**

내일 아침에 늦게 **일어나도** 됩니까?

아니오, 늦게 일어나면 안 됩니다.

Is it OK if I get up late tomorrow morning?

No, you mustn't get up late

소풍갈 때, 비가 **와도** 갑니까?

아니오, 비가 오면 가지 않습니다.

Is it OK if it rains when we go on our picnic?

No, if it rains we're not going.

시험 성적이 **나빠도** 괜찮습니까?

아니오, 시험 성적이 나쁘면 안 됩니다.

Is it OK if my exam results are bad?

No, it won't do if your exam results are bad.

Vst-어(아, 여)서

and so; and then; (attached to a action verb) so as to, (goes) for~to

㉔ This ending indicates that the preceding clause is the reason or cause for the following clause. Note that it is not compatible with the past tense marker in '-었(았, 였)' or with the future marker in '-겠',

and that the final ending in the following clause cannot be either an imperative or propositive form.

**Examples :**

저는 **바빠서** 회의에 참석하지 못하겠습니다.

I'm busy, so I won't be able to participate in the meeting.

아이가 배가 **아파서** 울고 있습니다.

The child is crying because its stomach hurts.

그 여자는 **부끄러워서** 얼굴이 빨개졌어요.

Her face turned red from embarrassment.

나는 시인이 **아니어서** 그런 것은 잘 모릅니다.

Since I am not a poet, I do not know much about such things.

바람이 심하게 **불어서** 나무잎이 떨어졌습니다.

The wind was blowing so fiercely that the leaves all fell off.

㉕ In another usages, this ending signifies that the action in the preceding clause happened prior to, and in turn with, the action in the following clause. Moreover, the two actions are logically sequenced and or connected. In cases such as these, the verb in the preceding clause is an action verb, and there are no restrictions on the type of final ending in the following clause.

**Examples :**

시장에 **가서** 여러 가지 물건을 삽니다.

We go to the market and buy various kinds of things.

철수가 책을 **사서** 동생에게 선물했습니다.

Cholsu bought a book and gave it to his brother.

어제 김 선생을 **만나서** 재미있는 이야기를 했어요.

Yesterday I met Mr. Kim and we had an interesting conversation.

이 의자에 **앉아서** 잠깐만 기다리십시오.

Please sit in this chair and wait a moment.

모두들 교실에 **들어가서** 공부합시다.

Let's all go into the classroom and study.

Vst-어(아, 여)야

only to the extent that ... can~does one (...); if you don't ... you

can't (...); it is by ... ing that you (...); you have to ... in order to (...); only when ~ if you ... do you (...)

㉠ In its first usage, this pattern indicates that the contents of the preceding clause are an absolute prerequisite to the contents of the following clause. It can attach to any type of verb, but note that the copula and its negative counterpart take the special shapes '-(이)라야' and '아니라야', respectively.

**Examples :**

김 선생을 만나야 고향 소식을 알 수 있어요.  
You have to meet Mr. Kim if you want to hear news from back home.  
가을에 날씨가 좋아야 벼가 잘 익어요.  
The weather in the autumn has to be good for the rice to mature properly.  
수염이 석 자라도 먹어야 삽니다.  
Even if your beard is three feet long, you have to eat to live.  
그 사람을 실제로 만나 보아야 속이 시원하겠습니다.  
I won't feel relieved until I meet him in person.  
학식이 많은 사람이라야 그 문제를 풀 수 있어요.  
Only a person of great learning can solve that problem.

Note: one can make the pattern in '-어(아, 여)야' more emphatic by adding '-만'.

**Examples :**

비행기나 배를 타야만 제주도에 갈 수 있어요.  
The only way to get to Cheju Island is by airplane or by boat.  
학교에 다녀야만 교양인이 될 수 있는 건 아니지요.  
Of course, it is not the case that the only way to become an educated person is to go to school.  
돈이 있어야만 행세를 하는 세상이니, 원...  
We live in a world where the only way to distinguish oneself is to have money.  
산에 가야만 호랑이를 잡을 수 있다고요?  
You say you have to go into the mountains if you want to catch a tiger?

직업을 가져야만 안정된 생활을 할 수 있어요.  
The only way to lead a stable life is to have a proper job.

㉡ When this pattern is followed by a negative, it signifies that there is no point in doing something; even if one does something, it is of no use.

**Examples :**

너무 늦어서 지금 가봐야 김 선생을 만날 수 없을 겁니다.  
It's too late, so if you go now you won't be able to meet Mr. Kim.  
이 약은 먹어 봐야 별 소용이 없어요.  
There's no point in trying this medicine.  
뛰어 봐야 이미 늦은걸요.  
Run around all you like — it's too late now.  
주머니를 다 털어 봐야 동전밖에 없어요.  
There's no use emptying out my pockets — all I have is small change.  
변명을 해 봐야 오히려 오해만 사게 될 거예요.  
There's no use making excuses — you'll only invite misunderstanding.

-어(아, 여)야 하다

one must ~ should ~ has got to do

This pattern adds a heightened sense of obligation to the meaning of the preceding verb.

**Examples :**

학생은 열심히 공부해야 한다.  
Students should study hard.  
너도 이 약을 먹어야 한다.  
You have to take this medicine, too.  
하루에 여덟 시간은 일해야 합니다.  
I have to work eight hours a day.  
외국에 가려면 여권을 받아야 합니다.  
If you want to go abroad, you have to get a passport.  
사람은 마음이 착해야 합니다.  
People should have good hearts.

Vst-자

as soon as, when; and at once, instantly; when=as a result (of), whereupon; no sooner had one done it, than...

This ending indicates that the action in the second clause follows immediately upon that of the preceding clause. This pattern also occurs with the shape '-자마자'.

**Examples :**

부산에 도착하자마자 친구에게 전화하겠습니다.

I'll call my friend as soon as we arrive in Pusan.

배가 고파서 집에 오자마자 저녁을 먹었습니다.

I was hungry, so I ate supper as soon as I got home.

그 가수가 무대에 나타나자 청중들이 박수를 쳤습니다.

As soon as the singer appeared on the stage, the audience applauded.

까마귀 날자 배 떨어진다.

As soon as the crow takes wing, a pear falls (proverb for 'coincidence').

내가 집을 사자 집 값이 오른 거예요.

No sooner had I bought the house than house prices went up.

**N-이자**

is at one and the same time, is and (simultaneously)

This pattern is essentially the pattern immediately above used with the copula '-이다', and signifies that the preceding and following noun share the same qualities.

**Examples :**

이 사업은 나라의 이익이자 또 자신의 이익이 되는 거예요.

This project is both in the interests of the nation and in your own interest, too.

졸업은 끝이자 시작이란 개념을 갖고 있습니다.

'Graduation' entails the notions of beginning and end.

가정이란 안식처이자 보금자리입니다.

The family is both a place of refuge and a nest.

그 분은 제 스승이자 아버지 같은 분입니다.

For me, he is at once a teacher and like a parent.

처음이자 마지막으로 백두산에 올랐습니다.

We went up Mt. Paektu for the first and last time.

**Vst-자니**

now that one intends to (do) ... (one finds); now that I am about to (do) ... (I realize); when one contemplates (doing) ... (one discovers)

This pattern is an abbreviation from '-고자 하니', and indicates that just as one had the intention to or was about to do the action in the preceding clause, the contents of the following clause in some way modify or constrain that action. The verb of the preceding clause must be an action verb.

**Examples :**

가자니 몸이 아프고, 여관에 묵자니 돈이 없습니다.

I would go, but I don't feel well, and I would stay in an inn, but I have no money.

죽자니 청춘이요, 살자니 고생이요.

I contemplate death, but am [still] in my youth; when I contemplate life, it is [nothing but] suffering.

공부하자니 싫고, 놀자니 마음이 놓이지 않아요.

When I contemplate studying, I have no interest, and when I contemplate having a good time, I can't relax.

부모님께 말씀드리자니 야단 맞을 것 같고, 그렇다고 안 할 수도 없군요.

When I consider telling my parents, I will probably get in trouble, but then again I might not.

남 주자니 아깝고 내가 먹자니 벅차군요.

It seems a shame to give it away, but it is too much for me to contemplate eating on my own.

**Vst-였(았, 였)구나 싶자**

just as one thinks to oneself 'say...!'; just when one realizes that...

This pattern indicates that just when one experiences some emotion about the preceding clause, the contents of the following clause come

about. The pattern in '-거니 싶자' can be used with the same meaning.

**Examples :**

개가 죽었구나 싶자 눈물이 났어요.

Just when I figured the dog was dead, I cried.

앞으로 만날 수도 없겠거니 싶자 눈물이 앞을 가리지 않겠어요?

Just as I came to the realization that we would probably never be able to meet again, I discovered tears blocking my vision.

말을 잘못 했구나 싶자 그 다음 말이 생각나지 않았어요.

Just as I thought to myself I had misspoken, I couldn't think of what to say.

아무도 없이 혼자구나 싶자 갑자기 쓸쓸해졌어요.

When I finally realized I was completely alone, I suddenly felt lonely.

내 차례구나 싶자 막 떨리더군요.

When I realized it was my turn, I started shaking like crazy.

**Vst-어(아, 여) 보았자**

even supposing one tries~tried to do

This pattern combine the exploratory pattern in '-어(아, 여) 보다' with '-자' and signifies that however much one might attempt the contents of the preceding clause, the results will not be up to expectation.

**Examples :**

이 라면 한 그릇 먹어 보았자 간에 기별도 안 갈걸요.

Even if you do eat a bowl of this ramyon, your stomach will hardly notice.

그 사람하고 상대해 보았자 밀천도 건지지 못해요.

If you do business with him, you won't even get your original investment back.

부탁해 보았자 들어 줄 사람도 아닌데 뭘.

Go ahead and ask her to do it — but she's not the type to oblige.

운전을 배워 보았자, 자동차도 없는데 쓸 데 없죠, 뭐.

Even if I learn to drive, what's the use? I don't even have a car...

매달 용돈 얼마 받아 보았자, 버스 타고 차 몇 잔 마시면 다 없어져요.

Even if you get an allowance every month, as soon as you take the bus a few times and have a few cups of coffee, it's all gone.

**Vst-어(아, 여) 보았댜자**

even if one supposes (hypothetically) that one tries~tried to do; don't bother ...ing; don't waste your time...

This pattern signifies that even if, hypothetically, one supposes or grants that the contents of the preceding clause will have a certain result, the negative or contrary result in the following clause will come about. This pattern differs from the pattern above in '-어(아, 여) 보았자' in that it is even more hypothetical.

**Examples :**

월급을 인상해 달라고 버티어 보았댜자 소용없어요.

Even supposing you did insist on getting a raise, it wouldn't be any use.

그 문제에 대해 반대해 보았댜자 듣지도 않을 거예요.

Even supposing you do oppose on that issue, she won't even listen to you.

그 사람에게 충고해 봤댜자 입만 아파요.

Don't waste your time giving him any advice — you'll only get a sore mouth.

뛰어 봤댜자, 그 사람을 따라갈 수는 없어.

Don't bother running after him — you won't be able to keep up.

아무리 머리를 써 봤댜자, 좋은 생각이 나올 것 같지 않군

Let's not waste our brains on this one — looks like we're not going to have any good ideas!

**Vst-지**

(reversative) is~does and + (SEMANTIC) NEGATIVE

This pattern is used when one confirms or strenuously approves of the contents of the preceding clause, but at the same time negates or refutes the contents of the following clause, and wishes to juxtapose and highlight these two opposing facts. The following clause often contains a rhetorical question for added emphasis.

**Examples :**

넌 너지 내가 아니야.  
 You're you — not me!  
 콩 심은 데 콩 나지 팥이 날까?  
 You sow black beans and you reap black beans — why would you get red beans? (Proverb: 'You reap what you sow?')  
 그만하면 됐지 더 바랄 게 있어요?  
 Surely that is enough — what more could you wish for?  
 그는 나이만 먹었지 하는 것이 아직 어려워.  
 It's only in age that she's mature — her behaviour is still childish.  
 말만 잘 하지 실천에 옮기질 못해.  
 He just talks a good talk but he can't put it into practice.

### 3. Adnominal Endings (관형사형 어미)

Adnominal endings attach to verb stems and convert these into a new part-of-speech — adnominals. Adnominals modify nouns. Another function of adnominal endings is to express tense and aspect meanings; these functions and meanings differ slightly depending on the type of verb base.

〈Figure 20〉 Adnominal Endings (관형사형 어미)

Classification 구분	Action Verbs 동작동사	Descriptive Verbs 상태동사	'있다' exist	'-이다' Copula
Present (Processive) 현재 (지속)	-는	-(으)ㄴ	-는	-ㄴ
Past (Perfect) 과거 (완료)	-(으)ㄴ			
Future (Conjecture) 미래 (추측)	-(으)ㄹ	-(으)ㄹ	-을	-ㄹ
Past (Retrospective) 과거 (회상)	-던	-던	-던	-던

#### AVst-는 processive modifier

This modifier attaches exclusively to action verbs, and indicates that the action is continuous, ongoing or in progress.

**Examples :**

저기 가는 분이 이 선생입니다.  
 That person walking over there is Mr. Lee.  
 그 일은 어느 비 오는 날에 일어났습니다.  
 It happened one rainy day.  
 이 책이 요즘 많이 팔리는 것입니다.  
 This book is selling quite a lot of copies recently.  
 한국말을 배우는 사람이 늘어갑니다.  
 [The number of] people learning Korean is increasing.  
 저기 보이는 산이 남산입니다.  
 That mountain you can see over there is Namsan.

#### Vst-(으)ㄴ past ~ adjectival modifier

This modifier has different meanings depending on the type of verb it attaches to. Attached to an action verb, it expresses prior completion of the action, and attached to a descriptive verb or to the copula '-이다' it expresses a current state or fact.

**Examples :**

경찰이 잃은 물건을 찾아 주었습니다.  
 The policeman found the item we had lost for us.  
 어제 쓴 편지를 우체국에 가서 부쳤어요.  
 I went to the Post Office and mailed the letter I wrote yesterday.  
 그 분은 마음이 좋은 사람입니다.  
 She is a person with a good heart.  
 겨울이 되면 흰 눈이 내립니다.  
 When winter comes, white snow falls.  
 이 사람은 내 친구인 김 영수입니다.

This is Mr. Kim who is my friend.

Vst-(으)ㄹ

future~prospective modifier

This modifier expresses an action or state which has not yet been realized.

**Examples :**

비가 오니까 쓰고 갈 우산을 준비해야 합니다.

It's raining, so we have to get together some umbrellas [to take with us].

그 사람은 입을 옷도 없고 먹을 것도 없어요.

She has no clothes to wear and nothing to eat.

이번 주말에 여행 갈 계획을 세우고 있습니다.

I'm putting together a plan to go on a trip this weekend.

어머님 말씀이 조금도 틀릴 것이 없어요.

There is nothing ['bound to be'] wrong in what mother says.

저녁에 먹을 음식을 준비하겠습니다.

I'll prepare the food we're going to eat for supper.

Vst-던

retrospective modifier

□ This modifier expresses recollection of a state in the past, or of a repeated, habitual or uncompleted action in the past.

**Examples :**

큰 소리로 울던 아이가 갑자기 울음을 그쳤습니다.

The child who was crying so loudly suddenly stopped crying.

여기에 살던 사람이 어제 이사했습니다.

The person who used to live here moved yesterday.

여름에 푸르던 나뭇잎이 노랗게 단풍이 들었어요.

The leaves which were so green in the summer have turned to their autumn yellow.

이 음악은 내가 자주 들던 것입니다.

This music is something I used to listen to often.

여기 내가 마시던 커피 누가 가져 갔나요?

Who took the coffee I was [just] drinking here?

② When this modifier attaches to the past tense marker in '-았(았, 였)', it gives clearer expression to the notion of 'completeness' and also expresses experience.

**Examples :**

어제 만났던 사람을 오늘 또 만났어요.

Today I met again the person I [had] met yesterday.

며칠 전에 갔던 집인데 도무지 찾을 수가 없어요.

I went there just a few days ago, but I just can't seem to find the place.

코가 비틀어지도록 술을 마셨던 적이 있어요.

There have been times when I drank myself silly ['to the point where my nose got crooked'].

예뻐던 얼굴에 이제 주름살이 생겼어요.

Wrinkles have appeared now on her once pretty face.

3년 전에 헤어졌던 친구에게서 전화가 왔습니다.

I had a phonecall from a friend I parted with three years ago.

#### 4. Nominalizer Endings (명사형 어미)

Nominalizer endings convert verbs into noun forms which then behave like any other noun in a sentence. Regardless of verb type, there are two main nominalizer endings, one in '-(으)ㄹ' and the other in '-기'. However, since 'summative' '-기' and 'substantive' '-(으)ㄹ' have different meanings, and participate in different patterns, it is important to examine each separately in connection with the types of structures they help create.

##### 1) Summative (Vst-기)

This nominalizer attaches to verb stems to lend them noun-like functions, but still allows the verbs to retain their 'action' semantics. The



summative '-기' is much more versatile than the substantive '-(으)ㄴ'. Depending on its relationship to the verb which follows it, the '-기'-form can attach various particles and play the role of subject, object or adverbial in a larger clause; it can also combine with yet other elements and convert to some other ending or else be deployed as an adnominal expression.

#### Vst기가

In this pattern, '-기' takes the nominative particle '-가' and plays the role of a subject for verbs like '좋다' *good, nice, fine*, '싫다' *dislike*, '편하다' *convenient*, '불편하다' *inconvenient*, '쉽다' *easy*, '어렵다' *difficult*, '재미있다' *fun*, '-와/과 같다' *is like*, etc.

##### Examples :

외국에서 살기가 재미있을 것 같다.

It seems like living abroad would be fun.

걸기가 매우 편해요.

Walking is really comfortable. Or (of a pair of shoes): These are really comfortable to walk in.

회기가 눈과 같아요.

It's as white as snow. [Lit. : Its whiteness is like snow.]

아이들에겐 활동하기가 편한 옷이 제일 좋아요.

Clothes which are easy to run around in are the best for kids.

맵지 않아서 먹기가 좋아요.

These are good to eat because they're not [too] spicy.

#### Vst-기(가) 쉽다

In this pattern, '-기(가)' is followed by the descriptive verb '쉽다' *easy; likely to*, and the overall structure expresses a probability or likelihood: '아마 그럴 것이다' *will probably ~ likely be the case*. Note that '-기' can attach to the past tense marker '-었(았, 였)' in this structure, too.

##### Examples :

이 선생은 지금 이 시간엔 집에 없기가 쉬워요.

Right now at this point in time Mr. Lee is unlikely to be at home. ['is

likely to not be at home']

그 분의 출국 일자엔 연기되기가 쉽습니다.

The date of his departure from the country is likely to be delayed.

그는 오래 집을 떠나 있어서 그 사실을 모르기가 쉽습니다.

He has been away from home for a long time, so is unlikely to know that ['fact'].

지금쯤 그들은 신혼여행을 떠났기가 쉬워.

In all likelihood, they have [already] left for their honeymoon by now.

사장님은 해외에 나갔기가 쉬워요.

The company president has likely gone overseas.

'-기' can also combine easily with other particles.

##### Examples :

감기가 빨리 낫기를 바랍니다.

I hope your cold gets better soon.

그 분이 착한 사람이기를 바랬습니다.

I was hoping she would be a good person.

일하기를 좋아하는 사람도 많아요.

There are also plenty of people who like to work.

오늘은 소풍가기에는 적당하지 않군요.

Today is not very appropriate for going on a picnic.

듣기 좋은 말이 반드시 옳은 말은 아니죠.

Just because it sounds good doesn't mean it's right, you know.

#### Vst-기는

In this pattern, '-기' is followed by the auxiliary particle '-는' with its contrastive meaning, and followed by the verb '하다' to create the structure '-기는 하다'. Alternatively, the same verb can be repeated: 'Vst<sub>1</sub>-기는 Vst<sub>1</sub>-다'. The function of this pattern is to acknowledge (sometimes grudgingly) or concede the contents of the preceding clause.

##### Examples :

그 분을 만나기는 하겠습니다.

I'll meet him [at least; though I may not do anything else with him].

한국에 오기는 16년 전에 왔지만, 한국말은 아직도 잘 모릅니다.  
As for coming to Korea, I came here 16 years ago, but I still don't know Korean.

질이 좋긴 하지만 너무 비싼데요.

The quality is OK, but it's too expensive.

열심히 하기는 했지만 성과가 없습니다.

True, I worked hard, but I have no results to show for it.

먹기는 먹겠지만 소화가 될지 모르겠어요.

OK, I'll eat it, but I don't know if I'll be able to digest it.

#### Vst-기는 커녕

far from doing ~ being (on the contrary)

This pattern attaches '-커녕' to the '-기'-form, and functions to negate, emphatically, the contents of the preceding clause so as to lend prominence to the following clause.

#### Examples :

주말에 쉬기는 커녕 밥 먹을 틈도 없이 일했어요.

I worked so hard over the weekend, I didn't have a spare moment to eat, let alone rest.

돈을 벌기는 커녕 있는 돈까지 다 써 버렸어요.

Far from earning money, I even spent all the money I had with me.

날씨가 좋기는 커녕 천둥까지 쳤어요.

The weather was far from nice — it even thundered.

병이 낫기는 커녕 더 심해졌대요.

Far from getting better, his ailment got worse.

그 남자를 좋아하기는 커녕 만나 주지도 않는답니다.

Like him? Are you kidding — they say she won't even meet him.

#### Vst-기는(요)

What do you mean, "..."? Surely you can't be serious when you say "..."?!

In this pattern, the form in -기는(요) functions as a final ending, and is used to express humility in response to a compliment or praise from

one interlocutor. More generally, it is used when one is unable to share or concur with the opinion of one interlocutor. The final (요) is used for politeness.

#### Examples :

기억력이 좋으신데요?

좋기는요. 저도 자주 잊어 버려요.

Say, you have a good memory!

Not really. I forget things frequently, too.

시장 물건이 싸지요?

싸기는요. 백화점 물건값과 비슷해요.

Things at the market are cheap, aren't they?

Cheap? They're almost the same as department store prices.

그 사람 부지런히 일하죠?

일하기는요. 옆사람과 얘기만 하고 있던데요.

She works quite hard, doesn't she?

Are you kidding? All she did was talk with the person beside her.

김 선생은 떠났습니까?

떠나기는요. 이제야 떠날 준비를 하고 있어요.

Has Mr. Kim left?

Are you kidding? He's just barely getting ready now.

점심을 드셨어요?

먹기는요. 아직 30분은 기다려야 해요.

Have you had lunch?

I wish — I have to wait another 30 minutes.

#### Vst-기도

does ~ is indeed (really); sort of does (but then again, doesn't); does ~ is also [with negative; does ~ is not either]; really is ~ does (intensive); does ~ is both A and B; sometimes is ~ does and sometimes not

This pattern combines 'Vst-기' with the particle '-도' in its meaning of '역시' *sure enough; indeed; and also; even*, followed by '하다'.

#### Examples :

그 물건은 비싸기도 하지만 귀하기도 해.

That item is expensive, but it is also rare.

그 분의 말이 그럴듯하기도 해요.

What he says sort of makes sense [but then again, I'm not sure].

그는 돈을 벌기도 잘하고 쓰기도 잘합니다.

He earns lots of money, and he also spends lots.

그 영화는 사람을 웃기기도 하고 울리기도 했습니다.

That film makes people [both] cry and laugh.

과자를 만들어 먹기도 하고 사서 먹기도 해요.

Some of our cookies we make ourselves, and others we buy.

#### Vst-기만

does nothing but; [with ‘-(으)면’] no sooner does, than ...; as soon as

...

This pattern combines ‘Vst-기’ with the auxiliary particle ‘-만’ in its meaning of only, solely, exclusively, followed by ‘하다’.

#### Examples :

그 분은 날 보기만 하면 극장에 가자고 졸라요.

As soon she sees me, she pesters me to go the cinema. Or: No sooner does she see me, than...

술을 마시기만 하면 배가 아픕니다.

As soon as I drink [some] alcohol, I get a stomachache. Or: No sooner do I drink some alcohol, than ...]

그가 일을 시작하기만 한다면 제가 돕겠어요.

If he would just start working, I would help.

그 놈은 놀기만 하지, 도무지 책상 앞에 앉지 않아요.

All he does is goof around — he just won't sit down at his desk.

아주머니는 듣기만 하실 뿐, 아무 대답이 없으십니다.

All she does is just listen — she doesn't say a word in reply.

#### Vst-기에

for ~in~by~from doing, to do; as, because; as, in accordance with; such that, so that (followed by a question doubting the adequacy of the reason)

This pattern combines ‘Vst-기’ with the adverbial particle ‘-에’ to

create an adverbial phrase which expresses either the standard or basis for judgement of the following clause, or presents the reason or cause for the following clause. In the latter case, the combination ‘-기에’ behaves like a single, composite ending, and can be replaced with the shape ‘-길래’ with no change in meaning. (see page 328).

#### Examples :

일을 하기에 바빠, 누가 들어 오는지도 몰랐어요.

[Being] busy at work, I had no idea somebody was entering the room.

아직 결혼하기에는 이른 나이다.

She is still at an age when it is too young to get married.

혼자 먹기에는 너무 많군요.

It's too much for me to eat all by myself!

친구가 앓고 있기에 병문안을 갔다 왔어요.

As my friend is sick, I went to pay a sick call to him.

친구가 취직을 하고 싶어하길래 알아봐 주었지요.

As my friend wants to find work, I did some asking around for her.

#### Vst-ㄴ/는다기에

because they say that ...; because one hears or is given to understand that...

This pattern is originally a combination of the indirect speech pattern in ‘-ㄴ/는다고 하-’ plus the summative nominalizer ‘-기’, via deletion of the ‘-고 하-’.

#### Examples :

좋은 사람이라기에 만나 보았을 뿐입니다.

All I did was meet her because I had heard she was a good person.

그 친구가 내일 여행을 떠나자기에 그러기로 약속했습니다.

Seeing as my friend was suggesting we go on a trip tomorrow, I agreed to do so.

이사 간다기에 도우러 왔습니다.

I heard that you are moving, and so came over to help.

한국에 왜 왔냐기에 공부하러 왔다고 했습니다.

When he asked me why I had come to Korea, I answered that I had come

to study.

사업에 투자해 보라기에 했더니 결과가 괜찮더군요.

At his insistence, I invested in business, and the results were not bad!

#### Vst-기로

decides to do, makes up one's mind to do; arranges to do; fixes  
~arranges it so that; promises~agrees to do

This pattern combines 'Vst-기' with the adverbial particle '-(으)로' followed by a verb like '하다' *decide*, '정하다' *decide, determine, fix [upon], settle on*, '작정하다' *decide, determine, intend to*, '결심하다' *resolve to, make up one's mind to*, '마음먹다' *make up one's mind to, determine to*, etc., to indicate a course of action chosen by the subject.

#### Examples :

신혼 여행을 제주도로 가기로 했습니다.

We've arranged to go to Cheju Island for our honeymoon.

남의 흉은 보지 않기로 마음 먹었어요.

I've resolved not to criticize others.

술 담배는 끊기로 결심했습니다.

I've made up my mind to quit smoking and drinking.

오늘부터 규칙적인 생활을 하기로 작정했어요.

I've decided to live an orderly life from today on.

늘 성실하게 살기로 결심했어요.

I have made up my mind to always live sincerely.

#### Vst-기란

that is (called) ...; as for (the one that is called)...

This pattern sets up the theme or topic to be commented on the following clause, and is a sort of glorified equivalent of the topic marker '-은/-는'. In origin, this pattern is an abbreviation of '-기+- (이)라고 하는 것은'.

#### Examples :

새로운 일을 시작하기란 여간 어렵지 않아요.

Starting a new project is by no means easy.

상대방의 입장에 서서 생각하기란 그리 쉬운 일이 아니에요.

Standing in your counterpart's shoes and understanding his position is not an easy thing.

일류 대학에 입학하기란 하늘의 별 따기처럼 힘들어요.

Getting into a first-class university is as difficult as plucking the stars from the sky.

늘 기계적인 생활을 하기란 상당히 피곤한 일입니다.

Always living a mechanical life is quite tiresome.

혼자서 살기란 여간 힘든 일이 아니다.

Living alone is quite difficult.

#### Vst-기야

only being~doing; if it is nothing more (or) other than; of course  
doing~being, to be sure

This pattern combines 'Vst-기' with the emphatic particle '-야' and functions to emphasize the meaning of the verb. Although this combination is usually followed by the verb '하다' to create a new pattern in '-기야 하다', one can also repeat the original verb instead of using a form of '하다'. Overall, these structures emphatically concede or acknowledge the contents of the preceding clause, but set up a following clause with divergent or contrary content.

#### Examples :

이 물건이 좋기야 하지만, 값이 좀 비싸군요.

Sure, this item is nice, but it sure is a bit expensive.

이 수학문제를 배우기야 배웠지만, 잊어 버렸어요.

Sure, I learned this math problem all right, but I've forgotten it.

이 방이 넓기야 하지만, 식구에 비해 작은 편이죠.

Sure, this room is a good size, but compared to the size of our family, it's a bit on the small side.

전 직원이 제시간에 출근을 하기야 합니다.

All our employees come to work on time (without fail).

내용을 알기야 알지만, 남에게 알리고 싶지 않습니다.

I understand the contents just fine; it's just that I don't want to inform

others about them.

**Vst-길래**

**with the fact of doing; as, since, because**

This pattern is used to signify that the contents of the preceding clause are the reason or grounds for the following clause. The subject of the following clause is usually first person. This pattern is interchangeable with '-기에'. (see page 324).

**Examples :**

그의 주머니에 돈이 없길래 넣어 주었어.

Since there was no money in his pocket, I put some in.

그 사람이 주소를 물길래 가르쳐 주었습니다.

Seeing as he asked for my address, I gave it to him.

다리가 아프길래 쉬었다가 올라갔습니다.

As my leg hurt, I took a rest on the way up.

그 사람이 손을 흔들길래 나도 손을 흔들었을 뿐이야.

All I did was wave back because he waved at me.

이 편지가 책상 위에 있길래 펴 보았어요.

This letter was sitting on the desk, so I opened it.

**Vst-기로서니**

**even though indeed, it is true indeed that ... but ; even though~if, even given~admitted that, it is true that ... but; however much A might be the case, B...**

This pattern is used to indicate that while one understands the facts or situation explained in the preceding clause, there is still a part that one cannot fully comprehend and wishes to make more concrete in the following clause. Note that this pattern can function in the same meaning with just '-기로'.

**Examples :**

달빛이 밝기로서니 햇빛만큼 밝지는 못하다.

However bright the moon may be, it can never be as bright as the sun.

아무리 그를 좋아한다기로서니 나보다 좋아하진 않을 거야.

However much you may like him, you probably don't like him as much as I do. (Or: ...you probably don't like him as much as you like me.)

아무리 바쁘기로서니 편지 쓸 시간이 없단 말입니까?

No matter how busy you're, are you telling me that you don't have time to write a letter.

돈이 없기로 남의 물건을 어찌 훔친담.

How can you steal someone else's things just because you have no money?

아무리 기분이 안 좋기로서니 남을 때려요?

I don't care how lousy a mood you're in — since when do go hitting me?

### **The Structure in 'Vst-기 N(이/가) 없다**

This pattern is mostly used to express the severity or magnitude of a descriptive verb. The exact meaning of individual sub-patterns varies depending on the noun used in the 'N' position.

**Vst-기 그지없다**

**is extraordinarily~extremely...**

**Examples :**

홀로 서 있는 나무가 쓸쓸하기 그지없어요.

A tree standing alone is lonesome beyond compare.

타향에서의 생활은 외롭기 그지없어요.

Life in an alien land is unbelievably lonely.

설악의 설경은 아름답기 그지없다고들 합니다.

They say that the sight of snow on Mt. Sorak is incredibly beautiful.

인간의 마음이란 간사하기 그지없습니다.

The human mind is extraordinarily deceitful.

절간에서 들려오는 목탁 소린 처량하기 그지없어.

The sound of the monk clapper from the temple is incredibly melancholy.

**Vst-기 짝이 없다**

**is unparalleled in ...=(is) ever so; is uncomparably...**

This pattern signifies that the contents of the preceding descriptive verb are extreme.

**Examples :**

그 분의 생각은 답답하기 짝이 없습니다.

His way of thinking is incredibly confined and stuffy.

저 때문에 일이 안 되어서 부끄럽기 짝이 없습니다.

I'm so desperately embarrassed that things didn't work out all because of me.

그는 심겁기 짝이 없는 사람입니다.

He is an incredibly dry person.

할 말을 못해서 분하기 짝이 없어요.

I'm absolutely furious that I wasn't able to say what I had to say.

그 골목은 더럽기 짝이 없더군.

That alley is filthy beyond belief.

**Vst-기 한이 없다**

is ... beyond limit = (is) ever so; is uncomparably...

In this emphatic pattern, '한' is the Sino-Korean word meaning *limit, limitation*. Thus, the literal meaning of the pattern is *has a certain quality in unlimited quantity*.

**Examples :**

아들을 다시 만나게 되어 기쁘기 한이 없어요.

I am overjoyed to see my son again.

그 책은 어렵기 한이 없다고들 합니다.

They say that book is astoundingly difficult.

이 가방에 무엇이 들었는지 무겁기 한이 없군요.

I don't know what's in it, but this bag is unbelievably heavy!

그 분의 갑작스런 죽음은 슬프기 한이 없습니다.

Her sudden death is incredibly sad.

형제간의 싸움은 부끄럽기 한이 없는 일이에요.

Fights between siblings are a most embarrassing thing.

**The Structure in 'Vst-기 N-이다'**

Vst-기(가) 일쑤(이)다

is always doing (something unpleasant); makes a habit of doing

This pattern can be paraphrased as '자주 그렇게 한다' *frequently does so* or '그렇게 하는 횟수가 아주 많다' *does it on a great many occasions*, and refers to a not entirely desirable action which occurs repeatedly.

**Examples :**

어린 아이들은 걷다가 넘어지기가 일쑤다.

Little kids frequently fall down when walking.

비가 오다 그치면 버스에 우산을 두고 내리기가 일쑤입니다.

It is quite common for people to leave their umbrellas on buses if it rains and then stops.

그는 공부한다고 책상에 앉으면, 졸기가 일쑤예요.

More often than not, he dozes off when he sits down at his desk to study.

그에게 집을 보라고 하면, 잠을 자기 일쑤입니다.

If you ask him to keep an eye on the house, more often than not he falls asleep.

점심때는 찬밥 먹기가 일쑤지.

For lunch I mostly end up eating cold rice.

**Vst-기 마련이다**

can't help doing ~ being; inevitably does ~ is; does as a natural matter of course

This pattern can be paraphrased as '그렇게 하는 것이 당연하다' *doing such-and-such is to be expected ~ is a matter of course*. This pattern can also be used with the shape '-게 마련이다', and is mainly used to discuss results which come about due to natural forces, as opposed to artificial forces or human agency.

**Examples :**

사람은 누구나 죽기 마련입니다.

All humans are destined to die.

나쁜 짓을 하면 벌을 받기 마련이지요.

If you commit a bad deed, you are bound to be punished.

가을이 되면 단풍이 들기 마련이야.

When autumn comes, it is time for the trees to change colors.

계오르면 가난하게 마련이에요.

Laziness begets poverty.

자주 만나면 사이가 가까워지게 마련입니다.

If you meet someone often enough, you are bound to grow closer.

### Cases of Fossilized Nouns

In the following examples, a nominalized form in summative '-기' has lost all its verbal qualities and has become fossilized as a derived noun — it functions like any other noun. Most cases of this type are built on action verbs, but there are exceptions.

#### **Examples :**

쓰기는 쉬운데 말하기는 어려운 편이지요.

Writing is easy, but speaking is rather difficult, of course.

김유신은 어렸을 때부터 말타기와 활쏘기를 배웠습니다.

Kim Yusin learned horseback riding and archery from an early age.

씨름의 기술 중에는 들어메치기라는 것이 있어요.

Among the techniques of Korean wrestling there is something called the shoulder throw.

그 사람의 성공은 많은 사람들의 본보기가 되었습니다.

His success has become a model for many others.

이번 내기에 져서 점심을 사게 되었어요.

I lost the last bet so I have to buy lunch.

### Proverbs and Other Conventionalized Expressions

There are many examples of proverbs and conventionalized expressions handed down from ancient times which are based on nominalized phrases in '-기'.

#### **Examples :**

누워서 떡먹기.

[It's] easy as pie. (It's a piece of cake). [Lit. : It is a case of lying down and eating ricecake.]

쇠 귀에 경읽기.

[It's] like talking to a brick wall. [Lit. : It is a case of reciting sutras to a cow.]

엎드려 절받기.

[It's] sucking up. [Lit. : It is a case of prostrating oneself so as to be bowed to.]

소 잃고 외양간 고치기.

[It's] fixing the barn door after you've lost the cow.

땅 짚고 헤엄치기.

[It's] a no-brainer. [Lit. : It is a case of swimming while holding onto shore].

### Adnominal Usages

In another category of usage, '-기' functions adnominally before nouns like '진' before or '때문' [be]cause, reason. Finally, in yet another structure, '-기' attaches to a verb base in front of '위해서' for the sake of ... [-ing].

Vst-기 전에

before doing, before one does (did, will do)

This pattern indicates that the following action comes about before the preceding action.

#### **Examples :**

김 선생이 오기 전에 일을 끝내야겠어요.

I'll have to finish [the work] before Mr. Kim comes.

식사를 하기 전에 기도합니다.

We pray before meals.

열매를 맺기 전에 꽃이 핍니다.

The flowers bloom before the fruits ripen.

결혼하기 전에 몇 년간 교제를 했습니까?

How long did you know each other before you got married?

말을 하기 전에 생각을 많이 했습니다.

I gave it a great deal of thought before saying anything.

Vst-기 때문에

because of doing~being, because it is~does

This pattern indicates that the following action comes about because

or due to the preceding action.

**Examples :**

머리가 아프기 때문에 좀 쉬어야겠어요.

I better rest for a while because my head hurts.

아침을 너무 많이 먹었기 때문에 점심은 먹고 싶지 않아요.

I don't feel like eating lunch because I ate too much at breakfast.

그 사람은 내 친구이기 때문에 같이 지내고 있습니다.

I'm spending time with her because she is my friend.

돈이 모자랐기 때문에 값을 깎아야 했습니다.

I had to haggle because I didn't have enough money.

그 사람은 범인이 아니기 때문에 벌을 받지 않았어요.

He wasn't punished because he wasn't the perpetrator.

**Vst-기 위해서/위하여**

in order to, to the end that, so as to, so that, for the purpose of ...  
ing, with the intention of, with a view to

This pattern indicates that the following action is carried out with goal or purpose of achieving the preceding action.

**Examples :**

공부하기 위해서 학교에 다닙니다.

I'm going to school in order to study.

먹기 위해 삽니까, 살기 위해 먹습니까?

Do we live in order to eat, or do we eat in order to live?

미국에 유학 가기 위해서 영어를 배우고 있습니다.

I'm learning English so as to go to the United States to study.

건강해지기 위해서 매일 아침 운동을 합니다.

I exercise every morning in order to get healthy.

기분 전환하기 위해서 술을 한잔합니다.

Let's have a beer together for a change of mood.

**2) Substantive Vst-(으)ㄴ**

Whereas the nominalizer ending in '-기' expresses a generalized or

expected fact based on some action or state, nominalized forms in '-(으)ㄴ' have somewhat different semantics: they indicate that an action has already been decided, fixed or concretized, and already exists at the present moment or scene. Like '-기', the nominalizer in '-(으)ㄴ' can combine with various particles to play different roles in a sentence like, subject, object, or adverbial, but it is not used as much as '-기', and in many cases serves as a substitute for or equivalent to '-(으)ㄴ 것' the [past or completed] fact that.

**Vst-(으)ㄴ이**

the act ~ fact of doing ~ being; the process or result of doing

In this pattern, 'Vst-(으)ㄴ이' combines with the subject particle '-이' and functions as a subject; the following verb is typically an evaluative one like '분명하다' *it is clear that*, '당연하다' *it stands to reason that*, '이상하다' *it is strange that*, '옳다' *it is right that*, '확실하다' *it is certain that*, etc.

**Examples :**

그가 외국으로 떠났음이 분명해요.

It's clear that he gone abroad.

죄인이 벌을 받음은 당연합니다.

It stands to reason that criminals get punished.

약속을 지키지 않음은 옳지 못한 일이지요.

Not keeping one's promises is not right.

그가 집에 없음은 확실합니다.

It is certain that he is not at home.

그 사람이 아직도 살아 있음이 사실이군요.

So, it's a fact then that he is still alive!

**Vst-(으)ㄴ을**

the act ~ fact of doing ~ being; the process or result of doing

In this pattern, 'Vst-(으)ㄴ' combines with the object particle '-을' and functions as an object; the following verb is typically one like '알다' *know that*, '모르다' *not know that, not be aware that*, '발표하다' *announce that*,



'지적하다' *point out that*, '깨닫다' *realize that*, '주장하다' *claim ~ advocate that*, '전하다' *relate that, convey that*, etc.

**Examples :**

그 범인은 죄가 없음을 주장했습니다.

The criminal claimed his innocence.

그는 사람들이 자기를 미워함을 잘 알고 있었지요.

Of course, he knew that people resented him.

그 회사에서 새로운 상품이 개발되었음을 발표했습니다.

The company announced that it had developed a new product.

김 선생은 한국말 발음이 어려움을 여러 번 지적하셨습니다.

Mr. Kim pointed out numerous times that Korean pronunciation was difficult.

그는 자신이 죄인임을 깨닫지 못합니다.

He just doesn't realize his guilt [that he is a criminal].

**Vst-(으)ㄴ데**

**contrary to (as opposed to) ~ with reference to ~ in spite of the doing (or being), etc.**

In this structure, 'Vst-(으)ㄴ데' combines with the adverbial case particle '-에' and a following verb like '반하여' *contrary to (as opposed to) the doing ~ being*, '대하여' *with reference to the doing ~ being*, '-도 불구하고' *in spite of the doing ~ being*, etc., to create several different patterns.

**Examples :**

열심히 노력했음에도 불구하고 결과는 좋지 않았어.

In contrast to the efforts we put in, the results were not good.

그가 정보 계통의 사람임에는 틀림없다.

There is no question about it — he must be an intelligence agency type.

오늘의 아픔도 세월이 지남에 따라 잊을 수 있으리라.

You will forget today's pains, too, with the passing of time.

성적이 부진함에 대하여 무슨 변명이 그리 많나?

What with all the excuses in reference to your lack of progress in your grades?

그 아이는 여러 번 충고를 받았음에도 불구하고 또 거짓말을 했어요.

Despite having been admonished several times, that child lied again.

**Use of '-(으)ㄴ데' as a Sentence-Final Ending**

The ending in '-(으)ㄴ데' can also function as a sentence-final ending, in which case it has the meaning of broadcasting some message to many people. Martin calls this the 'Documentary Style'.

**Examples :**

이곳에는 들어갈 수 없음. (공고문)

No entry. [public announcement ~ poster]

그 사건은 사실이 아님을 공고함. (게시문)

I hereby give public notice that the incident in question is a fabrication. [posted notice]

오늘은 할머니 댁에 갔음. (일기문)

Today I went to grandmother's house. [diary]

성적이 우수하여 상장을 수여함. (상장)

This certificate is awarded in recognition of excellent academic achievement. [certificate of merit ~ prize testimonial]

김영수 올림. (편지)

Yours Sincerely, ... [in letters]

**Examples of Lexicalized '-(으)ㄴ데'**

In some cases, examples of verb stem plus '-(으)ㄴ데' have fossilized as nouns, and lost all their verbal qualities.

걷다	→ 걸음	자다	→ 잠
walk	pace, gait	sleep	sleep
웃다	→ 웃음	기쁘다	→ 기쁨
smile, laugh	smile, laughter	happy	happiness
아프다	→ 아픔	즐겁다	→ 즐거움
hurt	pain	enjoyable	enjoyment
울다	→ 울음	슬프다	→ 슬픔
cry	crying	sad	sadness
죽다	→ 죽음		
die	death		

**Examples :**

너무 오랜만에 만나서 기쁨을 감추지 못했습니다.

We met after such a long time that I was unable to conceal my joy.

우린 다른 사람의 기쁨이나 슬픔을 잘 모르면서 살아 갑니다.

We carry on living, ignorant of the happiness and sorrow of others.

어젯밤 꿈 속에서 어머니를 보았지요.

I saw my mother in my dreams last night.

어렵지만 그래도 즐거움을 느끼며 하루하루를 보냅니다.

It's not easy, but still we carry on from one day to the next, enjoying what we can.

아마 사람들은 모두 죽음을 두려워할 겁니다.

Probably all of us are afraid of death.

**Chapter Fourteen****Auxiliary Verbs**

Auxiliary verbs are verbs whose original meaning and function as independent verbs has become bleached or changed, and then fixed in some new, more restricted and more strictly grammatical meaning. They are always used in conjunction with a preceding main verb and one specific suffix or ending, and 'help' (hence the term 'auxiliary' the main verb express a particular nuance or aspect. Auxiliary verbs in Korean can be classified according to the scheme in Figure 21 below.

〈Figure 21〉 Auxiliary Verbs (보조용언)

Type	Forms
Progressive	가다, 오다, 있다, 들다
Terminative	내다, 나다, 버리다, 말다, 빠지다, 치우다
Donatory	주다, 드리다
Exploratory	보다
Iterative	대다
Retentive	놓다, 두다, 가지다
Desiderative	싶다
Stative	있다, 지다
Negative	말다, 앓다, 아니하다
Inability	못하다
Periphrastic patterns with 하다	-게 하다, -어(아, 여)야 하다, -기는 하다, -(으)ㄴ/는 체하다, -(으)ㄴ/는 양하다,

	- (으)ㄴ/는 척하다, - (으)ㄴ 듯하다, - (으)ㄴ 뻔하다, - (으)ㄴ 만하다, -곤 하다, -는가 하 다, - (으)ㄴ까 하다
--	--

## 1. Progressive Auxiliary Verbs (진행의 보조용언)

-어(아, 여) 가다/오다

-어(아, 여) 가다 : gradually (goes off doing); keeps growing~becoming (getting to be), goes on, progressively; continues to do (from now on), keeps (on) doing

-어(아, 여) 오다 : gradually (goes in doing); comes up (along); starts (has started) becoming~doing; has~had been doing

In their original meanings, the verbs '가다' and '오다' express a shift in location—they are verbs of motion, of going and coming. '가다' expresses motion away from the speaker, and '오다' expresses motion toward the speaker. When deployed as auxiliary verbs, they signify that an action is carried out continuously and repeatedly over a period of time. In keeping with the original meaning of these verbs, the patterns '-어(아, 여) 오다' and '-어(아, 여) 가다' mean 'continuous performance of an action over time in the past as one comes toward the 'present and continuous' performance of an action over time into the future (away from the present)' respectively.

### Examples :

그 일이 잘 되어 간다.

That project is moving along nicely.

문제를 거의 다 풀어 갑니다.

I'm almost finished solving the problem.

버스가 이쪽으로 달려 옵니다.

The bus is racing toward us in this direction.

저는 그 할머니를 어머니처럼 모셔 왔어요.

I have cared for that old lady like my own mother.

앞으로는 혼자 힘으로 살아 갈 겁니다.

From now on I am going to carry on my life with my own strength.

The following examples look like instances of the auxiliary verb construction above, but are actually cases of two main verbs concatenated, where each verb has its own independent, original meaning

### Examples :

바빠서 숙제를 해 오지 못했어요.

I wasn't able to ['do and'] bring my homework because I was too busy.

음료수 좀 사 올까요?

Shall I buy some beverages ['and then come back?']

이 대화는 다 외워 오세요.

Please memorize this dialogue before you come back. ['please come having memorized this dialogue.']

땅에 떨어진 신문 좀 집어 오세요.

Could you please pick up the newspapers lying on the ground? ['please come, having picked up...']

옆집 아주머니가 떡을 해 왔습니다.

The lady next door made us some ricecakes. ['...came, having made ricecakes...']

-고 있다

is doing; is~continues to be in a (changed) state

This pattern expresses an action in progress, in mid-course or mid-process, and is restricted to action verbs. When the subject is an esteemed person, honorification is achieved by changing '있다' to '계시다': '-고 계시다'. (See page 196).

### Examples :

지금 무엇을 하고 계십니까?

What are you ['in the process of'] doing right now?

누구를 기다리고 있군요.

Oh, I see you're waiting for somebody!

저는 그 시간에 잠을 자고 있었어요.

At that time I was sleeping.

일을 하고 있을 때가 가장 행복해요.

I am happiest when I am working.

내가 빨래할 때 뭘 하고 있었어?

What were you doing when I was doing the laundry?

-(으)러 가다/오다

(moves) for the purpose of, in order to

This pattern combines a verb of motion with the connective ending '-(으)러' meaning *for the purpose of ... ing* and expresses an intention, object or goal. This pattern is used only with action verbs. (See page 97).

**Examples :**

그 사람은 도서관에 책을 빌리러 갔다.

He went to the library to borrow a book.

너 여기에 누구 만나러 왔니?

Whom have you come to meet here? (Or: Have you come here to meet somebody?)

아침에는 일하러 가는 사람들로 지하철이 만원이에요.

The subway is full in the mornings with people on their way to work.

그 학생은 학교에 공부하러 온 게 아니에요.

That student did not come to school to study.

나는 점심을 먹으러 식당에 가다가 친구를 만났습니다.

On the way to the cafeteria to eat lunch I met a friend.

-(으)러 들다

undertakes to do; embarks on doing

This pattern is restricted to action verbs, and generally appears in the structure '-(으)러 들면 어떠하다' *if or once one sets about... ing, then such-and-such*. In other words, the pattern expresses the idea of embarking on an action, setting about doing something, getting down to action.

**Examples :**

종일 놀다가도 일하러 들면 아주 잘해요.

Even if I've been fooling around all day, once I get down to my work, I do a good job.

아이들 하는 일을 간섭하러 들면 끝이 없어요

Once you start interfering in what kids are doing, there is no end to it.

그 남자가 말하러 들면 그녀가 말하지 못하게 막아요.

If that man starts to try to say something, she doesn't let him talk.

문제를 삼으러 들면 문제 아닌 게 없는 것 같습니다.

It seems there is nothing which, once one decides to treat it as a problem, isn't a problem.

물건 값을 깎으러 들면 왜 못 깎겠습니까?

How is it that whenever I try to haggle over the price, I can beat the price down?

## 2. Terminative Auxiliary Verbs (종결의 보조용언)

Terminative auxiliary verbs express the idea that the action of the main verb has been completed. Depending on the specific terminative auxiliary verb used, this basic meaning of 'completion' is augmented by other aspectual meanings.

-어(아, 여) 내다

does all the way (to the very end, thoroughly, through and through); does to the point of obtaining the result sought; manages to do (to get it done)

This particular pattern carries the nuance of '어려워도 그 동작을 끝까지 한다', i. e. 'difficult though it may be, one carries out an action to the very end'.

**Examples :**

철수는 그 책을 끝까지 읽어 났어요.

Cholsu read the book through to the end.

경찰이 그 물건을 찾아 났습니다.

The police found the item.

그 사람은 결국 그 일을 해 났어요.

In the end, he managed to do it.

그 회사가 좋은 물건을 만들어 냈어요?

Did that company come up with a good product?

그 범인이 어디로 도망갔는지 꼭 알아 내고 말 거예요.

I am determined to find out where that criminal has run off to.

-고 나다

just finished doing [usually past (finished)]

This auxiliary verb pattern is compatible only with action verbs and signifies that the action of the main verb has come to an end. Note that this auxiliary verb structure often combines with the endings '-어(아, 여)서', '-(으)니까', and '-(으)면' to yield the complex patterns in '-고 나서' *after...ing*, '-고 나니까' *now that one finishes...ing*, [*one realizes that...*] and '-고 나면' *when~after one finishes*.

**Examples :**

지금 막 청소를 끝내고 나서 쉬고 있어요.

Just now I am having a rest after having finished the cleaning.

부모님과 의논하고 나서 결정할 거예요.

I'll decide after discussing it with my parents.

소리를 치고 나면 좀 시원할 것 같아요.

I think I'll feel a bit refreshes if I make some noise.

그 약을 먹고 나니까 진통이 좀 멎는 것 같아요.

Now that I've taken the medicine, the pain seems to be subsiding a bit.

하고 싶었던 말을 하고 났는데도 화가 풀리지 않아요.

Even after saying what I wanted to say, I still feel angry.

-어(아, 여) 버리다

does completely, gets it (all) done, disposes of (the job); (does it) all ~up~down~away~off; does to my disappointment or regret; does it to my relief

① This pattern signifies that the action of the main verb has been completed with little or no room to spare, and is confined to action verbs.

**Examples :**

오늘 지하철에서 지갑을 잃어 버렸어요.

Today I lost my wallet on the subway.

이 서류는 불에 태워 버리겠습니다.

I'm going to burn up this document.

그 종이를 다 써 버리고 또 달라고 합니다.

She uses up all the paper and then asks for more.

돈을 다 써 버리기 전에 은행에 갖다 넣으세요.

Take your money and put it in the bank before you spend it all.

내가 할 말을 그가 다 해 버려서 난 잠자코 있었습니다.

He said everything I wanted to say so I just remained quiet.

② In some cases, this pattern signifies that the action of the main verb produced a state or result different from what one had expected or hoped for.

**Examples :**

그 친구는 미국에 가 버렸어요.

That friend took off for the United States.

동생이 과자를 다 먹어 버렸어요.

My little sister ate all the cookies.

친구와의 약속을 잊어 버렸습니다.

I forgot my appointment with my friend.

그 사람이 내 공책을 찢어 버렸어요.

He ripped up my notebook.

어항 속의 고기가 다 죽어 버렸어요.

All the fish in the fish bowl died on me.

③ In some cases, this pattern indicates that the speaker experiences a sense of relief when some action comes to an end.

**Examples :**

어제 숙제를 다 끝내 버렸어요.

yesterday I've finished all my homework.

그 사람과 이제 헤어져 버렸어요.

I've broken up with him now.

어제 원고를 다 써 버렸습니다.

Yesterday I finished off the manuscript.

그 미운 사람이 다른 곳으로 이사가 버렸습니다.

That dreadful person has moved away.

무더운 여름이 지나가 버렸습니다.

The hot and muggy summer has [finally] passed.

-고 말다

finally gets around to doing, ends up doing; will (emphatically) do it,  
by gosh

This pattern signifies that an action has been completed, but that the speaker had had no desire or intention for the action to happen, or that the speaker is less than pleased with the result of the action. On the other hand, the related pattern in '-고야 말다' signifies a strong will, determination or resolve on the part of the speaker.

**Examples :**

너무 슬퍼서 울고 말았습니다.

It was so sad that I ended up crying.

동생이 그 꽃병을 깨고 말았어요.

My little sister ended up breaking the vase.

그 분은 자기의 소망을 이루고 말았어요.

She eventually got her wish.

제가 그 일을 꼭 하고야 말겠습니다.

I am determined to do it.

그녀는 화가 나서 밖으로 나가 버리고 말았어요.

She got angry and stormed out.

-어(아, 여) 빠지다

gets to be (old~rotten~musty~...) through and through

The main verb in this construction is usually a descriptive verb, and the auxiliary pattern emphasizes that the state in question has deteriorated. The main verb also tends to carry a negative meaning.

**Examples :**

그 기계는 낡아 빠졌어요.

That machine is old and decrepit.

그 아이는 게을러 빠져서 성공하기는 글렀어요.

That kid is so lazy there is no way he'll succeed.

그런 썩어 빠진 생각으로는 이 세상을 살아 가기가 어렵겠지요.

With rotten attitudes and thinking like that, it'll be tough for her to live in this world.

시어 빠진 김치는 김치 찌개를 해도 맛이 없습니다.

If it's kimchee that's gone too sour, it's not even tasty if you make it into kimchee stew.

너무 말라 빠져서 보기가 흉해요.

You've become so emaciated it's awful to look at you.

-어(아, 여) 치우다

does it through and through, thoroughly, in its entirety

This auxiliary pattern adds the nuance of '남김없이 모두' i. e. , '[does it] in its entirety without exception or leftovers.' But the main verb is confined to a handful of verbs like '하다' do, '먹다' eat, '팔다', sell, etc.

**Examples :**

쓸 데 없는 책들은 다 집어 치우세요.

Do away with all the useless books.

아주머니께서 그 많은 빨래를 단숨에 해 치웠습니다.

The maid took care of all that laundry in one go.

그 남자는 노름에 빠져서 집까지 팔아 치웠대요.

They say that man got sucked up in gambling and even had to sell off his house.

불고기 2인분 먹어 치우는 건 식은 죽 먹기죠.

Polishing off two helpings of Bulgogi is easy as pie.

밥 한 그릇을 눈 깜짝할 사이에 먹어 치우고는 또 달라고 한다.

He dusts off a bowl of rice in the twinkling of an eye and then asks for more.

### 3. Donatory Auxiliary Verbs (봉사의 보조용언)

-어(아, 여)주다/드리다

does as a favor (for), does for the benefit of

This auxiliary construction signifies that the action of the main verb is performed for the benefit of somebody. When the beneficiary of the action is an esteemed person, '주다' can be replaced with '드리다'. (See page 210).

**Examples :**

철수가 동생의 숙제를 도와 주었습니다.

Cholsu helped his brother with his homework.

과학은 인간의 생활을 편리하게 해 주었습니다.

Science has made life convenient for human beings.

김 선생님은 우리에게 노래를 가르쳐 주십니다.

Mr. Kim teaches us songs.

저는 어제 집에서 어머니를 도와 드렸어요.

Yesterday I helped my mother at home.

바쁘실텐데 와 주셔서 고맙습니다.

I know you must be busy, so thank you for coming.

-어(아, 여) 드릴까요? /-어(아, 여) 주십시오

Shall I ... for you? Please ... for me.

The first of these two patterns is used when the speaker seeks permission from the hearer to perform an action for his or her benefit. An affirmative answer from the hearer would then use the second pattern.

**Examples :**

가) 수학을 가르쳐 드릴까요?

나) 예, 가르쳐 주십시오.

A) Shall I teach you some math?

B) Yes, please.

가) 제가 그리로 안내해 드릴까요?

나) 예, 그렇게 해 주십시오.

A) Would you like me to show the way there?

B) Yes, please do that.

가) 이 책을 빌려 드릴까요?

나) 예, 빌려 주십시오.

A) Would you like me to lend you this book?

B) Yes, please do.

-어(아, 여) 주시겠습니까? /-어(아, 여) 드리겠습니다

Would you please ... for me? I'll ... for you.

When the speaker expects or requests the listener to perform some action, (s)he uses the pattern in '-어(아, 여) 주시겠습니까?'. The affirmative reply to this request would then use the pattern in '-어(아, 여) 드리겠습니다'. Thus, the pattern in '-어(아, 여) 주시겠습니까?' is a sort of more polite equivalent of the honorific command form in '-(으)십시오'.

**Examples :**

가) 이것을 설명해 주시겠습니까?

나) 예, 설명해 드리겠습니다.

A) Could you explain this to me please?

B) Sure, I'll explain it for you.

가) 그 친구에게 내 안부 좀 전해 주시겠습니까?

나) 예, 만나면 전해 드리죠.

A) Could you please say hello to her for me?

B) Yes, I'll say hello for you when I see her.

가) 저 대신 회의에 참석해 주시겠습니까?

나) 아니요, 그렇게 해 드릴 수 없습니다.

A) Could you please attend the meeting in my place?

B) No, I'm afraid I can't do that for you.

#### 4. Exploratory Auxiliary Verbs (시도의 보조용언)

-어(아, 여) 보다

tries doing (to see how it will be); does it to see (how it is), tries out

This pattern signifies that one does, attempts or tries out the action of the main verb just once to explore the consequences. Thus, this pattern can express experience, perception and realization.

**Examples :**

이 문제를 잘 생각해 보세요.

Please think hard about this problem.

그 사람의 말을 들어 봅시다.

Let's listen to what she has to say.

설악산에는 올라가 보았습니다.

I went up Mt. Sorak.

진 고생을 많이 해 보았어요.

I've suffered a lot [in my life].

하라고 하시면 이 일을 맡아 보겠습니다.

If you say the word, I'll take on this project.

-어(아, 여) 볼까요?

Shall I~we try...ing? Shall I~we give...ing a try?

This pattern is used for a first person subject (I, we) to request permission from the hearer for an action. The affirmative response to this question can take the form '예, -어(아, 여) 보십시오' and '예, -(으)십시오'.

**Examples :**

제가 이 노래를 한번 불러 볼까요? 예, 불러 보십시오.

Shall I sing this song once? Yes, give it a go.

무대에 나가 볼까요? 예, 나가 보십시오. 잘 하실 겁니다.

Shall I go on stage? Yes, give it a try. I'm sure you'll do well.

우리 미식축구를 해 볼까요? 예, 그렇시다.

Shall we try playing some American football? Yes, let's do.

이번에는 항공편으로 보내 볼까요? 예, 그렇시다.

Shall we send it by airmail this time? Yes, let's do that.

그 사람에게 이 일을 시켜 볼까요? 예, 시켜 봅시다.

Shall we get her to do this job? Yes, let's get her to do it.

-어(아, 여) 본 일이 있다/없다

one has~does not have the experience of having tried...

This structure combines the exploratory pattern in '-어(아, 여) 보다' with the 'past experience' pattern in '-(으)ㄴ 일이 있다/없다', and is used to ask after the presence or absence of a past exploratory experience. (See page 76).

**Examples :**

동남아에 가 본 일이 있습니다.

I've been to southeast Asia before.

회사를 경영해 본 일이 있습니까?

Have you ever managed a company before?

어려움을 겪어 본 일이 없어요.

I've never experienced any difficulties.

추첨에 당첨돼 본 일이 없대요.

He says he never won anything in the lottery.

그를 만나 본 일은 없지만 말은 많이 들었지요.

I've never met him, but I've heard a lot about him.

#### 5. Iterative Auxiliary Verbs (반복의 보조용언)

-어(아, 여) 대다

does terrible (awfully; a lot), does like mad~crazy~anything

This pattern indicates that the verb action is performed repeatedly and continuously to an extreme extent.

**Examples :**

왜 그렇게 떠들어 대니?



Why are you making such a racket?

그 사람은 괜히 웃어 댁니다.

She is always laughing away for no reason.

아이가 계속해서 울어 대는데 어디가 아픈가?

The child just keeps on crying and crying — is it sick or something?

며칠 동안 책을 읽어 댔더니 눈이 아파요.

I read so much for the past few days that my eyes hurt.

며칠 굶었는지 계속 먹어 대요.

She must not have eaten for days, seeing how she is eating up a storm.

-곤 하다

makes a habit~practice (a regular thing) of doing it; does it from time to time, sometimes does; DOES do, (+NEG) never does

This pattern indicates that the same action occurred several times in the past or else was repeated on a regular basis.

**Examples :**

김 선생님을 만나면 다방에 가곤 했습니다.

Whenever I used to meet Mr. Kim, we would go to a tea house.

아프면, 이 약방에서 약을 사곤 했어요.

I used to buy my medicine at this pharmacy whenever I got sick.

수업이 끝나면 도서관에 가곤 합니다.

I usually go to the library when class is over.

기회가 있을 때마다 그 친구를 만나곤 했어요.

I used to meet him whenever I had the chance.

전에는 감기에 걸리면 그냥 쉬곤 했었는데...

Before I used to always take it easy whenever I caught a cold, but...

## 6. Retentive Auxiliary Verbs (보유의 보조용언)

The patterns below indicate that the state pertaining after the completion of an action persists or is maintained; they also indicate that one retains the resultant state of an action for possible future use.

-어(아, 여) 놓다

does for later, does in advance, gets it done (so that it will be ready), does beforehand; completes, accomplishes, gets the doing off one hands, frees oneself by doing

This pattern indicates that the action of the main verb is complete, and is restricted to action verbs.

**Examples :**

책을 책꽂이에 꽂아 놓았습니다.

I shelved the book in the bookcase.

그 사람이 편지를 써 놓았습니다.

She wrote the letter.

나는 부산에 여행갈 계획을 세워 놓았어요.

I made plans to travel to Pusan.

나의 충고를 마음 속에 새겨 놓으세요.

Please take my advice to heart ['engrave it within your heart'].

그 사람이 피아노를 곧 고쳐 놓을 거예요.

He's going to fix the piano right away.

-어(아, 여) 두다

does something to get it out of the way (perhaps as a precaution); gets it done, finishes it up (so it will be out of the way), does it once and for good, does thoroughly~carefully now (so it will not have to be done again); does for later~future use or reference

This pattern indicates that one maintains the present state of affairs, and does not change over to any new state.

**Examples :**

이 나무를 옮기지 말고 그대로 심어 두세요.

Don't move this tree — Just leave it planted where it is.

이 책은 책상에 놓아 두세요.

Please put this book on the desk.

제 말을 잘 들어 두십시오.

Listen up to what I have to say.

버릇 나쁜 아이를 그냥 내버려 두면 안 돼요.  
 You mustn't just ignore a child with bad habits.  
 이런 것을 **알아 두면** 좋습니다.  
 You should make a point of learning this.

-어(아, 여) 가지다

with (the accomplishment of); doing (and keeping it) for oneself

This pattern reinforces the idea of 'retaining' or 'maintaining' the completed action, but is never used as a sentence final form. Instead, it always occurs in conjunction with the connective ending '-고' as '-어(아, 여) 가지고'. This structure indicates that the subject finishes preceding action and then, maintaining that result, carries on, continues or makes a transition to the next action. Thus, this pattern can indicate temporally linked actions, or else indicate that the preceding clause is a reason or cause for the following clause.

**Examples :**

집에서 숙제를 해 **가지고** 오세요.  
 Please bring in your homework after doing it at home.  
 집을 잘 **지어** **가지고** 같이 삽시다.  
 Let's build a nice house and then live there together.  
 한국어를 배워 **가지고** 좋은 자리에 취직할 거예요.  
 I'm going to learn Korean and then get a good job.  
 너무 놀라 **가지고** 그 자리에서 넘어지고 말았어요.  
 She was so surprised that she fell down on the spot.  
 뜻밖에 일등을 해 **가지고** 기뻐서 어쩔 줄 모르고 있어.  
 He came in first unexpectedly and so happy he doesn't know what to do with himself.

## 7. Desiderative Auxiliary Verbs (희망의 보조용언)

These patterns indicate that the speaker or subject wishes for the action or state of the main verb to happen or come about. But depending

on the ending on the main verb, the precise meanings of the patterns below can change.

-고 싶다

wants to do~be

This pattern expresses a hope or wish. Declarative sentences are usually in the first person, and interrogatives are usually in the second person.

**Examples :**

요즘 나는 그림을 **그리고** **싶다**.  
 Lately I feel like drawing pictures.  
 지금 추워서 밖에 **나가고** **싶지** **않습니다**.  
 It cold now so I don't want to go outside.  
 가을이 되면, 설악산에 여행을 **가고** **싶어요**.  
 I want to travel to Soraksan when autumn comes.  
 커피 **마시고** **싶지** **않니?**  
 Don't you want to have some coffee?  
 지금도 그 사람을 **만나고** **싶습니까?**  
 Do you still want to meet her?

-고 싶어하다

wants to do~be

This pattern adds '-어(아, 여) 하다' to '싶다', and is used to express hopes and wishes of third person subjects.

**Examples :**

철수는 김 선생님을 **만나고** **싶어**합니다.  
 Cholsu wants to meet Mr. Kim.  
 제 친구가 영화를 **보고** **싶어**합니다.  
 My friend wants to see a movie.  
 아이들이 책을 **읽고** **싶어**하지 **않**아요.  
 The kids don't want to read books.  
 학생들이 일찍 집에 **가고** **싶어**합니다.  
 The students want to go home early.

동생은 고향에 계신 어머니를 무척 보고 싶어합니다.  
My little brother really misses our mother back home.

-었(았, 였)으면 싶다

feel like doing; wish one could do; would like to do

This pattern expresses the speaker's wish or desire about the entire preceding clause. It has the same meaning as the pattern in '-었(았, 였)으면 좋겠다'.

**Examples :**

오늘은 학교에 가지 않았으면 싶다.

I don't feel like going to school today.

때론 여행갔으면 싶을 때가 있어요.

Sometimes there are times when I feel like going on a trip.

이제 비가 그만 왔으면 싶다.

I wish it would just stop raining now.

그 사람을 만날 수 있었으면 싶다.

I wish I could meet her.

그런 나쁜 일은 빨리 잊어 버렸으면 싶어.

I wish I could hurry up and forget bad things like that.

-나 싶다

thinks~reckons that perhaps~maybe...

This pattern indicates the speaker's unconfirmed guess or supposition about some fact or state of affairs.

**Examples :**

손님들이 오나 싶어서 밖에 나가 봤어요.

I went outside thinking that [perhaps] the guests were arriving.

하나를 보면 전체를 알 수 있지 않나 싶다.

I suspect that one can probably understand all of it by just grasping one.

[Lit.: I reckon that 'isn't it the case that if one sees one, one can understand the whole?']

내가 언제 그랬나 싶었습니다.

I thought to myself: 'When did I ever say that?'

철수가 벌써 그렇게 컸나 싶었어요.

I wondered to myself that Cholsu had already grown so much.

대구에 도착했나 싶어서 차창 밖을 내다 보았습니다.

I looked out the train window, thinking perhaps we had arrived in Taegu.

The verb '싶다' can follow a wide variety of endings, including '-나', '-(으)르까', '-(으)르성', '-구나', '-지', etc. In each case, it expresses the speaker's guess or supposition, or else the speaker's judgement about some fact.

**Examples :**

음식이 맛이 있나 싶어 먹어 보았습니다.

I ate the food thinking it might taste good.

오늘은 친구한테서 전화가 오지 않을까 싶다.

I have a feeling my friend might call today.

그 사람이 화를 낼 성싶어서 그 말을 하지 않았어요.

I thought he might get angry so I didn't say anything.

그런 예쁜 여자도 있구나 싶었다.

I thought to myself 'Hey, there are girls as pretty as that, too?!' [In other words, 'I had no idea there were girls as pretty as that!']

아마 그 친구는 학교에 갔지 싶어요.

She must certainly have gone to school [I reckon].

## 8. Descriptive Auxiliary Verbs (상태의 보조용언)

These patterns indicate the existence of a fact or state of affairs.

-어(아, 여) 있다

is in a state resulting from

This pattern indicates that the state resulting from the action of the preceding verb continues to exist; it tends to occur primarily with action verbs, but among action verbs it occurs mostly with intransitives.

**Examples :**

할머니는 아직 살아 계십니다.

My grandmother is still alive.

그 사람이 문 앞에 서 있었어요.

She was standing in front of the door.

칠판에 글씨가 써 있어요.

There are some letters written on the blackboard.

벽에 그림이 걸려 있습니다.

There is a picture hanging on the wall.

책상에 책이 놓여 있습니다.

There is a book ['in a state resulting from having been placed'] on the table.

-어(아, 여) 지다

gets to be, becomes

This pattern usually attaches to descriptive verbs and indicates that the state in question gradually intensifies; it also changes descriptive verbs into intransitive action verbs. In some cases, this pattern can attach to action verbs and turns the verb into a kind of passive (see p. 364~366). In yet other cases, we find examples of fossilized VERB+-어(아, 여) 지다 where the VERB was probably once an independent action verb, but is now no longer found outside this pattern. In these cases, we are forced to treat the entire structure as a separate lexical item.

① In cases where '-어(아, 여) 지다' attaches to a descriptive verb, thereby creating an action verb, the new expression indicates a process of change, whereby the state indicated by the original descriptive verb increases in intensity.

**Examples :**

이젠 날씨가 점점 추워집니다.

The weather is getting gradually colder now.

그렇게 열심히 연습하면 발음이 좋아질 겁니다.

If you practice hard like that your pronunciation will get better.

배우면 배울수록 어려워지는군요.

The more I learn the more difficult it gets!

자주 만나지 못하니까 멀어지는 것 같습니다.

It seems we are growing more distant from each other because we can't meet often.

그런 환경에서 자라면 누구나 성격이 달라질 겁니다.

Anybody's character would change [become different if they grew up in an environment like that.]

② When '-어(아, 여) 지다' is used after an action verb, it creates an intransitive action verb with passive meaning (see page 365).

**Examples :**

소나기가 쏟아지다가 금방 해가 났어요.

A shower poured down and then the sun came out right away.

숨이 끊어졌다가 다시 살아났어요.

Her breath was cut off, but then she revived again.

그 일이 알려지기 전에 발표하십시오.

Make an announcement before it becomes known.

어렸을 때의 추억이 점점 잊혀져 가고 있어요.

The memories of my youth are gradually becoming forgotten.

옥수수가 잘 삶아져서 먹기가 좋은데요.

This corn is good to eat because it has been well boiled.

**9. Negative Auxiliary Verbs (부정의 보조용언)**

-지 말다

① In its first meaning, this pattern is used to issue a prohibition against the action or state of the main verb. (see page 213, 216).

**Examples :**

과자 줄게, 울지 말아라.

I'll give you a cookie — don't cry.

길에서 놀지 말고 집안에서 놀아.

Don't play on the street — play in the house.

여기서는 담배를 피우지 마십시오.

Please do not smoke here.

우리 오늘 집에 들어가지 말까?

Shall we stay out tonight? ['Shall we don't go home tonight?']

쉬지 말고 기도해야 해요.

You have to pray without rest.

### ㉔ -어(아, 여) 말다

This pattern is an abbreviation of the longer form in '-어(아, 여) [하지] 말다' via deletion of '하지', and is usually used with descriptive verbs. The same pattern can be found after verbal nouns denoting actions.

#### Examples :

너무 슬퍼 마시오.

Don't be too sad.

괴로워 말고 힘을 내세요.

Don't despair — buck up!

염려 말고 하고 싶은 대로 해 보세요.

Don't worry — do it like you want to.

그런 사람과는 상대 마세요.

Please do not keep company with a person like that.

가 버린 사람은 생각 말고 새 사람을 찾아봅시다.

Let not dwell on the person who has gone; instead, let us find a new person.

㉕ The negative auxiliary verb '말다' can occur with a wide variety of conjugational endings; in particular, it occurs in a number of paired phrase structures like '-거나 말거나', '-거니 말거니', '-나 마나', '-든지 말든지', '-(으)르지 말지', etc., with the general meaning (regardless whether) or not. (See page 56, 238, 241, 258, 289).

#### Examples :

내가 놀거나 말거나 참견하지 마.

Whether I'm goofing off or not, don't interfere.

두 사람이 일을 하거나 말거나 말다툼하고 있어요.

The two of them are arguing over whether they'll work or not.

영수라면 보나 마나 꼼꼼하게 계획을 세웠을거야.

It is obvious (Whether I look or not) that Yongsu must have made meticulous plans.

그 사람이 반대하든지 말든지 일을 진행시키세요.

Whether she opposes or not, have her proceed with the work.

그 모임에 갈지 말지 생각중입니다.

I'm debating whether or not to go to that meeting.

### -지 않다/아니하다

does~is not

This pattern attaches to verbs to indicate negation. '-지 않다' is an abbreviation from '-지 아니하다', and both structures have the same meaning. (See page 217).

#### Examples :

토요일은 학교에 가지 않습니다.

On Saturdays I don't go to school.

네 것은 쓰지 않고 남의 것을 쓰니?

You use others' instead of using your own?

그 아이는 엄마의 말을 영 듣지 않아요.

That child doesn't listen to his mother one bit.

머리는 그리 아프지 않아요.

My head doesn't hurt all that much.

그녀는 마음이 예쁘지 얼굴은 예쁘지 않을 거예요.

She has a lovely heart, but her face probably isn't all that pretty.

## 10. Auxiliary of Inability Verbs (불능의 보조용언)

-지 못하다  
cannot

This pattern indicates inability or failure to reach a certain standard.  
(See page 152).

**Examples :**

노래는 잘 하지만 그림은 잘 그리지 못해요.

I sing well, but I can't draw well.

자주 만나지 못하니까 더욱더 보고 싶어요.

Because we can't see each other often, I miss you all the more.

돈이 없어서 공부하지 못했습니다.

I couldn't study because we had no money.

그 분이 왼손을 쓰지 못하니까 좀 도와 드리세요.

Please help her, as she can't use her left hand.

이 나라 말을 하지 못하니까 얼마나 답답한지 모르겠어요.

You have no idea how frustrated I feel because I can't speak the language here.

Chapter Fifteen

## Passive and Causative

By 'passive' we mean a sentence like '도둑이 경찰에게 잡혔습니다' The thief was caught by the policeman, where a patient (the thief) is on the receiving end of some action (getting caught) on the part of ('by') some agent (the policeman). By contrast, a 'causative' sentence is one like '선생이 학생에게 책을 읽혔습니다' The teacher had~made the student read the book where a causer (the teacher) makes a causee (the student) perform some action (reading a book).

In Korean, both passives and causatives can be formed in two different ways.

① Lexical or derived passives are formed by affixing a passive suffix like '-이', '-히', '-리', or '-기' to a verb stem. Likewise, lexical or derived causative forms can be created by affixing causative suffixes like '-이', '-히', '-리', '-기', '-우', '-추' to a verb stem. Traditional Korean grammar calls causatives and passives like this created through suffixation 'short form passives' and 'short form causatives'.

② Besides the 'short forms' above, there are also 'long form' causatives and passives (also known as 'periphrastic' causatives and passives). The long passive is formed by attaching the auxiliary connective ending '-어(아, 여)지다' to the verb stem, and the long causative is formed by attaching the auxiliary connective ending '-게 하다'. The sphere of usage of the long forms is significantly broader than that of the short forms.

For a more detailed exposition of the long and short passives and causatives with examples, please consult figures 22 and 25 below.

1. Passives (피동)

1) Short Passives (단형피동)

Short passives are formed by attaching the suffix '-이', '-히', '-리', or '-기' to a transitive verb stem. The choice of passive suffix depends on the verb stem, and it is not always possible to formulate rules for the selection of the appropriate suffix. Thus, students need to memorize short passives one by one.

<Figure 22> Short Passives

Passive Suffix 피동접미사	Examples 보기		
-이	깨이다, be/get broken off	놓이다, be/get placed	섞이다, be/get mixed
	쌓이다, be/get stacked	보이다, be/get seen	파이다, be/get dug
	쓰이다 be/get written~used, etc.		
-히	먹히다, be/get eaten	닫히다, be/get closed	업히다, be/get carried on the back
	잡히다, be/get caught	뽑히다, be/get plucked or chosen	없히다, be/get placed
	묻히다 be/get buried		

<Figure 22> Short Passives (cont.)

Passive Suffix	Examples		
피동접미사	보기		
-리	들리다, be/get heard	물리다, be/get bitten	풀리다, be/get untied
	빨리다, be/get sucked	밀리다, be/get pushed	뚫리다, be/get pierced
	열리다, be/get opened	걸리다, be/get hung	눌리다 be/get pressed
-기	안기다, be/get embraced	끊기다, be/get cut off	감기다, be/get wrapped
	빼앗기다, be/get stolen	쫓기다, be/get chased	씻기다 be/get washed

Examples :

저기 남산이 보입니다.

You can see Namsan over there. [Namsan is visible over there.]

철수가 반장으로 뽑혔습니다.

Cholsu was elected class leader [was chosen as class leader.]

문이 저절로 열렸어요.

The door opened by itself [was opened of its own accord.]

아이가 엄마 품에 안겨 있습니다.

The baby is held in its mother's embrace.

도둑이 경찰에게 잡혔어요.

The thief was caught by the police.

2) Long Passives (장형 피동)

The long passive pattern in '-어(아, 여)지 다' can be used with action verbs. But it can not attach to all verbs.

〈Figure 23〉 Long Passives

Auxiliary Connective Ending 보조연결어미	Long Passive 장형 피동
-어(아, 여)지다	써지다, 깨지다, 풀어지다, be/get written~used be/get broken be/get resolved 이루어지다, 밝혀지다 be/get achieved be/get clarified

**Examples :**

이 연필은 글씨가 잘 써집니다.

This pencil writes well. (As for this pencil, writing writes itself nicely.)

아이들이 던진 공에 유리창이 깨어졌어요.

The window was broken by the ball thrown by the children.

범인이 누구인지 언젠가는 밝혀지겠지요.

Sooner or later the identity of the criminal will be clarified.

잘 묶이지 않아서 매듭이 풀어졌어요.

Because it wasn't tied well the knot came undone.

모든 사람의 소망이 이루어진다면 얼마나 좋겠어요.

Wouldn't it be wonderful if everybody's wishes came true [were realized?]

**2. Causatives (사동)**

**1) Short Causatives (단형사동)**

Short causatives are created by adding one of the causative suffixes '-이', '-히', '-리', '-기', '-우' or '-추' to an intransitive, transitive or descriptive verb stem. The choice of causative suffix depends on the verb stem, and it is not always possible to formulate rules for the selection of

the appropriate suffix. Thus, students need to memorize short causatives one by one.

〈Figure 24〉 Short Causatives

Causative suffix	Verb Type	Examples of Short Causatives
-이	intrans *	속이다, 죽이다, 줄이다, [make] deceive[d] kill [make die] shorten 붙이다, 녹이다 attach it melt it
	trans *	먹이다, 보이다 feed it show it
	descriptive	높이다 raise it [make high]
-히	intrans	익히다, 앉히다 cook it seat it
	trans	얽히다, 묻히다, 입히다 entangle it make stain[ed] make wear
	descriptive	좁히다, 넓히다, 밝히다 make narrow widen clarify
-리	intrans	울리다, 놀리다, 얼리다, make cry surprise it freeze it 돌리다, 날리다, 살리다 make it turn make it fly save [let live]
	trans	들리다, 알리다, tell [let hear], let know carry 물리다 make compensate
-기	intrans	웃기다, 남기다, 숨기다 make laugh make remain hide it
	trans	감기다, 벗기다, 맡기다 wash make remove entrust with



〈Figure 24〉 Short Causatives (cont.)

Causative suffix	Verb Type	Examples of Short Causatives
-우	intrans	깨우다, 세우다, 재우다, awaken make stop~stand make sleep
	trans	채우다, 비우다 make full make empty 새우다, 지우다 stay up all night make carry on the back
-추	intrans	맞추다, 낮추다, 늦추다 make fit make low make late (delay)

\* intrans: intransitive verb; trans: transitive verb

**Examples :**

고양이가 쥐를 죽였습니다.

The cat killed the mouse.

어머니가 아이에게 예쁜 옷을 입혀 줍니다.

The mother dresses the child in pretty clothes.

음식을 남기지 말고 다 드세요.

Please eat all the food without leaving anything.

철수는 그만 아기를 울리고 말았습니다.

Cholsu ended up making the baby cry.

잠자는 사람을 깨우지 말아요.

Let sleeping people lie. [Don't wake up a sleeping person.]

**2) Long Causatives (장형 사동)**

Long causatives are formed by adding '-게 하다' to intransitive, transitive and descriptive verbs. Their sphere of usage is much broader than that of short causatives.

〈Figure 25〉 Long Causatives

Auxiliary Connective Ending 보조연결어미	Long Causative 장형 사동
-게 하다	가게 하다, 보게 하다, 하게 하다, make go make see make do 먹게 하다, 읽게 하다, 쓰게 하다, make eat make read make write~use 밝게 하다, 푸르게 하다, 슬프게 하다 make bright make blue make sad

**Examples :**

선생님이 그 학생을 일찍 집에 가게 하셨습니다.

The teacher had that student go home early.

어머니가 아이에게 예쁜 옷을 입게 하셨습니다.

The mother had her child wear pretty clothes.

그 분의 죽음이 우리를 슬프게 합니다.

Her death saddens us.

의사가 동생에게 안경을 쓰게 했어요.

The doctor made my little sister wear glasses.

방을 너무 춥게 해서 감기가 들었어요.

I caught a cold because I made the room too cold.

Some verbs allow both long and short causative forms, in which case we can observe a difference in meaning between the two forms. That is, short form causatives are more direct in their causation, while long form causatives are more indirect in their causation. Compare the following causative pairs.

**Examples :**

어머니가 아이에게 예쁜 옷을 입히셨어요.

어머니가 아이에게 예쁜 옷을 입게 하셨습니다.

A) The mother dressed the child in pretty clothes [mother did the dressing].

B) The mother had the child wear pretty clothes [child did the dressing].

할머니께서 동생에게 감기약을 먹이셨어요.

할머니께서 동생에게 감기약을 먹게 하셨어요.

A) Grandmother fed some cold medicine to my little sister. [Grandmother held open my sister mouth and personally administered the medicine].

B) Grandmother had my little sister take some cold medicine.

의사가 환자를 의자에 앉혔습니다.

의사가 환자를 의자에 앉게 하였습니다.

A) The doctor sat the patient on the chair [the doctor picked the patient up bodily and sat him on the chair].

B) The doctor had the patient sit on the chair [the patient did the sitting].

선생님께서 철수에게 책을 읽히셨습니다.

선생님께서 철수에게 책을 읽게 하셨습니다.

A) The teacher made Cholsu read the book. [Cholsu had to recite the book right there in front of the teacher].

B) The teacher had Cholsu read the book [perhaps Cholsu read the book at home in his spare time].

그 친구가 우리들을 웃겼습니다.

그 친구가 우리들을 웃게 하였습니다.

A) Our friend made us laugh.

B) Our friend brought us to laugh.

## Chapter Sixteen

### Quoted Speech

By 'quoted speech' ('화법') we mean those linguistic devices used to convey something said, written or thought, whether by another or by oneself, to another. This citation or quotation process usually involves a temporal or spatial dislocation. Quoted speech is also sometimes referred to as 'indirect speech'.

Quoted speech in Korean is usually classified into two types: direct (직접화법) and indirect (간접화법). The former is used to quote the speaker or a third person's words verbatim, that is, with exactly the same forms used at the time of the original utterance. In indirect quoted speech, on the other hand, the speaker manipulates or changes the original linguistic forms to accommodate the situation and position of the person being quoted.

The key point to remember here is that 'indirect speech' is concerned not merely with the reporting of words or what has been written or said, but also with the reporting of thoughts, claims, and feelings (perhaps one could think of the latter cases as 'internal speech'.) Here are some examples.

Cases of reporting the words or writing of a third person:

어떤 외국인이 "미국 대사관이 어디 있습니까?"라고 물었다.

Some foreigner asked: "Where is the American embassy?"

철수가 자기 형이 새 자전거를 샀다고 나한테 말했다.

Cholsu told me that his older brother had bought a new bicycle.

Cases of reporting one's own thoughts or feelings:

나는 그의 말이 옳다고 생각한다.

I believe that what he said is correct.

우리는 그 사고가 부실 공사에서 비롯되었다고 생각한다.

We think that that accident was caused by shoddy construction.

## 1. Direct Quoted Speech (직접 화법)

Direct quoted speech is used to report the spoken or written words of another verbatim, with exactly the same linguistic forms used at the time of the original utterance. In this case, the original verbatim utterance can take quotation marks ("..."), and the quotation is followed by a quotation particle like '-(이)라고' or '-하고' plus a predicate (a reporting verb). The two quotation particles '-(이)라고' and '-하고' are slightly different; '-하고' allows the reporter to copy or mimic even the tone and intonation of the quoted utterance inside the quotation marks, and thus is used for purposes of emphasis. The structure of sentences with direct quoted speech is as follows:

영희가	철수에게	"이번 주말에 영화를 볼 거야"	라고	했습니다.
subject	reportee	quoted sentence	quotation particle	predicate (reporting verb)
주어	피전달자	피인용문	인용조사	서술어(전달동사)

Yonghui said to Cholsu: "I'll see a movie this weekend."

In this case, the subject coincides with the speaker of the quoted utterance, and the reportee coincides with the listener at the time of the original utterance. Thus, the subject or reportee could easily be omitted. The choice of reporting verb depends on the type of sentence being quoted, but usually the verbs '말하다' and '하다' do duty for all sentence types, and one can substitute verbs like '묻다', '명령하다' or '제안하다' if one wants to report the utterance with specific verbs like ask, order, or suggest, respectively. Here are some more examples.

### Examples :

이 선생이 나에게 "매일 신문을 읽습니까?" 하고 묻더군요.

Mr. Lee asked me: "Do you read the newspaper every day?"

동생이 갑자기 "엄마!" 하고 소리 쳤어요.

My little sister suddenly shouted: "Mom!"

교회의 종소리가 "땡, 땡" 하고 울렸습니다.

The sound of the church bell went "Ding, dong."

아나운서는 "내일은 눈이 올 것입니다." 라고 했습니다.

The announcer said: "Tomorrow it will snow."

어머니가 저에게 "저녁을 먹어라" 라고 말하셨습니다.

Mother told me: "Eat your supper."

그 동상 앞에는 "소년들이여! 야망을 가져라!" 라고 써 있더군요.

In front of the statue was written: "Be ambitious, young boys!"

## 2. Indirect Quoted Speech (간접 화법)

Direct quoted speech and indirect quoted speech are closely related to each other, but they also have their differences. For example, direct quoted speech reports quoted utterances verbatim, but in indirect quoted speech, the speaker modifies the quoted utterance to accommodate the position of the original speaker (the person being quoted). Thus, indirect quoted speech appears in a great many more different forms than direct reported speech.

### 1) Characteristic for Indirect Quoted Speech

Whereas direct reported speech uses the quotation particles '-(이)라고' or '-하고', indirect reported speech uses the quotation particle '-고'. In other words, the pattern is: Subject - Reportee - Quoted Utterance -고 - Predicate.

(1) 영희가 철수에게 이번 주말에는 뭘 하느냐고 했습니다.

subject, reportee, quoted utterance, quotation, particle, predicate (reporting verb)

주어 피전달자 피인용문 인용조사 서술어(인용동사)  
 Yonghui asked Cholsu what he was doing this weekend.

(2) When direct quoted speech is converted to indirect quoted speech, a number of changes occur in the final endings of the quoted utterance (see figure 26 below).

(3) The speech levels in the final endings of the quoted utterance are neutralized. Thus, speech level degradations disappear in quoted utterances in indirect quoted speech, and the morphology becomes somewhat more simplified and streamlined.

〈Figure 26〉 Changes in Final Endings in Indirect Quotations

Sentence Type	Verb Type	Ending Change	Quoted Utterance (Indirect)
Declarative	AVst	-ㄴ/는다	철수가 나에게 비가 온다고 했어요. Cholsu told me it was raining.
	DVst	-다	철수는 배가 고프다고 말했어요. Cholsu said he was hungry.
	-이다	(이)라	철수가 이진 책이라고 말했습니다. Cholsu said this is a book.
Interrogative	AVst	-(느)냐	어머니가 비가 오냐고 물으셨습니다. Mother asked if it is raining.
	DVst	-(으)냐	어머니가 날씨가 더우냐고 하셨습니다. Mother asked if the weather is hot.
	-이다	-(이)냐	어머니가 이게 무슨 책이냐고 하셨습니다. Mother asked what kind of book this is.

Imperative	AVst	-(으)라	친구가 빨리 오라고 말했습니다. My friend told me to come quickly.
Suggestion	AVst	-자	친구가 식사를 같이 하자고 말했습니다. My friend suggested we have a meal together.

Note: Because exclamatory sentences behave in the same way as declarative sentences, we have omitted them as a separate category.

On the basis of the changes in the final endings in indirect reported speech shown in Figure 26 above, let us now examine concrete examples of each indirect reported speech ending type in more detail.

Declarative Sentences

Examples :

영희는 어머님께 내일부터는 방학이라고 말했습니다.

Yonghui told her mother that she is on vacation starting from tomorrow.

친구가 저에게 그 분이 약혼자라고 소개했습니다.

My friend introduced him to me as her fiance. [Lit. : My friend introduced him to me, saying that he is her fiance.]

가족들은 내일부터 연휴라고 좋아했습니다.

The families were glad ['saying' or 'thinking' to themselves] that it is a long weekend starting tomorrow.

그는 친구한테 자기가 날마다 두 시간씩 한국말을 배운다고 했습니다.

She told her friend that she studies Korean two hours every day.

일기 예보에서 금년 여름은 무덥다고 했습니다.

They said on the weather report that the weather this summer is hot and muggy.

Interrogative Sentences

Examples :

친구가 철수에게 이번 주말엔 뭘 하느냐고 물었습니다.

My friend asked Cholsu what he is doing this weekend.

어머니가 아들에게 배가 고프냐고 물었습니다.

The mother asked her son if he was ['is'] hungry.

선생님은 학생에게 왜 한국말을 배우냐고 했습니다.

The teacher asked the student why she is learning Korean.

순경이 사람들에게 이 자동차는 누구의 차냐고 물었습니다.

The patrolman asked the people whose car this is.

선생님이 학생들에게 오늘은 며칠이냐고 물었습니다.

The teacher asked the students what day it is today.

### Imperative Sentences

#### Examples :

부모님께서 아이들에게 길을 건널 때 조심하라고 하십니다.

The parents tell the children to be careful when they cross the street.

할머니가 손자에게 밥을 천천히 잘 씹어 먹으라고 말씀하셨습니다.

The grandmother told her grandson to eat slowly and chew his food well.

저는 밤마다 부모님께 안녕히 주무시라고 인사합니다.

Every night I say goodnight to my parents.

교통 질서를 지키라고 하지만 많은 사람들이 이를 어깁니다.

They say you should observe the traffic regulations, but many people disobey them.

의사가 환자에게 약을 시간에 맞춰 먹으라고 지시했습니다.

The doctor instructed the patient to take his medicine on time.

### Propositive Sentences

#### Examples :

그 분이 저를 만나자고 했습니다.

He asked to meet me.

친구가 여름 휴가를 같이 보내자고 했지만 바빠서 못 했습니다.

My friend suggested spending our summer holidays together, but I was too busy.

그 남자는 그녀에게 결혼하자고 청혼했습니다.

That man proposed marriage to her. [Lit. : ...proposed to her, saying

'let's get married'.]

남편이 아내에게 오 년 후엔 아파트로 이사하자고 말했습니다.

The husband suggested to the wife that they move to an apartment in five years' time.

영철이는 주말에 자기 생일에 친구를 초대하자고 졸랐습니다.

Yongchol pestered me to invite his friends over on the weekend for his birthday.

(4) When direct reported speech is converted to indirect reported speech, deictics or pointing words like personal pronouns, verb tense, place pronouns and honorifics are changed to fit the perspective of the reporter in his or her utterance situation.

#### Examples :

철수가 선생님께 “제가 숙제를 했어요.”라고 말했습니다.

→ 철수가 선생님께 자기가 숙제를 했다고 말했습니다.

Cholsu said to his teacher: “I did my homework.”

→ Cholsu told his teacher that he had done his homework.

그 친구는 나에게 “너 오늘 나한테 전화했니?”하고 물었어요.

→ 그 친구는 나에게 오늘 자기한테 전화를 했냐고 물었어요.

That friend asked me: “Did you call me today?”

→ That friend asked me if I had called him today.

선생님은 “내가 하겠다.”라고 말씀하셨습니다.

→ 선생님은 당신이 하시겠다고 말씀하셨습니다.

The teacher said: “I'll do it.”

→ The teacher said she would do it.

그 분은 손님에게 “여기 앉으십시오.”라고 했습니다.

→ 그 분은 손님에게 여기 앉으라고 했습니다. (앉을 자리에서 가까이 있을 때)

그 분은 손님에게 저기 앉으라고 했습니다. (앉을 자리에서 멀리 있을 때)

She said to the guest: “Please sit here.”

→ She told the guest to sit here (speaker is close to the seat).

→ She told the guest to sit over there (speaker is not close to the seat).

그는 "여기가 서울이냐?"하고 물었어요.

→ 그는 여기가 서울이냐고 물었어요. (서울에서)

그는 거기가 서울이냐고 물었어요. (서울이 아닌 곳에서)

He asked: "Is this Seoul?"

→ He asked if this was ["is"] Seoul (speaker is in Seoul).

→ He asked if it was Seoul (speaker not in Seoul).

친구는 어제 "내일 한국을 떠나겠다."라고 했습니다.

→ 친구는 어제 오늘 한국을 떠나겠다고 했습니다.

My friend said yesterday: "Tomorrow I'm leaving Korea."

→ Yesterday my friend said he is leaving Korea today.

준은 "한국의 여름이 이렇게 더울 줄 몰랐다."하고 말했어요.

→ 준은 한국의 여름이 이렇게 더울 줄 몰랐다고 했어요. (한국에서)

준은 한국의 여름이 그렇게 더울 줄 몰랐다고 했어요. (한국이 아닌 곳에서)

John said: "I had no idea summer in Korea would be this hot."

→ John said he had no idea that summer in Korea would be this hot. (in Korea)

John said he had no idea that summer in Korea would be so hot. (outside of Korea)

The following patterns are reported speech structures which foreign learners often confuse or otherwise have trouble in using effectively and correctly.

-지 말라고 하다

**Examples :**

손 대지 마십시오.

→ 손 대지 말라고 써 있습니다.

Don't touch.

→ It says [in writing] not to touch.

실내에선 담배를 피우지 마십시오.

→ 실내에선 담배를 피우지 말라고 주의를 주었습니다.

Please do not smoke inside the building.

→ I cautioned them not to smoke inside the building.

잔디밭엔 들어 가지 마십시오.

→ 잔디밭엔 들어가지 말라고 합니다.

Please do not enter the lawns. [I. e. Stay off the grass.]

→ She says to stay off the grass.

그 문제에 대해서 더 이야기하지 마십시오.

→ 그 문제에 대해서 더 이야기하지 말라고 합니다.

Please say no more about that problem.

→ She says not to say anything more about that problem.

손 들지마.

→ 손을 들지 말라고 말했습니다.

Don't raise your hands!

→ He told me not to raise my hands.

-을/를 달라고

-어(아, 여) 달라고

**Examples :**

미안하지만 소금을 좀 주세요.

→ 미안하지만 소금을 좀 달라고 합니다.

Excuse me, but would you please pass the salt?

→ He says he is sorry, but would you please pass the salt?

저에게 한국말을 가르쳐 주세요.

→ 자기에게 한국말을 가르쳐 달라고 합니다.

Please teach me Korean.

→ He's asking you to teach him Korean.

자동차를 12시까지 서울역으로 보내 주십시오.

→ 자동차를 12시까지 서울역으로 보내 달라고 하십니다.

Please send the car to Seoul Station by 12 o'clock.

→ She asks that you send the car to Seoul Station by 12 o'clock.

애기를 좀 봐 주세요.

→ 애기를 좀 봐 달라고 합니다.

Please watch the baby for me.

→ She is asking you to watch the baby for her.

신세계 백화점 앞에서 내려 주십시오.

→ 신세계 백화점 앞에서 내려 달라고 합니다.  
Please let me off in front of Shinsegye Department Store.  
→ She is asking to be let off in front of Shinsegye Department Store.

-에게 -을/를 주라고/드리라고  
-에게 -을/를 -어(아, 여) 주라고/드리라고

**Examples :**

이 과자를 저 아이에게 주십시오.  
→ 이 과자를 저 아이에게 주라고 합니다.  
Please give this cookie to that child.  
→ She says to give this cookie to that child.  
이 서류를 사무직원에게 주십시오.  
→ 이 서류를 사무직원에게 주라고 합니다.  
Please give this document to one of the office staff.  
→ He says to give this document to one of the office staff.  
이 물을 손님에게 드리십시오.  
→ 이 물을 손님에게 드리라고 하셨습니다.  
Please give this water to our guest.  
→ She said to give this water to our guest.  
내 말을 그 분께 전해 주십시오.  
→ 자기 말을 그 분께 전해 주라고 합니다.  
Please convey what I said to him.  
→ She says to pass along what she said to him.  
이걸 김 선생께 보내 드리십시오.  
→ 이걸 김 선생께 보내 드리라고 합니다.  
Please send this to Mr. Kim.  
→ She wants you to send this to Mr. Kim [she says to send it...].

**2) Deletion of the Quotation Particle '-고' and of Dummy Verb '하-'**

Both the quotation particle '-고' and the dummy verb of quotation '하-' can be, and often are, omitted, leaving the verb ending after '하-' in direct contact with the reported sentence or phrase. However, while there

are many cases where one can 'reconstruct' quotation-like structures by resurrecting a lost or omitted '-고 하-', there are still other cases where, for historical reasons, this structural restitution does not work. In such cases, we must recognize these quotation-like patterns as new, grammaticalized patterns where the dummy verb '하-' has no concrete meaning of its own, but has developed in a different direction, into an indicator (or 'reporter', of the speaker's attitude, emotion or judgement.

〈Figure 27〉

**Deletion of the Quotation Particle and the Dummy Verb**

Sentence Type	Ending Change	Formal Style Abbreviation	Informal Style Abbreviation
Declarative	-니/는다	간다고 합니다 → 간답니다	간대요
	-다	좋다고 합니다 → 좋답니다	좋대요
	-(이)라	책이라고 합니다 → 책이랍니다	책이래요
Interrogative	-(느)냐	보냐고 합니다 → 보냐	보내요
	-(으)냐	비싸냐고 합니다 → 비싸냐	비싸내요
	-냐	신문이냐고 합니다 → 신문이냐	신문이내요

Imperative	-(으)라	앉으라고 합니다 → 앉으십시오 says to sit down	앉으래요
Suggestion	-자	쉬자고 합니다 → 쉬자 니다 suggests we rest	쉬재요

**Examples :**

그 친구는 (나에게) \* 배가 아프답니다.

She says (to me) that her stomach hurts.

철수는 그게 자기 가방이래요.

Cholsu says that's his bag.

그 사람은 내일은 날씨가 추울 거랍니다.

She says tomorrow the weather will be cold.

김 선생님이 (나한테) 언제 부산에 가내요.

Mr. Kim is asking (me) when I'm going to Pusan.

홍 선생이 (그 학생에게) 한국말이 어려워내요.

Mr. Hong is asking (that student) if Korean is difficult.

어머님께서 (저에게) 그 사람이 누구냐랍니다.

Mother is asking (me) who that person is.

제가 동생에게 빨리 학교에 가랬어요.

I told my sister to hurry to school.

저는 그 친구에게 내일 등산이나 가겠습니다.

I suggested to my friend that we go hiking tomorrow or something.

그 분은 한국이 참 아름답답니다.

She says Korea is really beautiful.

\* Items in parentheses ( ) can be optionally omitted.

In order to make sure that the learner fully understands the forms and usages of these various patterns, let us now examine these structures again according to the types of endings that can attach, via abbreviation, to reported phrases and sentences.

**(1) Cases with Final Endings**

Korean has the following structures where quoted phrases are followed by final endings.

N(이)랍니다, N(이)라니까?

This structure is based on a quoted phrase which originates as a Noun + Copula structure in 'N(이)다'; the '-(이)다' changes to '-(이)라' in the reported speech pattern, and 'N(이)라고 합니다' then loses its '-고 하-'. Note that, as with all indirect reported speech patterns in general, this structure need not be confined to verbal quotations of third persons (or oneself). These patterns can also serve to report or convey the speaker emotion, feeling or acknowledgment concerning some fact. Therefore, it is not the case that direct reported speech and indirect reported speech are always mutually interchangeable.

**Examples :**

이 아이가 우리 아들이랍니다.

What I'm saying is that this is my son.

저 학생이 최우수생이랍니까?

You mean to say that student is the top of her class?

윗놀이는 누구나 다 좋아하는 놀이랍니다.

What I'm saying is that *yunnori* is a game that everybody likes.

이것은 둘도 없는 귀한 책이랍니다.

He says this is a unique and precious book.

전 낮 놓고 기억자도 모르는 바보랍니다.

What I'm saying is that I am such a fool that I don't know A from B.

그 사람은 없어서는 안 될 좋은 일꾼이랍니다.

They say he is a good, indispensable worker.

-ㄴ/는답니다, -ㄴ/는답니까?

This structure is based on a quoted phrase which originates as '-ㄴ/는다고 합니다' and then loses its '-고 하-'. In this case, too, this structure



need not be confined to reporting verbal quotations heard from others, but can also function to express, or reiterate, one's own feelings or emotions about some fact.

**Examples :**

- 내일부터는 온도가 영하로 내려간답니다.  
They say that from tomorrow the temperature will drop below zero.  
그는 우리와 같이 떠날 생각이 없답니까?  
Doesn't he say he's thinking of leaving with us?  
저는 학교 다닐 때 열심히 공부하지 않았답니다.  
What I'm saying is that when I went to school I didn't study hard.  
어디에 그리 급히 가납니다.  
He wants to know where you're going in such a hurry.  
요즘도 계속 약을 복용하납니다.  
He's asking if you're still taking medication these days.  
그 옷을 손수 만드신 거납니다.  
She's asking if you made those clothes yourself.  
이 약은 식후 30분에 먹으랍니다.  
He says to take this medicine 30 minutes after eating.  
이 일을 저 혼자서 하납니까?  
Is he telling me to do this all by myself?  
이 방을 내일까지 비워 달랍니다.  
She is requesting that you vacate this room for her by tomorrow.  
후배들이 우리와 운동 시합을 하잡니다.  
Our class juniors are suggesting we hold a sports meet.  
수업 후에 영화구경 가잡니까?  
Is he suggesting we go see a movie after class?  
경음악은 시끄러우니까 고전음악을 듣잡니다.  
He's suggesting that since pop music is noisy, we listen to classical music.

**-(ㄴ/는)대요**

This pattern has its origins in a reported speech phrase followed by the final ending in '-ㄴ/는다' plus '고 해(요)', but with the '-고 하-' delet-

ed. Thus, in actual usage, this ending attaches as '-대(요)', '-ㄴ/는다(요)', '-ㄴ(요)', '-래(요)' and '-제(요)'.

Note also that reported sentences built on the copular 'N(이)다' structure appear here with the pattern 'N(이)래(요)'.

**Examples :**

- 그 분이 뭐래?  
What does she say?  
그 사람이 여당이래요? 야당이래요?  
Is he considered government party? Or opposition party?  
박 선생 내외가 이혼했다는 건 헛소문이래요.  
They say that the claim that Mr. and Mrs. Park got divorced is an empty rumour.  
내일이 무슨 날이내요.  
She's asking what day it is tomorrow.  
두 사람이 어떤 사이내요.  
She's asking what their relationship is.  
저기서 열심히 일하고 있는 사람이 누구내.  
She's asking who that person is over there working so hard.  
내일은 날씨가 추워진대.  
They say the weather will get colder tomorrow.  
그 사람은 중매결혼을 했대요.  
They say his was an arranged marriage.  
밤 말은 쥐가 듣고 낮 말은 새가 듣는대요.  
They say that the mice hear nighttime talk and the bird hear daytime talk. [Proverb: The ears have walls, i. e. Always watch what you say.]  
누가 학비를 대내요.  
He's asking who pays the tuition.  
아직도 애인이 없내요.  
He's asking if you still don't have a girlfriend.  
어디에서 학위를 받았내요.  
He's asking where you got your degree.  
내일부터 한 시간 일찍 출근하래요.  
He says to leave for work an hour earlier starting tomorrow.

정부에서는 모든 의식을 간소화하래.

The government says to simplify all ceremonies.

농촌의 일손이 모자란다고 좀 도와주세요.

They say to help out because the farm village is short of workers.

생각이 있으면 일을 같이 해 보재.

He suggests that if we have any ideas we try working together.

그 안을 받아들여하기로 하세요.

He suggests we go ahead and accept that proposal.

그 일은 없던 것으로 하세요.

He suggests we forget that ever happened.

## (2) Cases with Different Reporting Verbs

Indirect reported speech takes the general pattern 'reported phrase + -고 + reporting verb' but because there are so many different types of reporting verb, the semantic relationship between embedded quotation and matrix quoting verb can take a number of different forms.

Note also that the 'reporting verb' constituent of the general pattern schematized above can also take the form of a verb phrase or clause, or even of an entire sentence. Here are some examples.

### -(이) 라고 + Reporting Verb (Phrase)

In cases where the quoted clause ends in the copular pattern in 'N이다', the '-이다' is changed to '-이라' which then takes the quotation particle '-고'. Of course, as already stressed above, this structure need not be confined to reporting the utterances of others or of oneself, but can also function to narrate one's own feelings, emotions or judgement.

#### Examples :

저는 김영수라고 합니다.

My name is Kim Yongsu. Or I am called Kim Yongsu.

저는 그것이 최선의 방법이라고 생각합니다.

I think that is the best way.

그 분의 졸업식이 다음 주 토요일이라고 들었습니다.

I heard that her graduation ceremony is next Saturday.

이것은 나라의 발전을 가져다 주는 좋은 사업이라고 봅니다.

I view this as a good project conducive to the nation's development.

남북통일은 꼭 이루어질 거라고 봅니다.

I am of the view that North-South unification is bound to happen.

말이 서툴러서 실수한 것이라고 양해를 구하는 것이 좋겠습니다.

I think it would be best to ask for understanding on the basis that you committed a faux pas because your language skills are weak.

### -ㄴ/는다고 + Reporting Verb (Phrase)

#### Examples :

김 선생님은 언제 귀국하신다고 하셨습니까?

When did Mr. Kim say he was going back to Korea?

모든 사람이 그 의견이 좋다고 생각합니다.

Everybody thinks that opinion is a good one.

저는 그 분이 학위를 받았다고 들었습니다.

I heard he got his degree.

저는 그 회사의 기반이 튼튼하다고 봤습니다.

I was of the view that that company's foundation was solid.

한국은 유교사상의 영향을 많이 받았다고 할 수 있습니다.

One can say that Korea was greatly influenced by Confucian thought.

저는 아내에게 앞으로는 술을 입에 대지 않겠다고 약속했습니다.

I promised my wife that I would never again let alcohol touch my lips.

눈이 나빠서 빨리 알아보지 못했다고 사과하세요.

Please apologize, and say that you didn't recognize him because you have bad eyesight.

### -ㄴ/는다고 + Quotational Clause

In this structure, the embedded indirect/reported speech clause preceding the matrix verb quotational clause serves to indicate the reason for or intention underlying the following clause. In other words, one could view this structure as being related to the reason pattern in '-ㄴ/는다고 해서' [composed of '-ㄴ/는다고 + 하 (dummy quotation verb) + -어(아, 여)서 (connective ending for 'reason')'] via deletion of the dummy verb

‘해서’.

**Examples :**

좋은 남편 만났다고 모두들 너를 부러워한다.

Everybody is envious of you because you ended up with a good husband.

아버님의 뜻을 따르지 않는다고 화가 나셨습니다.

Your father was angry because you weren't doing things his way.

학교에 늦는다고 아침밥도 안 먹고 갔어요.

She left without eating breakfast because she was going to be late for school.

너도 나도 일류 대학에 가겠다고 모두들 열심히 합니다.

Everybody is studying hard so that they all might get into the best universities.

학비가 모자란다고 어머니께서 하루 종일 걱정하시더군요.

Mother was fretting all day long that we're short for the tuition fees.

**-(으)라고 + Quotational Clause**

When the embedded reported speech phrase is an imperative, the final ending ‘-(으)라’ is followed by the quotation particle ‘-고’. In sentences like the following, the downstairs quoted clause serves as a concrete reason or cause for the contents of the following clause. Alternatively, it can also indicate the contents of the noun presented in the following upstairs clause.

**Examples :**

어머님께서서는 시간이 늦지 않게 일찍 떠나라고 재촉하셨습니다.

Mother urged us to leave early so as not to be late.

글씨를 바르게 쓰라고 여러 번 주의를 받았습니다.

She has been cautioned several times to write her letters properly.

서류에 도장을 찍어 달라고 사람이 왔습니다.

Somebody came to ask you to stamp your seal on the document.

좋은 일꾼을 추천해 달라고 편지가 왔습니다.

A letter arrived asking us to recommend a good worker.

잔디밭에 들어가지 말라고 푯말을 써 붙였어요.

I stuck up a sign saying to keep off the grass.

**-니/는다고 그래(요)**

In this structure, ‘그래(요)’ can be seen as a form of ‘그렇다’, but here it has no particular meaning of its own, and instead functions in the place of any number of other possible reporting verbs (e. g. ‘말하다’ say, ‘전하다’ convey, ‘부탁하다’ ask a favor of, etc.). Depending on the final ending, this pattern functions as a declarative, imperative, suggestion, etc.

**Examples :**

서대문에 사는 친구한테서 전화가 왔다고 그래.

Tell him his friend from Sodaemun called.

내일 약속을 못 지키겠다고 그러더냐?

Did he say he wouldn't be able to keep tomorrow's appointment?

오늘 회의에 늦지 말라고 그래.

Tell him not to be late for today's meeting.

그를 만나면 나한테 편지 좀 쓰라고 그래요.

When you see him, tell him to write me a letter.

기분 전환을 위해서 여행 떠나자고 그래.

Suggest to him that we go on a trip for a change of pace.

**(3) Cases with Different Connective Endings**

It is normal in quotative constructions for the embedded quotation phrase to take the quotation particle ‘-고’ after its final ending, and then attach the dummy quotation verb ‘하-’. This latter verb can then take any number of connective endings depending on the conjugational usage in question, and, as one might expect, this new extended structure can optionally omit the sequence ‘-고 하-’. In some cases, restoring the deleted ‘-고 하-’ sequence renders a grammatical structure, and there is no appreciable difference in function between the longer structure with ‘-고 하-’ and the shorter, abbreviated structure without it. But in others, because of a historical process of grammaticalization, the shorter, abbreviated pattern without ‘-고 하-’ has hardened into a new sort of pattern, where the dummy verb ‘하-’ no longer has a concrete, identifiable

meaning and the whole collocation instead takes on a new grammatical function.

**Examples :**

시간이 **없다면서** 놀기만 합니다.

All she does is fool around, even while claiming she has no time.

**모르겠다니까** 왜 자꾸 물어?

I told you, I don't know — why do you keep asking?

시간을 꼭 **지키겠다더니** 왜 이렇게 늦었어?

He said he would be sure to be on time, so why is he so late?

그 분이 **바쁘시다기에** 도와 드렸지요.

I helped her because she said she was busy.

월급만으로 생활하기가 **어렵다면** 부업을 가지세요.

If it is difficult to make a living on the basis of your salary, take up a side job.

그 사람이 최선을 다 **했다지만** 결과는 좋지 않았습시다.

He says he did his best, but the results were not good.

외국에서 귀한 손님이 **오신다는데** 왜 이려고들 있습니까?

They say an important guest is coming from abroad, so why are you all [goofing off] like this?

그 건강한 사람이 **쓰러지다니** 믿을 수가 없군요.

To think that such a healthy person would collapse — I can't believe it!

공부를 **잘 한다고** 모든 것을 다 잘하는 것은 아닙니다.

Just because you're a good student doesn't mean you're good at everything.

석유 값이 **내린다던데** 그게 사실인가?

They say the price of gasoline is going down — is that true?

내가 오늘은 왜 이렇게 실수를 많이 **한다지**?

What is it with me today with all these mistakes?

**-자면**

When the conditional ending in '-(으)면' attaches to the final ending '-자' on an embedded reported clause, the subject is typically people in general or one, and the pattern expresses an intention-related condition.

In meaning, this structure is similar to the pattern in '-(으)려면', but with the difference that the subject of the intention is a generalized and impersonalized one; thus, these two patterns are not always interchangeable.

① One usage of this pattern is an abbreviation of the combination of the pattern in '-고자 하다' (see page 254) and the conditional pattern in '-(으)면' (see page 302): '-고자 하면'.

**Examples :**

외국에 가서 **공부하자면** 돈이 많이 필요합니다.

If you want to go abroad to study, you need a lot of money.

남의 밑에서 **일하자면** 힘든 것도 참아야 합니다.

If you want to work under somebody else, you have to put up with tough times, too.

좋은 직업을 **구하자면** 실력이 있어야 합니다.

If you want to find a good job, you have to have talent.

6층까지 걸어 **올라가자면** 땀 좀 흘릴 겁니다.

If you intend to go up to the 6th floor on foot, you'll be sweating a bit.

솔직히 **말씀드리자면** 언론의 자유가 없는 것 같더군요.

Frankly speaking, it appeared that there was no freedom of speech.

② Another usage of this pattern is analyzed as the abbreviation of '-자고 하면', built from the conditional ending in '-(으)면' and the indirect quoted question pattern in '-자고 하다' (see page 254); this second usage is confined to action verbs.

**Examples :**

마시기 싫어도 네가 **마시자면** 마셔야지 뭐.

I don't want to drink it, but if you say so, I guess I have to drink it, don't I?

친구가 **가자면** 천리 길도 따라 갈거야.

If my friend asks me to, I'll follow him for a thousand li.

웃사람이 **하자면** 하자는 대로 해야겠지요?

If a superior suggests you do something with him, you'll have to do as he says, right?

아내가 하자면 하고 하지 말라면 말아야 애처가라고요.

I'm saying that a man who loves his wife is somebody who does whatever she suggests and stops doing something whenever she says stop.

동창들이 모두 돈을 거두자면 너도 낼거니?

If your fellow classmates all decide to raise some money, are you going to chip in, too?

-ㄴ/는 다지 않습니까?

This is another quotational pattern with deleted '-고 하-', and the negative question in the second clause is a rhetorical device to emphasize an affirmation. In other words, this negative question serves to emphasize one's affirmation to the listener.

**Examples :**

옛말에 암탉이 울면 집안이 망한다지 않습니까?

Isn't there an old saying which goes: "If the chicken cries, the house goes to ruin?" [Proverb: If the wife wears the trousers, the home goes to pot.]

신부가 결혼식날 웃으면 첫 딸을 낳는다지 않습니까?

Isn't there a saying that if the bride smiles on her wedding day, her first child will be a daughter?

속담에 말만 잘하면 천 냥 빚을 갚는다지 않아요?

Isn't there a proverb to the effect that one can pay off a debt of a thousand gold pieces if only one talks well?

일하기 싫으면 먹지도 말라지 않았습니까?

Don't they say that if you don't like working, you shouldn't eat, either?

이웃 사촌이라지 않았습니까?

You know the saying a good neighbour is better than a brother far off.

Korean also has some quotative structures which originate in the deletion of an entire clause following a connective ending. In such cases, the politeness can be achieved by attaching the polite marker '-요'.

-ㄴ/는다고(요)?

When used as an interrogative, this pattern repeats and thereby queries

(for confirmation), or even shows disagreement with, the words of one counterpart.

**Examples :**

이번에 장학금을 받았다고요?

You say you got a scholarship this time?

수출 목표액을 달성하기 어렵다고요?

You say it's difficult to reach our export target?

이혼했던 사람들이 다시 화해했다고요?

You say the couple who divorced have made up again?

이 비행기가 북한에서 넘어온 비행기라고요?

You say this is the plane that came across from North Korea?

내가 부자라고요? 그러면 얼마나 좋겠습니까.

Me, rich? Wouldn't that be nice!

그 분이 선량한 사람이라고요? 전 믿을 수 없습니다.

You say she is a virtuous person? I can't believe it.

-ㄴ/는다니요?

This pattern has the form of a question, but in actual fact serves to show disagreement with or doubt about what one counterpart has just said.

**Examples :**

가: 어제 폐가 많았습니다.

나: 폐라니요?

Thanks for all your trouble yesterday.

Trouble? Don't mention it.

가: 이거 수입품이지요?

나: 수입품이라니요? 국산이에요.

This is an import, isn't it?

Are you kidding? It's made in Korea.

가: 이걸 번역하기는 쉽지요?

나: 쉽다니요? 그럼 직접 해 보세요.

This is easy to translate, isn't it?

Easy?! Then why don't you try it yourself.

가 : 오늘은 그만합시다.  
 나 : 그만하자니요? 오늘 끝내야 해요.  
 Let's call it a day.  
 Call it a day?! We have to finish it today.  
 가 : 숙제 좀 해주세요.  
 나 : 숙제를 해달라니요?  
 Please do my homework for me.  
 Do your homework for you?

#### (4) Cases with Adnominal Endings

Another subtype of patterns based on quotation structures combines an embedded reported speech clause ending in '-ㄴ/는다' with the adnominal modifiers '-(으)ㄴ', '-는', '-(으)ㄴ' or '-던'. Of course, these structures, too, come from deletion of '-고 하-'.  
 Another subtype of patterns based on quotation structures combines an embedded reported speech clause ending in '-ㄴ/는다' with the adnominal modifiers '-(으)ㄴ', '-는', '-(으)ㄴ' or '-던'. Of course, these structures, too, come from deletion of '-고 하-'.

##### Examples :

민주주의란 개념을 확실히 모르고들 있습니다.  
 They are completely clueless about the concept of democracy.  
 발 없는 말이 천 리 간다는 말을 들어 보셨습니까?  
 Have you ever heard the expression 'words without feet travel a thousand miles'?  
 원숭이도 나무에서 떨어진다든 속담 몰라요?  
 You don't know the proverb 'Even monkeys fall from trees'?  
 폭우가 쏟아져서 수재민이 많이 생겼다는 뉴스를 들었습니다.  
 I heard the news that many flood victims have come about due to the torrential rains.  
 그 운동은 이 마을을 근대화시키자는 운동입니다.  
 That movement is a campaign to modernize this village.  
 평생을 같이 하자던 약속은 수포로 돌아갔군.  
 I see that our one-time vow to spend our lives together has come to naught.

#### (5) Cases with Nominalizer Endings

These patterns add the nominalizer ending in '-기' to an embedded reported speech clause ending in '-ㄴ/는다'.

##### Examples :

좋은 사람이라기에 만나 보았을 뿐입니다.  
 All I did was meet him once, seeing as how you said he was a nice person.  
 그 친구가 내일 여행을 떠나자기에 그러기로 약속했습니다.  
 Seeing as how he suggested we take off on a trip together tomorrow, I agreed ['to do so.']  
 이사를 한다가에 도우러 왔습니다.  
 I heard ['they say'] you're moving, so I came to help.  
 한국에 왜 왔냐기에 공부하러 왔다고 했습니다.  
 When he asked me why I had come to Korea I said I had come to study.  
 사업에 투자해 보라기에 했더니 결과가 괜찮더군요.  
 When he suggested I invest in the business, I did, and the results were not bad!

##### -(ㄴ/는)다는 것이

This pattern combines an embedded reported speech phrase in '-(ㄴ/는)다' with the modifier in '-는' followed by '것이' and indicates that whatever the speaker had originally intended, the result in the following clause is the opposite.

##### Examples :

동생 바지를 산다는 것이 내 것만 샀습니다.  
 I had intended to just buy trousers for my little brother, but all I bought was trousers for myself.  
 바닷가로 간다는 것이 산으로 발길을 옮기고 있었습니다.  
 We had intended to head toward the seaside, but our footsteps were leading us away toward the mountain.  
 음식을 남긴다는 것이 야금야금 다 먹어 버렸습니다.  
 We were meaning to leave some food, but little by little we eat up everything.  
 그 사람을 웃긴다는 것이 울리고 말았습니다.  
 We meant to make her laugh but ended up making her cry.

고양이를 그린다는 것이 호랑이를 그렸어?  
You were trying to draw a cat and drew a tiger?

### (6) Using Indirect Reported Speech for Confirmation and Emphasis

Indirect reported speech is used either to convey the words of another person to a third party, or else to ask for confirmation from one's counterpart when, in the course of a conversation, one misunderstands one's interlocutor. Yet another usage is to allow the speaker to objectivize his or her own actions or state. In this case, the speaker emphasizes the contents of the quoted phrase or sentence. Note also that second-person sentences of this type have the effect of asking one's counterpart for confirmation as to what was just said.

#### N 말이다

When a noun or noun-like structure precedes '말이다', the effect of this pattern is to repeat yet again that noun, and when this pattern is wielded as a question, the effect is to ask the interlocutor for confirmation. Sometimes a '말이다'-type phrase is interspersed between different sentences or sentence constituents with little or no meaning at all, rather like English *you know* or *I mean*.

#### Examples :

언제 말입니까?

When do you mean?

내일 말입니다.

I mean tomorrow.

누구 말이에요?

Who do you mean?

어제 말이에요, 김 선생이 말이에요, 왔다 가셨어요.

About yesterday... you know, Mr. Kim — he came and went already.

일하지 않으면 말이에요, 가족들이 말이에요, 고생을 해요.

I mean, if you don't work... you know, your family suffer.

#### -(ㄴ/는) 단 말이다

Depending on the sentence type, embedded quotations can end in the final endings '-(ㄴ/는)다', '-냐', '-(으)라' or '-자', for this structure, one attaches '-고 하느' to these endings and then deletes from this the sequence '-고 하느-' leaving one with just '-ㄴ-'. This structure, too, is used to repeat the quoted sentence or phrase, or else, in questions, to ask for confirmation of something just said.

#### Examples :

미국으로 아주 가신단 말입니다.

I'm telling you, she's moving to the States for good.

학교에 가지 말고, 놀러 가잔 말입니다.

I'm saying let's take off somewhere instead of going to school.

누가 오신단 말이에요?

Are you saying that someone is coming?

요즘 무슨 생각을 그렇게 하시난 말이에요.

I'm asking, what is it you're so hung up on these days?

시간도 없는데, 버스를 타란 말입니까?

We have no time, and you're saying take the bus?

## Prefixes and Suffixes

Any language contains a number of affixes which attach to word stems or roots (the main part of a word which expresses the basic lexical meaning) in the course of word formation and modify the meaning somehow. Affixes which attach to the left of a morpheme are called prefixes (접두사), and affixes which attach to the right of a morpheme are called suffixes (접미사). Affixes can be subcategorized in yet another way: delimiting affixes (affixes which simply add meaning) vs. categorial affixes (affixes which change the part of speech of the affixed morpheme). Below we introduce the most commonly used affixes in Korean.

### 1. Prefixes (접두사)

Prefixes modify the meaning of the morpheme they precede, and all of them are of the delimiting type (that is, they do not change the part of speech of their host). Noun prefixes are similar in their function to adnominals, and verb prefixes are similar in function to adverbs. But whereas adnominals and adverbs can combine more or less freely with nouns and verbs, prefixes are restricted to combining with a limited number of stems.



**Examples :**

갓-, 군-, 날-, 덧-, 되-, 들-, 말-, 맞-, 매-, 맨-,  
 빗-, 새-, 생-, 선-, 설-, 숯-, 시-, 알-, 애-, 엇-,  
 외-, 잔-, 짓-, 찻-, 흥-, 최-, 치-, 풋-, 한-, 햇-,  
 흘-, 휘-...

갓-  
 just (now)

**Examples :**

갓스물 갓졸업하다 갓결혼하다 갓시집오다  
 barely 20 freshly graduated newly wed newly married  
 갓낳다  
 newborn

**Examples :**

이제 갓스물난 처녀여서 한창 피어오르는구나!  
 Being a young woman of barely twenty years, she is at her peak of beauty!  
 갓난 아기를 안으려니까 어떻게 안아야 할지 모르겠어요.  
 Now that I try it, I have no idea how I'm supposed to hold a newborn baby.  
 대학을 갓졸업해서 사회를 너무 몰라요.  
 Because she has only just graduated from university, she is clueless about society.  
 갓결혼한 새아씨가 떡을 가지고 왔어요.  
 The newlywed bride brought over some ricecakes.  
 갓시집와서 시부모님이 어렵기만 하답니다.  
 Because she was just married and is new to her inlaws' home, apparently she's terrified of her mother- and father-in-law.

덧-  
 added, additional, put-on, affixed

**Examples :**

덧문 덧버선 덧니 덧신  
 out (double) door outer socks side tooth overshoes

덧칠하다 덧붙다 덧붙이다  
 paint over accrue in addition attach it in addition  
 덧나다  
 grows on top of

**Examples :**

겨울에 너무 추우니까 덧문을 달아야 겠어요.  
 It's so cold in winter that we'll have to hang double doors.  
 이 더운 때 덧버선은 왜 신습니까?  
 Why are you wearing double-layered socks at a hot time like this?  
 그 분의 덧니는 매력이 있는데요.  
 I think her snaggle tooth is rather charming.  
 덧신을 신었더니 구두가 하나도 젖지 않았어요.  
 I wore overshoes, and my shoes didn't get wet at all.  
 벽지가 더러워져서 그 위에 덧붙여야겠어요.  
 The wallpaper is so dirty that we'll have to put a new layer over it.

되-  
 back, again, in reverse

**Examples :**

되돌이표 되새김질 되돌아가다 되돌아보다  
 repeat sign rehashing retrace one's steps look back  
 되묻다 되받다 되살아나다  
 ask again~back receive back revive, come to  
 되새기다 되씹다 되찾다  
 chew over & over reiterate look for again  
 되풀이하다  
 repeat

**Examples :**

되돌이표가 있으니까 여기는 반복해서 불러야 해요.  
 There's a repeat sign, so here you have to sing it again.  
 한국에 나왔다가 고향에 계신 어머니가 편찮으셔서 되돌아갔어요.  
 I had just arrived in Korea, but my mother was ill, so I went back home.  
 고등학교 시절을 되새겨 보세요.

Try thinking back on your highschool days.

내가 물었는데 되물으면 어떻게 해?

I [already] asked, so what the point of asking again?

내가 보기에 이 나무는 되살아나기 힘들 것 같아요.

The way I see it, it'll be difficult for this tree to come to life again.

맞-

facing, before one's face, directly opposite, direct, straight, clear, in agreement; together, jointly; each other, mutually

**Examples :**

맞벌이, 맞선, 맞질,  
dual income, a face-to-face mutual bowing  
meeting,

맞대다, 맞들다, 맞바꾸다,  
bring into contact, lift together, barter, trade

맞서다, 맞잡다, 맞장구치다  
confront, help each other, chime in with

**Examples :**

우린 맞선을 보고 결혼했습니다.

I mean, we married after an initial matchmaking meeting.

머리를 맞대고 앉아 뭘 하고 있어요?

What are they doing sitting there, tete a tete?

어린 것이 형과 맞서서 힘을 겨누겠다.

The little fellow says he wants to challenge his big brother to a contest of strength.

그 선물이 마음에 안 들면 우리 맞바꿀까요?

If you don't like the present, shall we exchange it?

요즘은 맞벌이 부부가 많아 아이들 문제가 심각합니다.

Lately there are so many couples working that the problems with children are quite serious.

매-

each, every

**Examples :**

매년, 매달, 매번, 매사, 매시간  
every year, every month, every time, all matters, every hour  
매학기  
every [academic] term

**Examples :**

매년 성묘를 가는데도 가는 길을 찾기가 힘들어요.

Even though we visit the ancestral grave every year, we have a hard time finding the way.

매달 전기세가 얼마나 됩니까

How much is your electricity bill every month?

그는 매번 야단맞아도 그 버릇을 고치지 못해요.

Even though he catches hell every time, he can't cure himself of that bad habit.

매사에 부지런한 사람이 오늘은 웬일일까?

So what seems to be the matter with you-know-who who is [normally] so diligent in all manner of things?

오늘은 매시간 졸기만 했어요.

Today I was nodding off every hour.

새-

vivid, deep, intense (with color adjectives)

**Examples :**

새까맣다, 샛노랗다, 새빨갳다,  
jet black bright yellow bright red  
새파랗다, 새하얗다  
vivid blue snow white

**Examples :**

한국사람은 머리가 새까맣습니다.

Koreans have jet black hair.

샛노란 옷을 입으니까 너무 눈에 띈다.

You stand out too much in bright yellow clothes.

새빨간 구두에는 어떤 옷이 어울릴까요?

What clothes would go well with bright red shoes?

가을 하늘은 높고 새파랗습니다.

The autumn sky is bright blue and high.

담이 새하에서 깨끗하기는 하지만 금방 더러워질 겁니다.

The fence is clean because it is a brilliant white, but it is bound to get dirty right away.

생-

- a) raw, unripe, uncooked, green; unhealed;
- b) crude, unprocessed, natural; wild; rough(-hewn); untrained, untutored; unassimilated;
- c) live, living, healthy; not yet dry, undried;
- d) real, natural, original, untouched, pristine, raw; unsweetened, unflavored;
- e) unreasonable, irrational, arbitrary, needless, uncalled-for, etc.

**Examples :**

생굴	생매장	생쌀	생맥주
raw oyster	burying alive	uncooked rice	draft beer
생고생	생과부	생이별	
terrible	neglected	separation by	
hardships	wife	circumstances	

**Examples :**

김장김치에 생굴을 좀 넣으면 맛이 훨씬 낫지요.  
 The winter kimch tastes much better if you put some raw oysters in.  
 생맥주를 시킬까요? 보통 맥주를 시킬까요?  
 Shall we order draft beer? Or just regular [bottled] beer?  
 거짓말로 생사람 잡으면 못썰요.  
 It is evil to arrest an innocent man through lies.  
 능력 있는 사람이 노동관에 가서 생고생하고 있어요.  
 A perfectly talented person is suffering a manual labor job.  
 남편이 출장을 가서 요즘은 생과부 노릇을 하고 있지요.  
 Because my husband is away on business, I'm playing widow for a while.

알-

small and round; bare, naked, stripped (down to essentials), out-and-out, bald; essential, important, core; net; real, true-to-life, sure-enough; down-to-earth; thorough, complete, whole

**Examples :**

알밤	알사탕	알약	알몸	알거지
(shelled)	rock	(medicinal)	naked	abject
chestnut	candy	tablet	body	beggar

**Examples :**

그 알밤 참 먹음직스럽군.  
 That chestnut sure does look tasty.  
 아이들은 대개 알사탕을 좋아해.  
 Kids usually like rock candy.  
 이 알약은 너무 커서 먹기가 힘들겠는데요.  
 These tablets are so big it's hard to swallow them.  
 알몸으로 삼팔선을 넘어 온 사람이 많습니다.  
 There are lots of people who crossed the 38th parallel with nothing but the shirts on their backs.  
 사업에 실패하여 알거지가 되고 말았어요.  
 He was left penniless after his business failed.

외-

only, single, lone, one, sole, isolated

**Examples :**

외길,	외나무다리,	외딸,	외아들,	외톨이
narrow path,	a single log bridge,	only daughter,	only son,	somebody alone

**Examples :**

여긴 외길이어서 차가 다니기에는 너무 좁습니다.  
 This little road is so narrow here that is hard for a car to get by.  
 외나무다리에 앉아 있으면 난 어떻게 지나가지?  
 If you're sitting on the log bridge, how am I supposed to get by?  
 그녀는 외딸로 귀여움을 독차지하고 있어요.  
 Being an only daughter, she has a monopoly on the cuteness front.

같이 다니던 친구가 결혼해서 외톨이가 되었습니다.  
The friend I used to hang out with got married, so now I'm on my own.

잔-  
small, trivial, insignificant, niggly, piddling, mickey-mouse, minor, slight

**Examples :**

잔기침	잔글씨	잔돈	잔돌	잔병
slight cough	tiny hand	[small]	gravel	minor
	writing	change	pebble	illness
잔소리	잔심부름	잔일	잔주름	잔털
nagging	small errand	minor jobs	fine wrinkle	peach fuzz

**Examples :**

너무 잔글씨라 보기가 어렵습니다.  
The handwriting is so small that it's hard to read.  
만원짜리를 잔돈으로 바꿔 주시겠습니까?  
Can you make change for a 10,000 won bill?  
크게는 앓지 않지만 잔병이 많아요.  
She never gets sick in a major way, but always has lots of minor ailments.  
어머니의 잔소리가 듣기 싫어 집에 늦게 들어간답니다.  
He says he goes home late because he doesn't like to listen to his mother's nagging.  
잔심부름은 언제나 막내가 하기 마련이지요.  
Most of the small errands are done by the baby of the family.

첫-  
first, initial; the beginning (one)

**Examples :**

첫걸음	첫날	첫눈	첫사랑	첫인상
first step	first day	[at] first	first	first
		sight	love	impression

**Examples :**

무엇을 하든지 첫걸음이 중요합니다.  
Whatever one might do, the first step is important.  
개학하는 첫날부터 공부를 합니까?  
You study from the first day of the term?  
첫눈에 반한 사람과 결혼했습니다.  
She married somebody she fell in love with at first sight.  
그 사람에 대한 첫인상이 어땠습니까?  
What was your first impression of her?  
누구에게나 첫사랑은 잊을 수 없는 추억일 것이다.  
One's first love is probably unforgettable for everyone.

총-  
all, whole, entire, general, overall, gross, total, full, comprehensive

**Examples :**

총계	총선거	총액	총예산	총인구
whole	general	total	total	total
amount	election	amount	budget	population
총재산	총책임			
total fortune	full responsibility			

**Examples :**

국회의원 총선거가 언제 있습니까?  
When is the general election for the national assemblymen?  
동상을 건립하는데 총예산을 얼마나 잡았습니까?  
What is the total budget you have allocated for erecting the statue?  
총인구의 몇 분지 몇이 기독교인인가요?  
What percentage of the total population is Protestant?  
실례지만 선생님 닁의 총재산이 얼마나 됩니까?  
It is impertinent of me to ask, but how much is your total fortune?  
이 작업의 총책임자는 누구입니까?  
Who is the person with ultimate responsibility for this project?

최-  
the most, the extreme, the ultimate, the maximum, ultra(-)

**Examples :**

최고 최근 최다수 최상급 최선두  
 highest [most] majority highest foremost  
                   recently                    level  
 최소 최신식 최첨단  
 smallest newest style ultramodern

**Examples :**

그 분의 솜씨는 최고예요.  
 Her technical skill is the best.  
 최근에 나온 책으로 어떤 책이 좋아요?  
 Which books are good of those which have come out most recently?  
 최다수가 선생님의 의견에 동의를 했습니다.  
 The majority agreed with the opinion of the teacher.  
 저 행열의 최선두에 선 사람이 누구입니까?  
 Who is the person standing at the front of their ranks?  
 그 분은 유행의 최첨단을 걷고 있다고 할 수 있지요.  
 I suppose you could say that she is at the cutting edge of fashion.

풋-

green, unripe, inexperienced; new, fresh

**Examples :**

풋고추            풋나물                    풋내기    풋사과  
 unripe pepper seasoned veggies greenhorn early apple  
                           prepared from first  
                           of the season

풋사랑  
 puppy love

**Examples :**

그 작은 풋고추가 꽤 매운데요.  
 That little green pepper is quite spicy!  
 봄에는 풋나물을 먹어야 입맛이 돌아요.  
 In the spring you have to eat young veggies if you want your appetite to revive.

회사에 들어온 지 얼마 안 된 풋내기가 여간 당당하지 않은데요.  
 This rookie who hasn't been in the company for very long is very cocky  
 ...

풋사과라 아직 맛이 덜 들었습니다.

These apples are a bit early for the season so they're not as tasty.

풋사랑에 빠져 갈팡질팡하고 있어요.

She's all confused because she's in puppy love.

햇-

new, of the year; spring; sunny, of the sun

**Examples :**

햇감자            햇곡식    햇과일    햇나물  
 first potatoes the year's first fruit veggie dishes from  
 of season harvest of season first veggies of season  
 햇사과                    햅쌀(not 햇쌀)  
 first apples of season first rice of season

**Examples :**

햇감자라 입에서 살살 녹아요.  
 They're the first potatoes of the season, so they melt in your mouth.  
 추석에는 햇곡식으로 밥을 지어요.  
 During ch'usok, they make rice using the first grains of the season.  
 햇과일이 나올 때가 되었는데 금년에는 좀 늦나봐요.  
 It's time for the first fruits of the harvest season, but it would appear  
 that they're a bit late this year.  
 햇나물은 더 부드럽고 맛도 좋지요.  
 The first greens of the season are softer and tastier, too.  
 햅쌀로 빚은 떡 좀 맛보세요.  
 Why don't you try one of these rice cakes made from new rice?

한-

big, large, great, main; proper

**Examples :**

한길	한밤중	한가운데	한여름
highway	middle of	in	midsummer
main road	the night	the middle	
한마음	한날 한시		
one mind	same day, same time		
one accord			

**Examples :**

한길에 나가 썰매 타던 시절이 언제죠?  
 It seems so long ago that we used to go out onto the main road and ride our toboggans...  
 한밤중에 전화가 와서 잠을 깨웠어요.  
 Somebody phoned in the middle of the night and woke me up.  
 그 상은 방 한가운데 놓으면 어때요?  
 How about if we put that table right in the middle of the room?  
 한겨울인데 그렇게 춥지 않아요.  
 It's not that cold for the middle of the winter.  
 우리는 한날 한시에 태어난 동갑입니다.  
 We're the same age — born on the same day at the same time.

홀-  
 lone; without a mate

**Examples :**

홀몸	홀수	홀아비	홀어머니	홀시어머니
single	odddnumber	widower	widow	widowed
person				mother-in-law

**Examples :**

홀몸도 아닌데 몸을 잘 돌봐야 해요.  
 [to a pregnant woman] There's two of you inside there, so you should take good care of yourself.  
 홀수는 홀수끼리, 짝수는 짝수끼리 손을 잡으세요.  
 Everybody hold hands — odds with odds and evens with evens.  
 홀아비는 이가 서말이라는 말이 있는데 무슨 뜻인지 아세요?  
 There is an expression which goes: "The widower has four lice" — do

you know what it means?  
 홀어머니를 모시고 살아요.  
 I'm living with my widowed mother.  
 홀시어머니 모시기가 얼마나 어려운지 알아요?  
 Do you have any idea how difficult it is to live with one's widowed mother-in-law?

**2. Suffixes (접미사)**

There are two kinds of suffix: a) those which merely limit the meaning of the host stem, and b) derivational suffixes which change the host stem into a different part of speech, like noun, verb or adverb. Passives and causatives also belong to the class of derivational suffixes, but we have decided to treat these affixes elsewhere.

**Nouns :**

-감	-경	-군	-껏
material for	approx	person	to the max
-꾸러기	-끼리	-님	-들
person	among likes	honorific	plural
-뱅이	-보	-새	-씨
person	person	mode, way	polite title
-씩	-어치	-장이	-중
per, each	worth	person	amongst
-질	-짜리	-쭙	-치
...-ing	-worth	approx, stuff	person
-기	-개	-(으)ㄱ	-이
...-ing	tool	...-ing	the one that...

**Verbs**

-거리다	-대다	뜨리다	-만하다
(for mimetics)	(for mimetics)	emphatic	worth doing; can do
-치다			
emphatic			

## Descriptive Verbs

-다랗다      -답다      -롭다      -스럽다  
rather    sort of like; worthy    characterized    is like, suggests  
of the name

-찍다  
gives/has a  
feeling of

## Adverbs

-로    -이  
-ly   -ly

-간

among, between; for [a duration]

## Examples :

부자간,      형제간,      서울과 부산간,      며칠간  
between father and son,    between brothers,    between Seoul and Pusan,    for a few days

## Examples :

부자간에 무슨 문제가 있는 것 같아요.  
There appears to be some problem between the father and son.  
형제간이 얼마나 좋은지 모릅니다.  
Those two brothers have such a good relationship!  
서울과 부산간의 거리가 어떻게 돼요?  
What is the distance between Seoul and Pusan?  
며칠간의 여유만 주시면 빌린 돈을 갚겠습니다.  
If you give just a few days' leeway, I'll pay back the money I borrowed.  
삼일간의 휴가로 바닷가에 갔다 왔습니다.  
I've been to the seaside for three days' holiday.

-감

material for, stuff for; a suitable person;  
feeling, sense

## Examples :

장난감	일감	국거릿감
toy	work; stuff to work on	soup fixings
사윗감	며느릿감	신부감
son-in-law	daughter-in-law	bride
material	material	material
신랑감	책임감	우월감
groom	sense of responsibility	sense of superiority, superiority complex
비굴감		열등감
sense of servility or obsequiousness		inferiority complex

## Examples :

오늘 우리 아이 생일이니까 장난감을 사 가지고 가지.  
Today is our child's birthday, so we should buy some toys.  
일감이 너무 많아, 해도 해도 끝이 안 나요.  
We have so much work to do, that work as we might, there is no end to it.  
좋은 며느릿감이 있으면 중매 서세요.  
If you know any good potential daughter-in-laws, please act as an intermediary for us.  
우리 회사에는 자신있게 소개할 만한 신부감이 많아요.  
In my company, there are plenty of potential wives that I could introduce to you in all confidence.  
그 분은 책임감이 강해서 저렇게 늦게까지 일하고 있어요.  
She is working late like that because she has such a strong sense of responsibility.

-거리다/-대다

does repeatedly, continuously; does and does; keeps doing, does on (and on), does (keeps doing) it away; does again and again, does over and over again

## Examples :

굽실거리다	기웃거리다	깜빡거리다
bend, bow	peek, tilt, peer	blink
꼬불거리다	더듬거리다	두근거리다
wind, zigzag	stutter	palpitate, throb
반짝거리다	북적거리다	비쭈거리다
shimmer, sparkle	bustle, jostle	protrude, stick out
얼썬거리다	재잘거리다	중얼거리다
keep showing up	gibber, chatter	mumble
출렁거리다	투덜거리다	헐떡거리다
slosh	grumble, grouse	pant, breathe hard
화끈거리다	흐느적거리다	
flare up	sway, waver	

**Examples :**

남의 밑에 가서 일하자면 **굽실거리려야** 해요.  
 If you go to work beneath somebody else, do you always have to be bowing and scraping?  
 낯선 사람이 우리 집을 **기웃거리고** 있어요.  
 Some stranger was peering into our house.  
 무엇이 불안한지 눈을 **깜빡거리고** 있습니다.  
 He must feel uneasy about something, as he keeps blinking his eyes.  
**더듬거리지** 말고 천천히 이야기 해 봐요.  
 Stop stammering, and try to speak slowly.  
 남대문시장엔 사람들이 **북적대요**.  
 The Namdaemun Market is teeming with people.

**-다랗다**

is rather, quite, sort of (sorta), kind of (kinda); is ... -ish

This suffix attaches only to descriptive verbs.

**Examples :**

굵다랗다, 높다랗다, 커다랗다, 길다랗다, 가느다랗다  
 rather thick, rather high, rather large, rather long, rather slender

**Examples :**

나무들이 **굵다랗게** 잘 자랐습니다.  
 The trees have grown in rather nice and thick.  
 저 **높다란** 하늘 좀 보세요.  
 Just look at that high sky.  
 동그라미를 **커다랗게** 그려서 무얼 하려고 합니까?  
 What is it you intend to do by drawing such a largish circle?  
**길다란** 나무 가지 하나 가져다 주시겠어요?  
 Could you please bring me a longish branch?  
 허리가 너무 **가느다래서** 어디 힘을 쓰겠어요?  
 Your waist is so slender — where do you find strength for anything?

**-답다**

is like, is worth being, is worthy of the name, is a compliment to..., is every bit a...

This suffix attaches to nouns and creates descriptive verbs.

**Examples :**

학생답다, 여자답다, 군인답다, 신사답다, 교육자답다  
 student-like, woman-like, soldier-like, gentleman-like, educator-like

**Examples :**

학생은 **학생답게** 행동해야 한다.  
 Students should behave like students.  
 그녀는 **여자다운** 데가 하나도 없어요.  
 There's nothing ladylike about her.  
**군인답다고** 하면 씩씩하고 용감한 것을 말합니다.  
 When one says 'soldier-like', one means brave and courageous.  
**신사답지** 않게 여성에게 그런 행동을 하다니...  
 To think that he would do something so ungentlemanly to a woman...  
 그는 **교육자답게** 조언을 잘 해 주셨습니다.  
 True to her status as an educator, she gave him some words of advice.

**-답시고**

[**IRONICAL**] saying ~ thinking ~ feeling that it is ~ does

**Examples :**



그 일을 자기가 **한답시고** 앞장 서서 나갔습니다.  
He struck out ahead of the others, claiming he would take care of it himself.

잘 **고쳐본답시고** 한 것이 더 못 쓰게 만들었어요.  
He claimed he would fix it up, but instead he made it worse.  
일을 혼자 **한답시고** 가져가더니 왜 도로 가져왔습니까?  
I thought you took it away claiming you would do it by yourself — so why have you brought it back?

돈을 좀 **벌었답시고** 마구 써 버리고 있습니다.  
All puffed up that he earned a bit of money, he is spending it like crazy.  
**힘깨나 쓴답시고** 어깨에 힘을 주고 다닙니다.  
He's walking around with his shoulders all pushed back, pretending to be strong.

-롭다

is (characterized) by

This suffix attaches to certain nouns and creates descriptive verbs.

**Examples :**

자유롭다 신기롭다 해롭다 공교롭다 슬기롭다  
free amazing harmful ingenious wise  
이롭다 향기롭다  
advantageous fragrant

**Examples :**

어디에도 얽매이지 않고 **자유롭게** 살고 싶다.  
I want to live free, without being tied down anywhere.  
록키산맥이야말로 **웅장하고 신비로워**.  
The Rockie Mountains are truly awe-inspiring and mysterious.  
몸에 **해로운** 담배를 왜 피우지?  
Why do you smoke, when it is so harmful to your body?  
본의는 아니었는데 **공교롭게** 그 분에게 실망을 주게 되었습니다.  
It wasn't my original intention, but somehow (and in an ingeniously contrived way) I ended up disappointing her.  
부부간의 문제는 **슬기롭게** 잘 넘겨야 해요.

When it comes to marital problems, one should resolve them wisely.

-만하다

is to the extent of, is as big~little as, is the size of; is sufficient (to do), is well worth (doing); is at the point (of doing), has reached the stage (when one can do)

**Examples :**

그 개는 **송아지만하다**.  
That dog is as big as a calf.  
병세가 **그만한 것 같습니다**.  
His condition appears to be the same as before.  
**형만한** 아우도 없는 것 같아요.  
It seems there is no brother quite so good as one's older brother.  
아무리 보아도 우리 **집만한** 집이 없어요.  
However much we looked, there was no house as decent as our house.  
**주먹만한** 돌에 맞았어요.  
She was hit by a stone the size of her fist.

-스럽다

is like, gives the impression of (doing), seems, suggests, is suggestive of

This suffix attaches to nouns and creates descriptive verbs.

**Examples :**

사랑스럽다	자랑스럽다	걱정스럽다
loving, loveable	proud, full of pride	worrisome
조심스럽다	별스럽다	변덕스럽다
cautious	particular, eccentric	capricious

**Examples :**

그 아이 정말 **사랑스럽게** 생겼어요.  
That child sure is loveable-looking.  
**자랑스러운** 우리 딸! 금메달을 따다니.  
We're so proud of our daughter! Who have thought she get the gold medal!?

그는 걱정스러운 표정으로 나를 쳐다 본다.  
 He is staring at me with a worried expression.  
 마음이 상할까봐 조심스럽게 타일렀습니다.  
 I told her off carefully, lest I hurt her feelings.  
 그의 성격은 변덕스러워 어떻게 맞추어야 할지 모르겠습니다.  
 He is so fickle, that I never know best how to accomodate him.

-찍다  
 feels~gives~has a feeling of

This suffix attaches to abstract nouns denoting emotions or feelings and creates descriptive verbs.

**Examples :**

겸연쩍다    미심쩍다    수상쩍다  
 disconcerted    questionable    suspicious, "fishy"

**Examples :**

자기가 잘못했으니까 겸연쩍은가 봐요.  
 She looks embarrassed, since she was the one who screwed up.  
 그 분이 여기 책임자인지 미심쩍어 물어봤어요.  
 I was a little dubious that he was the person in charge here, so I asked.  
 수상쩍은 사람이 나타나면 바로 연락하세요.  
 If anybody suspicious shows up, contact me at once.

Reference

**Punctuation**

Figure 28 below presents the sentence punctuation symbols most widely used in Korean.

〈Figure 28〉 Punctuation

Symbol	Name	Explanation	Examples
.	마침표 period	Signals the end of a declarative, imperative or suggestion sentence. Also used for abbreviations and dates.	철수가 온다. 가라. 같이 공부합시다. R.O.K. U.S.A. 1995. 2. 28.
,	쉼표 comma	-with coordinate or subordinate clauses: -for enumeration of nouns or phrases: -for conjunctors or conjunctive phrases: -after independent expressions: -after appositives:	한국말은 어렵고, 시간이 많이 걸린다. 공책, 연필, 가방을 샀다. 그러나, 그는 오지 않았다. 아, 숙제를 잊었군! 고독, 그것은 가을에 느낄 수 있는 정취다.

		-to signal ellided predicates:	아침엔 학교에서, 저녁엔 집에서 공부했다.
?	물음표 Question mark	Signals the end of an interrogative sentence. When a sentence contains more than one question form, only one question mark is used, at the end.	한국 사람입니까?  공부를 할 것인가, 돈을 벌 것인가?
!	느낌표 exclamation mark	-to express surprise or exclamation: -when calling people or animals:	날씨가 좋구나! 아!  철수야!
: ;	쌍반점 (semi-)colon	-when listing examples, use(:) -when giving an explanation, use(;) -for time telling, use(:) -for chapter and verse, use(:)	음료수 : 콜라, 사이다  자전거; 바퀴가 두 개 달린 차 오전 10 : 30  창세기 5 : 6
“ ” 「」	따옴표 quotation mark	-when citing or quoting -for emphasis	“시간이 반이다”란 말이 있다. “「6.25」를 상기 하자.”
(		-when inserting an explanation or other content	8월 15일 (광복절)에……

)	묶음표 parentheses	-when inserting annotations of words or phrases	돌아가다(죽다) 이름(名)
……	줄임표 ellipses	-to show ellipses -to indicate silence	날씨가 참 좋은데……. “왜 거짓말을 했니?” “……”.

## Recommendations for Further Reading

The original Korean edition of this work includes a list of additional references, most of which are in Korean and most of which reflect the Yonsei University's traditional Korean school grammar. Since most foreign learners of Korean are unlikely to read Korean grammatical treatises in Korean until they reach a very high level of competency, I include below an annotated listing of works in English which students may find helpful as they, inevitably, leave the beaten track of textbooks and formal classroom learning, and venture into the no-man's land of self-study through which all students must pass before reaching any reasonably high level of proficiency in Korean. I have also included one or two Korean works which I have found particularly useful in my own study of Korean.

Choo, Miho and William O'Grady. 1996. *Handbook of Korean Vocabulary: A Resource for Word Recognition and Comprehension*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press.

Given the rather chaotic approach to vocabulary found in most textbooks available today, this handbook is a useful tool for students trying to increase their vocabulary in a more systematic fashion. The division of Korean vocabulary into two sections -- Sino-korean and pure Korean -- should be helpful for students who have already embarked on the study of Chinese characters in their Korean readings. Example sentences for the vocabulary introduced would have made this book even more useful, but students can find such examples in some of the most recently published Korean-Korean dictionaries.

Kim-Renaud, Young-Key (ed.). 1997. *The Korean Alphabet: Its History and Structure*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press.

All learners of Korean are treated to a barrage of praise and adulation about the Korean script and the circumstances of its invention in the 15th century, but it was difficult until recently to find level-headed treatments of the subject in good, well-edited English prose. This volume brings together highly readable and interesting essays by a number of scholars from Korea and the United States, and should make clear why all that praise and adulation for the Korean script is so richly deserved.

King, Ross and Jae-Hoon Yeon. 1999. *Korean: A Foundation Course*. Rutland, Vermont & Tokyo, Japan: Charles E. Tuttle Company, Inc.

and

King, Ross and Jae-Hoon Yeon, with Insun Lee. Forthcoming. *Korean: A Continuing Course*.

Inspired by the now out-of-print *Beginning Korean* by Martin, Chang and Lee, these new textbooks offer an introduction to the fundamental structures of colloquial Korean in a way that clarifies many of the mysteries and unanswered questions that haunt learners of Korean using other textbooks on the market. They should prove useful review for any advanced student of the language, wherever they may have first learned Korean.

Lee, Keedong. 1993. *A Korean Grammar on Semantic-Pragmatic Principles*. 서울: 한국문화사.

Professor Lee's coverage is rather selective and incomplete, making this work less than the 'grammar' it claims to be (it also lacks an index), but those areas of Korean grammar which he covers are handled cleverly and with great insight. Moreover, the examples are all in Korean script,

making this book readily accessible to most learners.

Martin, Samuel E. 1992. *A Reference Grammar of Korean*. Rutland, Vermont & Tokyo, Japan: Charles E. Tuttle Company, Inc.

This mammoth work is the result of over forty years' work in Korean linguistics. Do not be put off by the Yale romanization — this transliteration system is easily learned, and the initial investment of time and effort in learning Martin's system soon yields a rich payback in the wealth of information and detail, both synchronic and diachronic, to be found in this book. Just remember, it is a reference grammar, not a textbook.

Sohn, Ho-min. 1994. *Korean*. London and New York: Routledge.

Part of the Routledge 'Descriptive Grammars' series, this work of nearly 600 pages is a highly competent and informative sketch of Korean grammar. This book is especially good on Korean syntax and pragmatics, but the lack of an index of grammatical forms makes it rather difficult to use as a reference tool. Rumor has it that the book is already out of print, but it is well worth the hunt. Note that all forms are in Yale romanization (another good reason to learn this system of transliteration!).

서정수. 1996. *국어문법 (수정 증보판)*. 서울: 한양대학교 출판원.

At nearly 1600 pages, this monumental work contains a wealth of descriptive information and theoretical analyses of Korean grammar. The book has extensive indices and an excellent bibliography, and is somewhat unusual in that it is informed by wide reading not only in traditional Korean grammar, but also in general linguistics as practiced in Europe and North America. Not for the light-hearted, but probably the best place to go for information on Korean structure in Korean, and a bargain at 50,000 won.

## Dictionaries: Korean-English

Martin, Samuel E., Lee Yang Ha and Chang Sung-Un. 1968/1992. *Minjungseorim's New Korean-English Dictionary*. Seoul: Minjungseorim.

A reprint in smaller format of the long out-of-print Korean-English Dictionary published by Yale University Press, this work recently went out of print in Korea, but can still be found in bookshops and at the publisher's head office in Seoul. This dictionary contains much useful grammatical information (all of which is also incorporated into Martin's 1992 grammar), and is the only major Korean-English dictionary ever produced that actually has the needs of the English-speaking learner in mind. Any serious student of Korean should own a copy.

## Dictionaries: Korean-Korean

Although most serious students of Korean can probably postpone, almost indefinitely, the reading of Korean grammatical works written in Korean by Koreans without any lasting harm to their Korean ability, there comes a time, once one has stepped out into the no-man's land, when every student must make frequent and regular reference to Korean-Korean dictionaries. The 1990s has witnessed a virtual explosion of publication activity in this field, and here we list just two of the many new and important Korean-Korean dictionaries on the market. Unless one has easy access to reference works like these through a university library, it is probably best to bite the bullet and buy at least one of them.

남영신 (comp.). 1997. *훈+국어사전*. Seoul: Song'andang Publishing.

남영신 has already established himself as Korea's lexicographer par excellence with his 1987 *우리말 분류 사전* (Dictionary of Korean Semantic Categories — 성안당 출판사) and his 1995 *국어 용례 사전* (Dictionary of Korean Stylistic Examples). The *훈+국어사전* is particularly noteworthy for its combination of excellent definitions with useful and interesting

linguistic and cultural information. This work is especially good for its advice on style and usage, and for its examples from and separate entries for famous works of Korean literature and folk songs.

한글학회 (comp.). 1991. *우리말 큰 사전* (Large Dictionary of Korean). 서울: 어문각.

The result of years of work by a cast of thousands at Korea's oldest and most venerable linguistic society, this dictionary contains 450,000 entries and is the largest Korean dictionary published to date. The definitions are clear and concise, and include good example sentences, often from literature. The separate dialect and pre-modern Korean sections are excellent. This bulky work has been published in a few different formats, and you are well-advised to purchase the edition that splits it up into three different volumes.

## Index

- <ㄱ>
- 가 144, 148
  - 간 412
  - 간에 238
  - 감 412
  - 갓- 400
  - 거나 237
  - 거나 간에 238
  - 거나 말거나 238, 360
  - 거늘 239
  - 거늘 하물며 239
  - 거니 말거니 360
  - 거니와 242
  - 거니 하다 240
  - 거든 242
  - 거든(요) 244
  - 거들랑 244
  - 거리다 413
  - 건 238
  - 건대 245
  - 건마는 246
  - 계 16, 138
  - 계꿈 246
  - 계시리 246
  - 계 하다 246, 363, 368
  - 걸 22
  - 것 21
  - 것은 22
  - 것을 22
  - 것이 22
  - 겠- 195, 196
  - 겠구나 227
  - 겸 28
  - 고 16, 247
  - 고 계시다 196, 341
  - 고 나니까 344
  - 고 나다 344
  - 고 나면 344
  - 고 나서 344
  - 고는 249
  - 고도 250
  - 고 말다 182, 346
  - 고 보다 250
  - 고서 251
  - 고서라도 252
  - 고서야 252
  - 고 싶다 355
  - 고 싶어하다 355
  - 고야 말다 182
  - 고 있다 341
  - 고자 253
  - 고 해서 254
  - 곤 하다 352
  - 과 159
  - 관계 64
  - 관계로 64

-구나 227  
 -구나 싶다 355  
 -균 227  
 그래도 134  
 그래서 132  
 그러나 130  
 그러니까 134  
 그러면 131  
 그러면서 135  
 그런데 132  
 그렇지 않아도 136  
 그리고 129  
 -기 319  
 -기가 320  
 -기(가) 쉽다 320  
 -기(가) 일쑤(이)다 330  
 -기 그지없다 329  
 -기 나름이다 30  
 -기는 321  
 -기는(요) 322  
 -기는 커녕 322  
 -기는 하다 321  
 -기도 323  
 -기도 하려니와 300  
 -기 때문에 333  
 -기란 326  
 -기로 326  
 -기로서니 328  
 -기 마련이다 331  
 -기만 324  
 -기 쉽다 320  
 -기야 327  
 -기에 43, 324

-기에 망정 43  
 -기 위하여 334  
 -기 위해서 334  
 -기 일쑤이다 330  
 -기 전에 333  
 -기 짝이 없다 329  
 -기 한이 없다 330  
 길 65  
 -길래 328  
 -길래 망정 43  
 김 29  
 -까지 161  
 -깨나 162  
 -께 149  
 -께서 144  
 끝 66  
 끝에 66

## 〈ㄴ〉

-ㄴ 317  
 -ㄴ 가 보다 229  
 -ㄴ 가 하다 254  
 -ㄴ 가 하면 254  
 -ㄴ 걸 224  
 -ㄴ 걸 보니 27  
 -ㄴ 것 21  
 -ㄴ 것 같다 26  
 -ㄴ 것 같던데요 27  
 -ㄴ 것이다 22  
 -ㄴ 관계로 65  
 -ㄴ 김에 29  
 -ㄴ 끝에 66  
 -ㄴ다 189

-ㄴ다고(요) ? 392  
 -ㄴ다고 그래(요) 389  
 -ㄴ다고+Quotational clause 387  
 -ㄴ다고+Reporting Verb(Phrase) 387  
 -ㄴ다기에 325, 395  
 -ㄴ다는 것이 395  
 -ㄴ다니요(?) 393  
 -ㄴ다든지 35, 290  
 -ㄴ다지 않습니까 392  
 -ㄴ단 말이다 397  
 -ㄴ담 230  
 -ㄴ답니까 383  
 -ㄴ답니다 383  
 -ㄴ대 385  
 -ㄴ대로 33  
 -ㄴ대서야 263  
 -ㄴ 대신 36  
 -ㄴ 대요 384  
 -ㄴ데 264  
 -ㄴ데도 265  
 -ㄴ둥 37  
 -ㄴ들 282  
 -ㄴ 듯 만 듯 39  
 -ㄴ 듯이 38  
 -ㄴ 듯싶다 40  
 -ㄴ 듯하다 39  
 -ㄴ 만큼 42  
 -ㄴ 모양이다 70  
 -ㄴ 바 44  
 -ㄴ 반면에 71  
 -ㄴ 법이다 72  
 -ㄴ 사이에 74  
 -ㄴ 셈이다 75  
 -ㄴ 셈치다 76  
 -ㄴ 수가 있다 50  
 -ㄴ 양 51  
 -ㄴ 일이 있다 76  
 -ㄴ 적이 있다 52  
 -ㄴ 정도 77  
 -ㄴ 줄 알다 54  
 -ㄴ 즉 184  
 -ㄴ 지 54  
 -ㄴ지 알다 55  
 -ㄴ 채 57  
 -ㄴ 체하다 58  
 -ㄴ 탓이다 59  
 -ㄴ 편이다 63  
 -ㄴ 후 80  
 -나 228, 256  
 -나(요) 228  
 -나 -ㄴ 258  
 -나 -나 257  
 나름 30  
 -나름이다 30  
 -나마 259  
 -나 마다 228, 258  
 -나 보다 228  
 -나 싶다 356  
 나위 31  
 날 67  
 -느니 259  
 -느라고 261  
 -느라니까 261  
 -느라면 261  
 -는 163, 317



- 는가 하다 255
- 는가 하면 254
- 는 걸 224
- 는 걸 보니 27
- 는 것 21
- 는 것 같다 26
- 는 것 같던데요 27
- 는 것이다 22
- 는 관계로 65
- (는)구나 227
- (는)군 227
- 는 길이다 66
- 는 김에 29
- 는 날에는 67
- 는다 374
- 는다고(요)? 392
- 는다고 그래(요) 389
- 는다기에 325
- 는다는 것이 395
- 는다는 대로 35
- 는다니요(?) 393
- 는다든지 290
- 는다지 않습니까? 392
- 는단 말이다 397
- 는답 230
- 는답니까? 383
- 는답니다 383
- 는 대로 34
- 는대서야 263
- 는 대신 36
- 는대요 384
- 는데 264
- 는데도 265
- 는 도중에 69
- 는 동안(에) 37
- 는 둥 37
- 는 듯 마는 듯 39
- 는 듯이 38
- 는 듯싶다 40
- 는 듯하다 39
- 는 마당에 69
- 는 만큼 42
- 는 모양이다 70
- 는 바 44
- 는 바람에 71
- 는 반면 71
- 는 법이다 72
- 는 법이 있다 72
- 는 사이에 74
- 는 셈치다 76
- 는 수가 있다 50
- 는 양 51
- 는 일이 있다 76
- 는 정도 77
- 는 줄 알다 54
- 는지 알다 56
- 는 척하다 58
- 는 चे하다 58
- 는 탓 59
- 는 통에 79
- 는 편 63
- 는 한 64
- 니 267
- 니까 265
- 니 만큼 42, 268
- 니 망정 43

## 〈ㄷ〉

- ㄷ-irregular verbs 109
- 다(가) 보니 272
- 다(가) 보면 271
- 다가 269
- 다가는 270
- 다가도 270
- 다랗다 414
- 다 못해 274
- 다 뿐이다 48
- 다손 치더라도 275
- 다시피 276
- 담 162
- 담다 415
- 담시고 415
- 대다 413
- 대로 32
- 대신 36
- 더니 277
- 더니만 279
- 더라도 280
- 던 318
- 던가(요) 229
- 던걸 226
- 던 끝에 66
- 던데 281
- 던 적이 있다 52
- 던지 284
- 덧- 400
- 테(요) 231
- 도 167
- 도록 16, 285
- 도록 하다 286

- 도중 69
- 도중에 69
- 동안 37
- 되- 401
- 되 287
- 둥 37
- 든지 289
- 든지 말든지 360
- 듯 38
- 듯 290
- 따름 32
- 때 68

## 〈ㄹ〉

- ㄹ-irregular verbs 113
- ㄹ 318
- ㄹ래(요) 233
- ㄹ 거예요 195
- ㄹ 건가요 23
- ㄹ 걸 224
- ㄹ 걸 (그랬다) 225
- ㄹ 걸요 24
- ㄹ 것 21
- ㄹ 것 같다 26
- ㄹ 것 같으면 26
- ㄹ 것 없다 25
- ㄹ 것이다 22
- ㄹ 게요 226
- ㄹ 겠 29
- ㄹ까 말까 223
- ㄹ까 싶다 355
- ㄹ까요? 221
- ㄹ까 하다 224

- 르 나위가 없다 31
- 르 대로 33
- 르 둥 37
- 르 듯 38
- 르 듯 말듯 39
- 르 듯싶다 40
- 르 듯이 38
- 르 듯하다 39
- 르 따름이다 32
- 르 때 68
- 르라 231
- 르라치면 291
- 르락 말락(하다) 232
- 르랑 173
- 르래(요) 233
- 르 리가 있다 40
- 르 만큼 42
- 르 모양이다 70
- 르 무렵 44
- 르 바 44
- 르 바에야 45
- 르 법하다 73
- 르 뻔했다 45
- 르 뻔더러 47, 292
- 르 뻔만 아니라 47
- 르 뿐이다 46
- 르 사이에 74
- 르 성싶다 355
- 르 셈이다 75
- 르 셈치다 76
- 르 수가 있어야죠 50
- 르 수록 29
- 르 수 있는 대로 35
- 르 수 있다 49
- 르 양 51
- 르 적 53
- 르 정도 77
- 르 줄 알다 53
- 르 지경이다 78
- 르지라도 293
- 르지 말지 360
- 르지 알다 55
- 르지언정 294
- 르진대 294
- 르 참이다 56
- 르 테니까 60
- 르 테면 62
- 르 테야 60
- 르 테지요 62
- 르 텐데 61
- 라고+Reporting verb(Phrase) 386
- 라고+Quotational Clause 388
- 라고요? 393
- 라니요? 393
- 라도 169
- 라든지 171
- 라서 172
- 랍니까? 382
- 랍니다 382
- 랍시고 173
- 랑 158
- 래(요) 385
- 랴? 233
- 러 가다 342
- 러 들다 342

- 러 오다 342
- 려거든 243, 297
- 려고 295
- 려고 하다 296
- 려니 298
- 려니와 299
- 려다가 272
- 려다가 말고 273
- 려던 참이다 57
- 려무나 234
- 련마는 301
- 럼 234
- 로 154
- 로되 288
- 로 보나 257
- 로서 157
- 로써 157
- 롭다 416
- 르-irregular verbs 110
- 를 146
- 를 달라고 379
- 리 40
- 리 126
- 리라 234
- 〈ㄹ〉
- ㄹ 334
- ㄹ에 336
- ㄹ으로 306
- ㄹ으로써 306
- ㄹ을 335
- ㄹ이 335
- 마다 174
- 마당 69
- 마저 175
- 만 41
- 만 175
- 만큼 41
- 만하다 417
- 말이다 396
- 망정 43
- 맞- 402
- 매- 402
- 매-마다 174
- 며 304
- 면 302
- 면서 303
- 면서도 304
- 면야 303
- 모양 70
- 무렵 44
- 므로 306
- 〈ㅁ〉
- ㅁ니다 156
- ㅁ-irregular verbs 108
- 바 44
- 바람 70
- 밖에 176
- 반면 71
- 법 72
- 보고 177
- 보다 178
- 부터 178
- 부터 -까지 179
- 뿐 46

- 뿐 180
- 뿐(만) 아니라 47
- 뿐이다 46
- 〈ㅅ〉
- ㅅ-irregular verbs 106
- 사이 74
- 사이에 74
- 새- 403
- 생- 404
- 서라 235
- 셈 75
- 수 49
- 스럽다 417
- 습니다 156
- 〈ㅇ〉
- 아 158
- 아니다 101
- 아니하다 361
- 알- 404
- 야 158
- 양 51
- 어(아, 여)가다 340
- 어(아, 여)가지다 354
- 어(아, 여)내다 343
- 어(아, 여)놓다 353
- 어(아, 여)다가 274
- 어(아, 여)달라고 379
- 어(아, 여)대다 351
- 어(아, 여)도 307
- 어(아, 여)두다 353
- 어(아, 여)드리겠습니까 349

- 어(아, 여)드리다 348
- 어(아, 여)드릴까요 348
- 어(아, 여)말다 360
- 어(아, 여)버리다 344
- 어(아, 여)보다 350
- 어(아, 여)보았댜자 315
- 어(아, 여)보았자 314
- 어(아, 여)본 일이 없다 351
- 어(아, 여)본 일이 있다 351
- 어(아, 여)볼까요 350
- 어(아, 여)빠지다 346
- 어(아, 여)서 308
- 어(아, 여)야 309
- 어(아, 여)야만 309
- 어(아, 여)야 하다 311
- 어(아, 여)오다 340
- 어(아, 여)있다 357
- 어(아, 여)주다 348
- 어(아, 여)주시겠습니까 349
- 어(아, 여)주십시오 348
- 어(아, 여)지다 358
- 어(아, 여)치우다 347
- 얼마나 -(으)ㄴ 지 않다 55
- 었(았, 였) 192
- 었(았, 였)구나 227
- 었(았, 였)구나 싶자 313
- 었(았, 였)는지 않다 55
- 었(았, 였)다가 269
- 었(았, 였)더니 278
- 었(았, 였)더라면 280
- 었(았, 였)던 319
- 었(았, 였)던들 283
- 었(았, 였)던 적이 있다 52

- 었(았, 였)던지 184
- 었(았, 였)으면 싶다 356
- 에 149
- 에게 149
- 에게서 152
- 에게 -을/를 -어(아, 여)드리라고 379
- 에게 -을/를 -어(아, 여)주라고 379
- 에(다가) 160
- 에서 144, 152
- 에서부터 180
- 여 158
- 와 158
- 외- 405
- (으)ㄴ 317
- (으)ㄴ가 보다 229
- (으)ㄴ가 하다 255
- (으)ㄴ가 하면 254
- (으)ㄴ걸 224
- (으)ㄴ관계로 65
- (으)ㄴ끝에 66
- (으)ㄴ대로 33
- (으)ㄴ대신 36
- (으)ㄴ데 264
- (으)ㄴ데도 265
- (으)ㄴ둥 37
- (으)ㄴ들 282
- (으)ㄴ듯싶다 40
- (으)ㄴ듯이 38
- (으)ㄴ듯하다 39
- (으)ㄴ만큼 42
- (으)ㄴ모양이다 70
- (으)ㄴ바 44
- (으)ㄴ반면에 71
- (으)ㄴ범이다 72
- (으)ㄴ사이에 74
- (으)ㄴ셈이다 75
- (으)ㄴ셈치다 76
- (으)ㄴ수가 있다 50
- (으)ㄴ양 51
- (으)ㄴ일이 있다 76
- (으)ㄴ적이 있다 52
- (으)ㄴ정도 77
- (으)ㄴ출알다 54
- (으)ㄴ지 54
- (으)ㄴ지알다 55
- (으)ㄴ채 57
- (으)ㄴ척하다 58
- (으)ㄴ체하다 58
- (으)ㄴ탓 59
- (으)ㄴ편이다 63
- (으)ㄴ후 80
- (으)나 256
- (으)나 -(으)ㄴ 258
- (으)나 -(으)나 257
- (으)나마 259
- (으)나 마나 258
- (으)니 16, 267
- (으)니까 265
- (으)니 만큼 42, 268
- (으)니 망정 42
- (으)ㄴ 318
- (으)ㄴ 거예요 195
- (으)ㄴ걸 225
- (으)ㄴ걸(그랬다) 225

- (-으)ㄹ 것 있다 23
- (-으)ㄹ게요 226
- (-으)ㄹ까 말까 223
- (-으)ㄹ까 싶다 357
- (-으)ㄹ까요? 221
- (-으)ㄹ까 하다 224
- (-으)ㄹ 대로 33
- (-으)ㄹ 둥 37
- (-으)ㄹ 듯 말 듯(하다) 39
- (-으)ㄹ 듯싶다 40
- (-으)ㄹ 듯이 38
- (-으)ㄹ 듯하다 39, 340
- (-으)ㄹ 때 68
- (-으)ㄹ라 231
- (-으)ㄹ라치면 291
- (-으)ㄹ락 말락(하다) 232
- (-으)ㄹ래(요) 232
- (-으)ㄹ 리가 있다 40
- (-으)ㄹ 만큼 42
- (-으)ㄹ 만하다 340
- (-으)ㄹ 모양이다 70
- (-으)ㄹ 무렵 44
- (-으)ㄹ 바 44
- (-으)ㄹ 바에야 45
- (-으)ㄹ 범하다 73
- (-으)ㄹ 뻔하다 45
- (-으)ㄹ 뿐더러 47, 292
- (-으)ㄹ 뿐만 아니라 47
- (-으)ㄹ 뿐이다 46
- (-으)ㄹ 사이에 74
- (-으)ㄹ 성싶다 357
- (-으)ㄹ 셈이다 75
- (-으)ㄹ 셈치다 76
- (-으)ㄹ 수가 있어야죠 50
- (-으)ㄹ수록 292
- (-으)ㄹ 수 없다 49
- (-으)ㄹ 양으로 51
- (-으)ㄹ 적 52
- (-으)ㄹ 정도 77
- (-으)ㄹ 줄 알다 53
- (-으)ㄹ 지경이다 78
- (-으)ㄹ지라도 293
- (-으)ㄹ지 말지 361
- (-으)ㄹ지 알다 53
- (-으)ㄹ지언정 294
- (-으)ㄹ진대 294
- (-으)ㄹ 참이다 56
- (-으)ㄹ 테니까 60
- (-으)ㄹ 테면 62
- (-으)ㄹ 테야 60
- (-으)ㄹ 테지요 62
- (-으)ㄹ 텐데 61
- (-으)라고+Quotational Clause 388
- (-으)라 233, 294
- (-으)러 가다 342
- (-으)러 들다 342
- (-으)러 오다 342
- (-으)러거든 243, 297
- (-으)려고 295
- (-으)려고 하다 296
- (-으)러니 298
- (-으)러니까 298
- (-으)러니와 299
- (-으)러다가 272
- (-으)러다가 말고 273

- (-으)려던 298
- (-으)려던 참이다 57
- (-으)려면 298
- (-으)려무나 234
- (-으)련마는 301
- (-으)럼 234
- (-으)로 128, 154
- (-으)로 보나 257
- (-으)로서 157
- (-으)로써 157
- (-으)리라 234
- (-으)ㄴ 334
- (-으)ㄴ에 336
- (-으)ㄴ에도 불구하고 336
- (-으)ㄴ으로 306
- (-으)ㄴ으로써 306
- (-으)ㄴ을 335
- (-으)ㄴ이 335
- (-으)며 16, 304
- (-으)면 302
- (-으)면서(도) 304
- (-으)면서부터 179
- (-으)면야 303
- (-으)면 좋겠어요 302
- (-으)므로 306
- (으)서라 235
- 은 163
- 은(는) -대로 33
- 을 146
- 을 달라고 379
- 의 148
- 이 124, 144, 148
- (-이)ㄴ들 169
- (-이)ㄴ 즉 184
- (-이)나 즉슨 184
- (-이)나 164
- (-이)나마 166
- (-이)든지 168
- (-이)ㄴ랑 173
- (-이)라고+Reporting Verb(Phras) 386
- (-이)라고요 392
- (-이)라니요(?) 393
- (-이)라도 169
- (-이)라든지 171
- (-이)라서 171
- (-이)라야 182
- (-이)랍니까? 283
- (-이)랍니다 283
- (-이)랍시고 173
- (-이)랑 159
- (-이)려니와 300
- (-이)로되 288
- (-이)며 161
- (-이)야 181
- (-이)야 말로 181
- (-이)여 158
- 이다 99
- 이 144, 148
- 이자 312
- 일 76
- 있다 101
- 〈ㅈ〉
- 자 311
- 자니 313

자니요? 394  
 -자마자 312  
 -자면 390  
 잔- 406  
 -재(요) 385  
 적 52  
 -정도 77  
 -조차 184  
 줄 53  
 즉 137  
 지 54  
 -지 315, 355  
 지경 78  
 지(요) 235  
 -지 말다 359  
 -지 말라고 하다 378  
 -지 못하다 362  
 -지 싶다 357  
 -지 아니하다 361  
 -지 않다 361  
 -지(요) 236  
 -찍다 418  
 <ㅈ>  
 참 56  
 채 57  
 -처럼 185  
 찻- 406  
 채 58  
 총- 407  
 최- 407  
 -치고 185

<ㅋ>  
 -커녕 186

<ㅌ>  
 탓 58  
 -탓이다 58  
 터 59  
 통 79

<ㅍ>  
 편 63  
 풋- 408

<ㅎ>  
 ㅎ-irregular verbs 11  
 -하고 158  
 한 64  
 한- 409  
 -한테 149  
 -한테서 152  
 헛- 409  
 흘- 410  
 후 80  
 -히 127

Action Verbs 97, 316  
 Adnominal Ending 316  
 Adnominal Particle 148  
 Adnominals 10, 108  
 Adverbial Particles 149  
 Adverbials 12  
 Attributive Constituents 10  
 Auxiliary of Inability Verbs 362

Auxiliary Particles 144, 161  
 Auxiliary Verbs 339  
 Basic Sentence Types 6  
 Bound Nouns 21  
 Cardinal Numbers 89  
 Case Particles 144  
 Causatives 366  
 Complement 10  
 Complement Particle 148  
 Complex Sentence 15  
 Conjunctive Adverbs 129  
 Conjunctive endings 236  
 Connective Particles 144, 159  
 Constituent Adverbs 12  
 Content Words 2  
 Deferential(Low) 83  
 Degree Adverbs 122  
 Demonstrative Adnominals 115  
 Demonstrative Pronouns 85  
 Derived Adverbs 124  
 Descriptive Adnominals 115  
 Descriptive Auxiliary Verbs 357  
 Descriptive Verbs 98, 316  
 Desiderative Auxiliary Verbs 354  
 Direct Quoted Speech 372  
 Donatory Auxiliary Verbs 348  
 Exclamation 141  
 Exploratory Auxiliary Verbs 350  
 Final Endings 219  
 Formal Speech Level 204  
 Free Forms 13  
 Frequency Adverbs 120  
 Function Words 2  
 Future Tense 194  
 General Adverbs 121  
 Honorific(High) 83  
 Incomplete Nouns 21  
 Indefinite Adverbs 128  
 Indirect Quoted Speech 373  
 Informal-High form 207  
 Informal-Low form 208  
 Informal Speech Level 207  
 Irregular Verbs 104  
 Iterative Auxiliary Verbs 351  
 Korean Negation Patterns 213  
 Long Causatives 368  
 Long Form 213  
 Long Passives 365  
 Mimetic Adverbs 137  
 Modifier Constituents 10  
 Negative Auxiliary Verbs 359  
 Nominalizer Endings 319  
 Non-derived Adverbs 123  
 Numerical Adnominals 115  
 Object 9  
 Object Particle 146  
 Ordinal Numerals 93  
 Parts of Speech 1  
 Passives 364  
 Passive Suffix 364  
 Past Tense 191  
 Personal Pronouns 84  
 Plain 84  
 Prediate 7  
 Prefixes 399  
 Present Tense 189

442 Index

- Progressive Tense 196  
Pure Korean Cardinal Numerals  
90  
Pure Korean Ordinal Numerals  
93  
Quotation Particles 380  
Regular Verbs 99  
Reporting Verbs 386  
Retentive Auxiliary Verbs 352  
Sentential Adverbs 13  
Short Causatives 366  
Short Form 213  
Short Passives 364  
Simple Sentences 14  
Sino-Korean Numerals 92  
Sino-Korean Ordinal Numerals  
94  
Speech Levels 202  
Subject 7  
Subject Honorification 199  
Subject Particle 144  
Suffixes 411  
Terminative Auxiliary Verbs 343  
The Coupla -이다 99  
The Verb 있다 101  
Time Adverbs 119  
Verb Conjugation 102  
Vocative Particles 158  
Vowel Harmony 209